

И. П. Крылова

**Сборник
упражнений
по грамматике
АНГЛИЙСКОГО
языка**

Учебное пособие, 12-е издание

Рекомендовано Министерством
общего и профессионального
образования Российской Федерации
в качестве учебного пособия
для студентов институтов
и факультетов иностранных языков



**УНИВЕРСИТЕТ
книжный дом**

**Москва
2007**

THE VERB

FINITE FORMS

Ex. 1. Explain the use of the Present Indefinite in the following sentences:

1. I *sleep* here. My father *sleeps* in his study.
2. In case she *wants* to see him, he'll come over.
3. "Your mouth is bleeding. *Does it hurt?*" Martha asked me.
4. Where *do we go* from here?
5. Please see that the children *don't get* nervous.
6. I *do* a lot of travelling, you know.
7. One *lives and learns*.
8. He *owns* a big car.
9. "It won't do any good to anyone if you *get* ill," I said.
10. "His men *act* silently as a rule. They *wear* dark glasses and they *call* after dark," he added.
11. You *understand* what we're talking about?
12. Changes *happen* very quickly here.
13. How quickly you *leap* to his defense!
14. I said, "I *take* things as they *come*."
15. His temper will not be right until we *are* at home again.
16. "Do you often," I asked, "*take* holidays in these parts?"
17. She beat with her hand on the back of the sofa and cried to them: "You *talk* too much."
18. "It's too late to go anywhere." "What *do we do* then?"
19. "Perhaps after breakfast I could ring up my family." "The telephone *doesn't work*."
20. Then the captain announced in a duty voice: "Tomorrow afternoon we *arrive* by four o'clock."
21. "The news *calls* for champagne," Jones said.
22. Why *don't* you go back home?
23. They wish to make sure that he *does not alter* his plans.
24. She thought he wanted to look a mystery man to her. "You *play* your role fine," she said.
25. I *brush* my teeth every night.
26. "I *give* up," she said. "You *win*."
27. It is a scene in which Mr Dante, in a white dinner-jacket, *arrives* at the ground floor by lift. The lift door *opens*, Dante

gets out, looks at something on his left, registers alarm and walks away briskly.

28. I must be well by that time, whatever *happens*.

29. I've got to get him to the station. His train *leaves* at eleven.

Ex. 2. Explain the use of the Present Continuous in the following sentences:

1. Bill, stop that disgusting game you're *playing*.
2. They've moved to their London house. They *are buying* new furniture.
3. He paused and looked at her. "You're *shaking*. Are you all right?"
4. He *is always having* to check his emotions.
5. I *am meeting* Jason at his office on the 25th. Would you join us?
6. You know that cinema audiences *are declining* in the United States.
7. The rain *is just beginning*.
8. Sally put down the telephone. "It was Dan. He's *staying* at the club tonight. He's too tired to drive home."
9. You *are always drinking* tea when I come here for a snack.
10. I miss her very much, almost every minute of the day I think of her, or I think I'm *hearing* her.
11. He started into the house ahead of us shouting, "Mary, what *are you doing*? Your guests have come."
12. "I'm sorry," I said, "I'm *being clumsy*."
13. My cousin just rented an old barn to a young man who repairs bicycles. He's there all the time. Even on Sundays. He's *working* on some kind of an invention.
14. My father *is always saying* things that he shouldn't say in front of me.
15. "Don't go," he said. "I feel faint. The room *is spinning* around."
16. I'll say good night to you, Mr Brown, now, if you'll excuse me. I'm *feeling* kind of exhausted this evening.
17. "Why are you still dressed?" her father asked. "I'm *working* tonight. Mr Hardy has a meeting at his house. I'm *going out* there to take notes."
18. "I'm not scared," she said. "You are. You're *wishing* I hadn't done it."
19. Paris is wonderful. I like the food here, and I'm *eating* like mad.

20. The aspirin *isn't working*. I'm in pain.
21. Albert *is doing* quite nicely in the used-car business.
22. By the way, I'm *having* some people over for dinner tonight.
23. Helen, please don't talk to me in a tiresome voice. You *are not being scolded*. We *are* simply *discussing* what can be done.
24. Come and sit by Leo and me. We're *having* a boring gossip all about Peter's chances.
25. Hello, Alice. You're *looking* healthy, prosperous and fine.
26. "I've heard the whole story, all the town *is talking* of it," he said.

Ex. 3. Use the Present Indefinite or the Present Continuous:

1. He has suffered a great deal of pain. You (*not to think*) he (*to behave*) very well, though?
2. "I (*to live*) up there," she said, indicating the gates.
3. I never (*to change*) my shoes even when I (*to get*) my feet wet.
4. "By the way," I asked Arthur, "what Bill (*to do*) now?"
5. The guard stared at him. "You (*to have*) a pass?"
6. "Mr Brown (*to play*) cards?" he asked.
7. "Luis (*to keep*) something secret." "He (*not to tell*) you everything?"
8. They will have to stay with us when they (*to arrive*) here.
9. "And what has become of Mr Jones?" the man asked. "He (*to do*) well."
10. "You must forgive me," Mr Smith said, "but I (*not to touch*) alcohol."
11. It's no use mumbling at me out of the side of your mouth, and imagining that you (*to speak*) French.
12. "Dan," she said, turning to her husband with her hand over the mouthpiece, "why your brother (*to call*) so early?"
13. I (*to believe*) she (*to feel*) foolish this morning.
14. If there is one thing I (*not to like*) on a voyage it is the unexpected. Naturally I (*not to talk*) of the sea. The sea (*to present*) no problem.
15. He will give me a welcome whenever I (*to come*) here.
16. A very old woman was staring at them intently. "We (*to do*) something to attract attention?" Grace asked.
17. At the further end of the village (*to stand*) the medieval church.
18. "I shall go mad if this (*to go*) on much longer," said Rex.
19. "Where's Mrs Hardy?" "Downstairs, Sir. She (*to greet*) the guests."

20. May I put my car away in your garage in case anyone (*to come*)?
21. He gave me a smile as much as to say: "I only (*to joke*)."
22. Mr Smith and I never (*to travel*) anywhere without a bottle of aspirin.
23. The wheel of her bicycle was bent out of shape. "What I (*to do*) now?" she asked.
24. She always (*to try*) to show off to her husband that she can do without him.
25. The doctor (*not to see*) the patients today. He has been called away.
26. "If you (*to feel*) so strongly," she said, "why you (*not to do*) something about it?"

Ex. 4. Make up situations to justify the use of the Present Indefinite and the Present Continuous in the following pairs of sentences:

1. You'd better take your coat. It's *raining* out there.
You'd better take your coat. It *rains* out there.
2. They *dance* every style.
They *are dancing* every style.
3. "I know I'm *boring* you, but don't go," he said.
"I know I *bore* you, but don't go," he said.
4. I think they *are* both silly.
I think they *are both being* silly.
5. "His hands *shake*," said my aunt.
"His hands *are shaking*," said my aunt.
6. Who *is sleeping* in this room?
Who *sleeps* in this room?
7. He *plays* tennis.
He *is playing* tennis.
8. You're *putting* the umbrella in the wrong place.
You *put* the umbrella in the wrong place.
9. I *don't eat* fish.
I'm *not eating* fish.

Ex. 5. Translate the following sentences into English concentrating on the use of the Present Indefinite and the Present Continuous:

1. Где Тед? — В саду. — Что он там делает?
2. Брат никогда не простит мне, если я позволю тебе уйти.
3. Я не имеею ни малейшего представления, о чем вы говорите.

4. Во всех номерах отеля есть ванна.
5. Он слышал, как она говорила по телефону: «Нет, у меня все в порядке. Я проснулась и завтракаю».
6. Мне, возможно, следует предупредить вас. Мы обучаем прямым методом. Мы говорим только на эсперанто.
7. Значит ли это, что я старею?
8. «А что люди говорят обо мне здесь?» -- спросила она.
9. Но они ничего еще не сделали. Как вы думаете, чего они ждут?
10. Эти люди говорят на языке, которого никто не знает.
11. Их фирма работает над новым автомобилем. Это большая новость.
12. Ты знаешь, как он любит автомобили.
13. Кстати, что здесь происходит?
14. Всякий раз, когда нам встретится слово, которое вы не знаете, посмотрите его в словаре.
15. «Я не сплю в доме», — сказал он.
16. Давай, я налью тебе воды. У тебя все еще дрожат руки.
17. Он сказал: «Мы никогда не доберемся до Лондона, если ты будешь вести машину так неосторожно».
18. «Удивительно, — сказал я, — как легко он заводит друзей».
19. «А что делает мать Сэнди в Японии?» — «Она уехала туда с женской делегацией».
20. Ты помнишь Джеймса? Он теперь работает на новых издателях, и дела у него идут неплохо.
21. Я очень занят новой школой, которую мы строим.
22. Сэм, беги и поиграй в парке. Твой отец не очень хорошо себя чувствует.
23. Я не знаю, почему я плачу.
24. «Ты уже ела?» — «Еще нет. Я мою голову».

Ex. 6. Explain why the Present Continuous is not used in the following sentences despite the fact that the actions in them take place at the moment of speaking:

1. The phone's ringing. Who's it for, I wonder?
2. You talk as if your son were a little boy.
3. Your scheme *sounds* full of holes to me.

4. There was a burst of laughter and music. Rose said wistfully: "They *have* a good time, don't they?"
5. The whole thing must be done right away. That *leaves* us only one alternative.
6. What's this? Sam, *do* you *hear* that?
7. What's the matter now? Why *do* you *talk* to me like that?
8. I'm sorry. I *apologize*.
9. "I *feel* a bit shaken." "You *surprise* me. I've never seen you like that."
10. "Do you *think* there may be some mistake here?" "Why *do* you *ask* me?"
11. In a minute or two he began to sigh. "He *sighs* like a turtle," Meg thought.
12. "She has gone away." "Oh, that *tells* me everything."

Ex. 7. Translate the following sentences into English concentrating on the choice between the Present Indefinite and the Present Continuous to express actions taking place at the moment of speaking:

1. «Это моя ошибка. Я приношу свои извинения», — сказал он.
2. «Где лейтенант?» — «Он там вон лежит и наблюдает за вражеским патрулем».
3. Я все еще не понимаю вас.
4. На перекрестке старик сказал торопливо: «Здесь я расстаюсь с тобой. Я иду к дочери».
5. Я говорю тебе это в качестве предупреждения, Милли.
6. Он знает, что мы уходим?
7. «Вы что, хотите мне сказать, что мой отец лжет?» — «О нет, нет, молодой человек, вы преувеличиваете».
8. Что ты имеешь в виду, Сэм? Ты говоришь загадками.
9. Не груби. Тебе это не идет.
10. «Неужели ты не видишь, что я устал? Все, что мне сейчас нужно, — это сигарета и ванна».
11. «Как ты себя чувствуешь? Почему ты не ешь суп?» — «Я не хочу».
12. «Поль где-то здесь?» — «Он принимает ванну».
13. «Почему ты такой раздражительный?» — «Я не раздражительный». — «Тогда не кричи». — «Я не кричу».

Ex. 8. Use the Present Indefinite or the Present Continuous to refer the actions in the following sentences to the future:

1. I'm Dr Salt. And I have an appointment with your chief. Now where I (*to go*) in?
2. Do you know what time we (*to arrive*) at the frontier?
3. I know that he (*to leave*) for the village tomorrow.
4. "What we (*to do*) now?" she asked as they reached the street.
5. I can't fetch you because I no longer have my car. I (*to sell*) it tomorrow.
6. The next plane (*to leave*) Salt Lake at six o'clock. You can catch it yet.
7. She looked at her husband. "I'm nervous. What I (*to tell*) them?"
8. Her voice was sharp and commanding: "I (*not to go*) home alone. Come on."
9. Loren (*to return*) from his honeymoon tomorrow and I'd like to see him before the meeting on Friday.
10. Where we (*to go*) from here?
11. The truck disappeared on the other side of the hill, leaving the soldiers behind. "We (*to dig*) in here," said the lieutenant looking at the map.
12. Ted (*to come*) here this morning.
13. Norah said: "I (*to go*) home tomorrow." "Why?" "My law term (*to begin*) soon."
14. "What you (*to do*) tonight?" "I don't know yet."

Ex. 9. Use the proper forms of the verbs in brackets to express future actions:

1. We'll talk when we (*to get*) there.
2. I'll see that everything (*to be*) in order.
3. I don't know when she (*to be*) home.
4. Joseph, see that there (*to be*) plenty of lamps for the guests.
5. We'll wait here till it (*to get*) dark.
6. You will stay here and make sure no one (*to approach*) the road.
7. He asks if you (*to meet*) him in the library at five o'clock.
8. I advise you to make sure the bottle (*not to be*) showing out of the box.
9. He will be very useful if you (*to treat*) him right.

10. He will take care that they (*to be*) fit to do the job.
11. He wants to know if I (*to deliver*) this parcel.
12. If all (*to go*) well, I shall finish it in a fortnight.
13. Stay by the door and wait to make sure that he (*to switch*) off the light at the gates.
14. I'll see that everything (*to be*) properly packed and put into store.
15. I wonder what the weather is going to be like and if I (*to be*) warm.
16. We'll have peace together when he (*to be*) gone.

Ex. 10. Use the Present Indefinite or the Present Continuous of the verbs in brackets:

1. I'm about to move to London and I (*to try*) to decide which books and records to take along.
2. "You're young," he said. "Young people (*to do*) a lot of foolish things."
3. Why you (*to wear*) an engagement ring? You are not engaged.
4. It was a shock to her, but she is the kind that (*not to break*) down.
5. One shouldn't drink when one (*to drive*).
6. She always (*to try*) a little too hard to make people like her.
7. "What he (*to do*) there?" "He (*to write*) a book, I believe."
8. He (*to know*) a lot of languages.
9. What you (*to do*) when you are by yourself?
10. "Ellen (*to wait*) for you." "Yes, I know."
11. Write him a note and see it (*to be*) delivered.
12. Why you (*not to try*) to rest now, Sam? Try and sleep.
13. I'm sorry you (*not to feel*) well, dear.
14. "I (*to start*) work next week." "And we all (*to look*) forward very much to having you in the office. You (*to join*) us at an interesting time."
15. "Ray, come here a minute, will you?" "Oh, what you (*to want*)? Can't you see I (*to watch*) the telly?"
16. She asked George who hadn't moved, "Well, what you (*to stand*) there for? What you (*to think*) about?"
17. What sort of parts you (*to play*) on the stage?
18. "What you (*to do*) tonight?" "I don't know yet. I (*to get*) rather used to being at home every night."
19. Jill (*to be*) rude to me. Why you (*not to stop*) her?

20. "You ever (*to play*) cards?" he asked.
21. "What we (*to do*) now?" "When it (*to be*) light we'll go back to the car."
22. For goodness' sake see that these new boys (*to get*) their hair cut properly.
23. She (*to suffer*) from a very unusual form of kidney disease.
24. I (*not to go*) home for lunch on Mondays. Mother (*to get*) up early on Mondays and (*to do*) her washing.
25. When she looked at him he was no longer smiling and lost in thought again. "How quickly your mood (*to change*)!" she exclaimed.
26. "Come to my room this minute," he said. "You (*to hear*) me? Please, hurry, I (*to wait*) for you."
27. "Of course I (*to joke*)," he said in confusion.
28. "How's Jon?" "He (*to grow*) peaches in North Carolina."
29. "Mr Desert in?" "No, Sir. Mr. Desert has just started for the East. His ship (*to sail*) tomorrow." "Oh," said Michael blankly: "Where from?" "Plymouth, Sir. His train (*to leave*) Paddington at midnight. You may catch him yet."
30. You (*to look*) hot. Haven't you something cooler to wear?
31. Sometimes I (*to think*) about what you and I (*to do*) here, and whether any of it is really worth it.
32. "Yes, how time (*to fly*)!" observed Lily.
33. "You must let me out here. Now I can easily walk to the railway station." "What train you (*to take*)?" "The next to Montreal." "Then you (*to leave*) Canada." "Yes." "Just a holiday?" "No. I (*to return*) to England."
34. "The note (*to say*) that you are to blame." "She (*to lie*)." "Who (*to lie*)?" "The teacher."
35. Well, the easiest way to make sure that I (*not to say*) the wrong thing is not to bring your friends here.
36. Philip looked down at his son. "You are a little beggar," he said. "You always (*to want*) something."
37. "Sh ... sh!" she warned. "You (*to become*) conspicuous."
38. He certainly wants to see you. It's the last chance because his regiment (*to leave*) the country early next week.
39. I (*to see*) him tomorrow.
40. I'll see to it that he (*to take*) his sister with him.
41. The boy appeared with a railway time-table in his hand. "The next train (*to leave*) in twenty minutes."

42. "When they (*to leave*)?" "In a fortnight. They (*to see*) about tickets tomorrow."

Ex. 11. Explain the use of Present Perfect I* in the following sentences:

1. Oliver came shyly up to him. "Sir, I've *written* a poem." "Good," said the headmaster. "May I see it?"
2. "Come on, ladies," he shouted, "there's nothing to be afraid of. The mice *have left* the room."
3. He thinks it's *purc* nerves and he's *given* me pills.
4. "Your hands are probably soiled. Go and wash them." "I *have washed* them."
5. Sam, what's *come* over you? You make me sad talking like this.
6. "Do you know the man?" "I've *met* him."
7. "Where is Gladys?" "I've *just had* a message. Her aunt's *had* a stroke and she's *had* to go down to Somerset."
8. "Well, it's very nice to see you anyway. I've *been* lonely."
9. "I don't know if any of you are interested," he said, "but the town *has fallen*."
10. "Have you *brought* sandwiches?" "No." "I don't know where I'll get lunch."
11. "You look a bit shaken. Are you all right?" "It's *been* a pretty awful day, that's all."
12. I don't know how often I've *told* you that I don't believe in this.
13. I've *tried* to be good.
14. As they saw off their last guest, he said to his wife: "I think everything *has gone* off fairly well, don't you?" "Everything *has been* perfect," she declared.
15. "What do you know about the life in Quebec?" "Quite a lot. We *have had* letters from my uncle describing it."
16. "Does your little daughter miss her nurse?" "No. She *has forgotten* her."
17. "Are you keen on sailing?" "I *have never done* any."
18. "You know, I'm thinking of writing my memoirs," she said, "I've *had* an adventurous life."
19. "Well, after all," she said, "he knows he *has been* horrid to you and he is trying to make up for it."

* See § 16 or E. M. Gordon and I. P. Krylova's "A Grammar of Present-day English" for Present Perfect I, II, III.

20. "Hallo, Mum and Dad," he called out. "Are you too busy to see what I've caught!"
21. "Have you heard Uncle Finch play?" "I'm sorry to say, no."
22. Doctor Diver, my daughter isn't right in the head. I've had lots of specialists and nurses for her and she's taken a couple of rest cures but the thing has grown too big for me and I've been strongly recommended to come to you.

Ex. 12. Explain the use of the Past Indefinite in the following sentences:

1. Then a bomb *hit* close by. He *felt* himself being lifted. Then he *was* out. Later, he *opened* his eyes. He *began* to hurt and he *didn't think* about anything for a long time.
2. At home we *heated* soup.
3. A netting wire fence *ran* all around the house to keep out rabbits and deer.
4. My aunt *looked* after my father and they *lived* in our old house.
5. "Wow!" he *said* to the wide straw hat I *wore*.
6. He always *smiled* at children and *gave* them sweets.
7. She had changed into a white summer dress and *carried* a big sun hat which she *swung* idly in one hand from a blue ribbon.
8. He *moved* across the lawn to the house and I *followed* him. The moonlight *fell* in streaks through the leaves.
9. "Did you *hear* about the party?" "It *was* a complete failure?"
10. You *heard* what he said.
11. She *knew* her brother at the University where he *lectured* on physics.
12. That evening she *had* a date with a man who *sold* cosmetics.
13. He *sat* down and silently *took* one of the cigarettes from the desk.
14. In Port-au-Prince nobody *walked* at night.
15. The office *smelt* like a stage dressing-room.
16. He *collected* books on Carribean flora.
17. He *added* after a pause, "I *saw* you talking to the captain just now."
18. He *did* his best to look after her; he *took* her out on long slow strolls; he *saw* that she *went* to bed early.
19. He *decided* that he would make sure that their promise *came* true.
20. I wonder what *happened* to him in India.

21. I knew that when he *heard* his sister come into her room he would follow her.
22. Nick told me that his train *left* at noon.
23. She said she *adored* ice-cream and he saw to it that she *had* several helpings.
24. I asked him what he was going to do if he *was sacked*.
25. Hallo, John, you *left* a note that you *wanted* to see me.
26. "Meggie, listen. Your governess is here. I *heard* her come."

Ex. 13. Use Present Perfect I or the Past Indefinite in the following sentences:

1. I never (*to see*) anyone more beautiful than your wife.
2. I (*to meet*) your husband this afternoon at Green Street.
3. He said, "You (*to meet*) this passenger. He calls himself Major Jones." "I (*to speak*) to him."
4. "I (*to get*) hold of some money — enough for Tony to go off for a couple of years." "You (*to raise*) all that money by doing your own housework?" "No, of course not." "Milly, what you (*to be*) up to? What you (*to do*)?" "I (*to sell*) the house." "But what's Tony going to say? You (*to tell*) him?" "Why should he care? He's young." "Why you (*not to tell*) him?"
5. I said, "Mr Jones (*to be*) arrested by the police." "My goodness. You don't say. What he (*to do*)?" "He necessarily (*not to do*) anything." "He (*to see*) a lawyer?" "That's not possible here. The police wouldn't allow it."
6. "You (*to hear*) the news?" "What news?" "About Ted and Dave. They (*to be*) out on the roof last night and Ted (*to slip*) and Dave (*to try*) to hold him but he couldn't and (*to be*) pulled off too. They're both in hospital with concussion and their people (*to be*) sent for."
7. I understand you (*to have*) an unpleasant experience at the week-end? What (*to happen*) exactly?
8. You remember the coin you (*to find*) in the pool?
9. "Mr Dillon (*to arrive*), Kate." "Oh, good. You (*to find*) your way all right then, Mr Dillon? I (*not to hear*) you ring the bell." "I couldn't find the bell, so I (*to knock*) instead."
10. He (*to light*) a cigarette and (*to walk*) to the window.
11. "Can we get dinner here?" "Of course we can. Have you got enough money? I (*to spend*) my last dollar on the taxi."

12. You (*to say*) just now that time (*to be*) everything. What you (*to mean*) by that?
13. As we got into the taxi my brother asked, "Well, you (*to speak*) to Harry?" "I (*to speak*) to him for a moment."
14. "Hallo," the little girl said to her mother and looked at her companion. "Come and say 'How do you do' to Mr Ogden." "I (*to see*) him already." "You can't have done, dear. He only just (*to arrive*) here." "I (*to see*) him in the hall this afternoon." "I'm sure you didn't. You (*to see*) my little daughter yet, Mr Ogden?" "I don't think we (*to meet*) before," said Mr Ogden.
15. "I remember you (*to have*) three funny little freckles on your nose," he said, "but they (*to disappear*)."
16. I think I'd better go now. I (*to act*) wrongly and I in a way (*to deceive*) you. I'm sorry.
17. "You (*to read*) 'Winnie the Pooh' by A. A. Milne?" "Yes." "And how you (*to like*) it?" "Very much indeed."
18. She (*to come*) into the room and (*to lean*) over her father's chair and (*to kiss*) his cheek. "You (*to have*) a good trip?"
19. You (*not to hear*) what the pilot (*to say*)?
20. At school I (*to be*) never good at languages, but here I (*to pick*) up a bit of French.
21. "Good night. It (*to be*) nice to meet you," he (*to say*) and (*to go*) off to his car.
22. "Poor girl," said Renny looking after her. "Don't pity her! She (*to have*) her happiness. We all pay for that." "You (*to have*) yours?" "I (*to have*) my share." "You (*to pay*) for it?" "Twice over."
23. Well, I know what you (*to be*) through.
24. "Then what (*to happen*) to you there?" "Let's forget it. Even now I can't believe I (*to do*) it."

Ex. 14. Make up situations to justify the use of the Present Perfect and the Past Indefinite in the following pairs of sentences:

1. I *left* the car outside the gate.
I've *left* the car outside the gate.
2. We've *settled* everything.
We *settled* everything.
3. You *behaved* like a courageous man.
You *have behaved* like a courageous man.

4. The children *have taken* their toys to the library.
The children *took* their toys to the library.
5. I *taught* little children.
I've *taught* little children.
6. I *hurt* my ankle.
I've *hurt* my ankle.
7. I *had* a letter from home.
I've *had* a letter from home.
8. *Have* you *spoken* to him?
Did you *speak* to him?
9. We've *been engaged* for nearly two years.
We *were engaged* for nearly two years.
10. He *has brought* his collection of stamps.
He *brought* his collection of stamps.

Ex. 15. Translate the following into English concentrating on the use of the Present Perfect and the Past Indefinite:

1. Она была одна, когда вошел ее муж. Он с удивлением оглядел комнату. «Что это?» — спросил он. — «Я переехала». Она улыбнулась ему. — «Дом еще не готов. Ты не можешь этого сделать». — «Я уже сделала это».
2. Когда Молли вошла в комнату, я сказал: «Я принес мой старый альбом с марками. Вашего мужа я встретил на крыльце. Он попросил меня оставить его вам».
3. «Добрый день, — сказал он. — Можно мне повидать Мэри?» — «Ее здесь нет, — ответила ее мать. — У меня был с ней разговор, который ей не понравился, и она уехала».
4. «Я позвонила доктору», — сказала его сестра, входя в комнату. Когда Роберт пришел в себя, он спросил: «Ты сказала, что позвонила доктору? Останови его, если можно. Я совсем здоров. Я просто не могу себе представить, почему я потерял сознание».
5. «Где он? Я должен его увидеть». — «Он ушел в лес».
6. «Отец внизу?» — «Да». — «Он ходил к Смитам?» — «Да». — «Что сказал м-р Смит?» — «Отец его не видел».
7. Она встала из-за стола. «Я должна пойти запереть калитку. Уже стемнело».
8. «Посмотри, — сказал он, держа по щетке в каждой руке. — что мой двоюродный братец подарил мне! Он оставил их на моем туалетном столике».

9. Мальчик вышел и четким голосом прочитал стишок. Его мать заговорила первой. «Подойди сюда, — сказала она ему. — Кто научил тебя этому?» — «Я сам его придумал», — ответил мальчик.
10. Моей одежды нет в комнате. Они ее унесли.
11. Он сорвал цветок. «Посмотри, что я сделал», — сказал он. — «Зачем ты это сделал?» — «Я не знаю».
12. Что я сделал такого, чтобы так сильно рассердить отца?
13. Затем они все прошли в столовую и заняли свои места за столом. «А брат и я уже завтракали, — вдруг воскликнула Мег, — я совсем забыла».
14. Молли, случилось что-то ужасное. У соседей на крыльце нашли младенца.
15. Говорят, что девушка и ее тетка продали свой домик и уезжают куда-то к родственникам.

Ex. 16. Explain the use of the Present Perfect Continuous in the following sentences:

1. "I must say, William, you're looking distinctly pale, you know." "Am I?" "I fear you've been overworking yourself lately. You don't get out of doors enough."
2. You bet I'm burning myself out. I've been doing it for so many years now — and who cares?
3. Your wife's been telling me that you've not been sleeping very well lately. I'm sorry to hear that.
4. "Mother, what do you suppose you look like?" "Oh, I know. But I've been cleaning the stairs."
5. Rosemary, I've been thinking. What we need is something different.
6. "I was the only boy in our school that had asthma," said the fat boy with a touch of pride. "And I've been wearing specs since I was three."
7. I don't want anyone to know I've been crying.
8. Oh, I am not really hot. It's just that I've been running.
9. Oh, dear, has the baby been howling ever since we left?
10. "Oh, it's grand to have you home again," he said. "I've been saving up things to tell you but now they've gone right out of my head and I can only be glad."

Ex. 17. Explain why Present Perfect II and not the Present Perfect Continuous is used in the following sentences:

1. Then about a year ago he disappeared and I've never *heard* from him since.
2. "Good evening, Mrs Elliot, you look blooming tonight." "Oh, not really, I *haven't had* a minute since I came in."
3. He's *made* nothing but trouble for years.
4. He *hasn't been seen* for a week. He is said to be on holidays.
5. I don't think he's *changed* in the thirty years I've *known* him.
6. I'm going to eat something. I *haven't had* anything since last night.
7. They heard a step behind them and turning saw Wilmott coming up to them. "Here I am!" he said. "Have you *waited* long?"
8. Meg said: "We *haven't had* lessons lately. It's too hot."
9. This is the happiest evening I've *had* in a long while.
10. "You are late for tea, Philip," she said. "No, I'm not late, Mumma," he returned. "I've *been in* for some time."

Ex. 18. Use the Present Perfect Continuous or Present Perfect II in the following sentences:

1. I (*to be*) busy since we last met.
2. I'm very fond of Alice but I (*not to see*) much of her lately.
3. "How quickly your mood changes! You look drained." "I (*to walk*) around all day. I (*to have*) a few drinks and nothing to eat."
4. But I (*to cook, to clean*) and (*to dig*) for three days and I'm tired.
5. "I don't think your mother expects you to become an electrician." "What she (*to say*) to you?" "Nothing."
6. Imagine how much they (*to learn*) since they (*to be*) here.
7. "Shall we sit down or do you prefer to stand?" "I (*to sit*) down in my office, so I am quite happy to stand."
8. I found him waiting downstairs at the house door to let me in. "I'm sorry," I said, "I hope you (*not to stand*) here long."
9. There (*to be*) no guests at all since I left?
10. The other chap is a man who threw up his job ten years ago and he (*not to work*) since.
11. "My son is not a bad boy. But he's going through a difficult phase." "He (*to go*) through this difficult phase for fifteen years."
12. He's an old friend. I (*to know*) him for ages.

13. You (*to see*) anything of Mary lately?
14. Do you know of any good books coming out soon? I (*not to read*) anything amusing for ages.
15. I know the names of everyone in the village. I (*to live*) here all my life.
16. "What do you suppose was wrong with the pony that he should go into the ditch?" asked Meg. "He (*to go*) into the ditch ever since I (*to know*) him," said the doctor, "and I (*to know*) him twenty-five years."
17. Winifred has got a young man she (*to have*) dates with for ages and she won't tell me anything about him.

Ex. 19. Translate the following into English concentrating on the use of the Present Perfect and the Present Perfect Continuous:

1. Мы с вашим братом говорили сегодня об этом деле. Поэтому я и пришел повидаться с вами.
2. «Я все думал об этой книге, — сказал он, — и пришел к заключению, что мы не можем ее напечатать».
3. «Грузовик все еще там?» — «Да. Они уже два часа работают, пытаются сдвинуть его. Но им это еще не удалось».
4. «Что ты делала, Пэт? Ты вся в земле».
5. «Ну, ты ведь слышала о Молли, да?» — «Я слышу о ней уже два года».
6. «Последнее время я замечаю в тебе какие-то изменения».
7. «Ну как ты?» — «Немного устала. Я весь день скребла стены».
8. Мальчишке нужна порка. Он уже много месяцев напрашивается на нее.
9. «Том и я, — сказала она весело, входя в комнату, — так хорошо провели время. Мы смотрели альбомы».
10. «Я очень доволен тем местом, которое выбрал. Я буду питаться ягодами и рыбой и читать все те книги, которые я давно хотел прочитать». — «А где вы возьмете их?» — «Я привез их с собой».
11. «Эта больница оказалась очень хорошей для изучения языков, — сказала девушка. — С тех пор как я здесь, я говорю по-французски с двумя докторами и по-немецки с нянями, и я набралась порядочно испанского от одного пациента. Для занятий музыкой тоже. Я практикуюсь каждый день».

А последние несколько месяцев я занимаюсь на курсах по истории музыки».

Ex. 20. Translate the following into English concentrating on the use of Present Perfect Continuous II:

1. Когда они остались одни, она спросила: «Что здесь происходило?»
2. «А что, если я попрошу Филиппа одолжить мне денег?» — «Попробуй. Он только что с рыбалки. Это подходящий момент».
3. «Какие у тебя холодные руки, Мэри!» — «Да, я сидела у окна и проверяла тетради».
4. «А вот ты где, Том! А я все искал тебя. Там какой-то молодой человек хочет видеть тебя».
5. При строгих родителях и двух старших братьях я всегда только и слышал, как кто-нибудь говорил мне: «Филипп, тебе должно быть стыдно».
6. «Извини, что я опоздал, мама. Мне нужно было поехать в город, и я попал под дождь и промок насквозь. Я переодевался».
7. «Эй! А где же все?» — «Я сейчас спущусь, — откликнулась Долли. — Я закрывала окна».
8. Он поблагодарил сестру за подарок и сказал: «Это как раз то, что мне нужно. Все мое шерстяное белье съела моль».

Ex. 21. To practise the Present Perfect Continuous, say what has just been happening to cause the state of things expressed in the following sentences:

1. His clothes are wet. (to walk in the rain)
2. You look upset. (to say dreadful things about ...)
3. I'm so glad to be able to talk to someone. (to have a very dull time)
4. Why do you think I ought to give up my work? (to talk to the doctor)
5. You look excited. (to try to talk someone out of doing something)
6. He is very tired. (to overwork)
7. The streets are wet. (to rain)

8. I can't write a loving letter now. (*to write too many official papers*)
9. The air in the room is hazy. (*to smoke a great deal*)

Ex. 22. Explain the use of the Present Perfect and the Past Indefinite in the following questions:

1. Why *hasn't* he *let* us know where he is? It simply isn't like him.
2. Why *did* you *give* your son that kind of education then?
3. "What time is it?" "Almost nine o'clock." "Damn," he swore. "Why *didn't* someone *wake* me?"
4. When *did* the tragedy *occur*?
5. "What's *happened*?" he thought. "How *did* they *get* here?"
6. "I'm going to see Mr Warren," she said. "He's in St Joseph's Hospital." Her father turned from the TV. "What *happened* to him?" "He had an accident. He says it's nothing serious."
7. Where's my hat? Where *did* I *leave* my hat?
8. "And I've got a bit of money. We could get ourselves a nice flat." "Where *did* you *get* the money from?"
9. "Miss Drake," he said later. "How long *have* you *known* Roger?" "Nearly a year. He's *told* me a lot about you." "What *did* he *say*?"
10. "How long *were* you in hospital with that wound?" she asked.
11. "Well, this is a hell of a mess you *have* got into. I don't wonder you are upset." "How *did* you *find* out?"
12. Then I thought of the other summer and of Laura. "How long *did* Laura *stay* there altogether?"
13. As Rosemary entered her room, her mother called to her: "Where *have* you *been*?"
14. When *did* she *leave* for a swim?
15. You seem to know a lot about your neighbours. How long *have* you *lived* here?

Ex. 23. Use the Present Perfect or the Past Indefinite in questions in the following text:

- Are you a soldier by profession?
- Yes.
- How long you (*to be*) in the army?
- Twenty-five years.
- When you (*to join*) the army?

- In 1932.
- Where you (*to serve*) during the war?
- First on the territory of Ukraine, then in the Far East.
- You (*to see*) much fighting in Ukraine?
- A good deal.
- How long you (*to remain*) there?
- For over a year.
- Why you (*to be*) sent to the Far East?
- I (*to be*) wounded.
- What sort of wound it (*to be*)?
- A bullet through the shoulder.
- How many times you (*to be*) wounded during the war?
- Three times.
- They (*to be*) serious wounds?
- Rather.
- When you (*to be*) wounded the last time?
- In 1945.
- How you (*to feel*) since the army?
- Not very strong.
- Why you (*not to leave*) the army?
- I can't imagine my life outside the army.
- Where you (*to serve*) lately?
- In the Caucasus mostly. The climate there suits my health.

Ex. 24. Use the Present Perfect or the Past Indefinite in the following questions:

1. "I'll drink tea from this tin mug." "Wherever you (*to find*) it?"
2. "What you (*to hear*)?" she demanded. "A farmer tells me he saw your brother walking back to the town." "Why he (*not to tell*) us?" "He thought we knew."
3. The parrot screamed a few words in Hindi. "Where he (*to learn*) that?" my aunt asked me.
4. He showed her inside the house. "Oh, how lovely!" she exclaimed. "I had no idea it would be so lovely. Why you (*not to tell*) us? And you (*to do*) it all by yourself?" "Yes." "How you (*to manage*) it? It's so tidy. And the new tea-set! When you (*to buy*) it?"
5. When Renny came in, his grandmother asked him: "Where you (*to be*) all day?"

6. "What sort of time you (*to have*) in France?" "A lot of things happened there."
7. "Everyone in the village will talk about it." "How this affair (*to begin*)?"
8. "How many children you (*to teach*) in that other family?" the girl asked her new governess. "Not many. Just one girl." "How long you (*to stay*) with her?"
9. Then my mother asked me: "Why you (*to go*) to the post-office today?"

Ex. 25. Explain the use of the Present Perfect and the Past Indefinite in the following sentences containing an indication of a period of time:

1. "I hear you *went* to the dentist this morning." "Yes. I *had* three teeth filled."
2. He laughed. "My," said Peggy, very pleased, "you *got* off the right side of the bed this morning, didn't you?"
3. That man *was* here again this afternoon, asking for you.
4. "Where is my brother?" "He's *not been* in all afternoon."
5. At Corfu you find people playing cricket. Watching them you remember that Corfu *was* under British rule for fifty years and cricket, obviously, is a heritage of those days.
6. "Mr Ferrier wishes to speak to you on the telephone, Sir," she said. "He *has called* up three times this morning."
7. "What's going on here?" Mel sighed: "We've *had* a storm for three days. It's created emergency situations."
8. "*Have you seen* Mary this morning?" she asked the boy as she gave him his morning milk. "No. She is sick." "How do you know?" "She *didn't come* out of her room."
9. "I used to know the Pimleys. But I *haven't seen* them for years," he said.
10. When they were strolling along the beach, Wilmott said to the doctor: "Do you know, I *was* surprised to hear you quote poetry this evening."
11. I *was* an officer in the Territorials myself for a few years. I had to give it up for health reasons.
12. I've *had* a rather nasty pain in my knee at times lately. It *caught* me this morning in a devilish fashion.
13. She drew down his head and pressed her cheek to his. "I say, your cheek is like a grater! You *have not shaved* today."
14. "When did she bring it here?" "She *left* it on the door-step today."

Ex. 26. Use the Present Perfect or the Past Indefinite in the following sentences which contain an indication of a period of time:

1. "Listen," he said, "my father (*to fight*) for four years in the last war."
2. I (*to meet*) your boy-friend and (*to have*) a long talk with him today.
3. "Don't go, Philip," said his mother. "I scarcely (*to see*) you today."
4. "Good morning, Mother," he said kissing the top of her head, "you (*to sleep*) late this morning."
5. I was at school with Alec. Then we (*not to see*) each other for years.
6. I (*to have*) coffee with a friend of yours at the Union today.
7. I'm taking my wife out tonight. She (*not to have*) any fun for a long time.
8. "Has Meggie eaten her tea?" "No. Not a bite. Nor dinner either." "Why, this is awful. The child (*not to have*) a bite all day."
9. Unsmiling she (*to regard*) him steadily for a long time. He then stopped walking about and looked equally steadily at her.
10. I dare say you (*not to have*) a night's sleep or a proper meal this week.
11. Entering her bedroom her mother said: "Pat, dear, aren't you well? Don't you think that a cup of tea would be nice? We (*to have*) the first strawberries this morning."
12. "You (*to see*) Father this afternoon?" she asked coming in from the garden.
13. You are just in time to hear a nice bit of news. Our neighbour is engaged to be married. He (*to bring*) me the news himself this morning.
14. "I'm sorry I'm late," he said. "Everything (*to seem*) to hold me up this evening."

Ex. 27. Make up situations to justify the use of the Present Perfect and the Past Indefinite in the following pairs of sentences containing an indication of a period of time:

1. I *haven't read* the paper this morning.
I *didn't read* the paper this morning.
2. We *haven't seen* them for years.
We *didn't see* them for years.

3. He *hasn't gone* to bed for two days.
He *didn't go* to bed for two days.
4. He *has been* a teacher for ten years.
He *was* a teacher for ten years.
5. I've *had* a letter from him today.
I *had* a letter from him today.
6. *Have* you *seen* him this afternoon?
Did you *see* him this afternoon?
7. We *haven't corresponded* for months.
We *didn't correspond* for months.
8. He *has called* me up from London three times this week.
He *called* me up from London three times this week.
9. I've *met* them both this afternoon.
I *met* them both this afternoon.

Ex. 28. Translate the following into English concentrating on the use of the Present Perfect and the Past Indefinite in sentences containing an indication of a period of time:

1. «Вы не можете мне сказать, уехала ли мисс Смит лондонским поездом сегодня утром?» — спросил он у начальника станции. — «Нет. Она опоздала на него».
2. Они проговорили около двух часов, и затем он сказал, что ему надо повидать кое-кого из друзей.
3. Его мать умерла. Она долго работала учительницей.
4. Послушай-ка, Джон, твоя хозяйка говорит, что ты сегодня лежишь целый день в постели. Это ведь не годится, правда?
5. Она удивилась, увидев его. «Разве ты не получил мое письмо?» — «Твое письмо? Нет». — «Да, конечно, ты еще не мог его получить. Я забыла. Оно было отправлено только сегодня утром».
6. Она резко повернулась к мужу и сказала: «Я отвожу машину домой». — «Но ведь ты не водила машину много месяцев», — возразил он. — «Я еще не забыла, как это делается».
7. Мы все трое пошли вместе по улице. В течение некоторого времени все молчали.
8. «Дядя Том приезжает», — объявила Мег. — Мама получила от него письмо сегодня утром».
9. На этой неделе у меня едва было время, чтобы просмотреть газету.

10. «Тебе следует пойти навестить Вилли, — сказала она. — Ты не видел его три недели. Вы поссорились?»
11. Они долго сидели рядом. Джек первым нарушил молчание.

Ex. 29. Make up situations to justify the use of the Present Continuous and the Present Perfect Continuous in the following pairs of sentences:

1. We're *having* a good laugh over everything.
We've *been having* a good laugh over everything.
2. I'm *doing* it just this way.
I've *been doing* it just this way.
3. What *is going on* in here?
What *has been going on* in here?
4. He *is saying* funny things about you.
He *has been saying* funny things about you.
5. What *are you doing*?
What *have you been doing*?
6. I'm *wondering* if you just dislike me.
I've *been wondering* if you just dislike me.
7. She *is accusing* me of things.
She *has been accusing* me of things.
8. He *is behaving* very well.
He *has been behaving* very well.

Ex. 30. Use the Present Continuous or the Present Perfect Continuous in the following sentences:

1. "There's a man sitting at the first table near the door. He (to *look*) at us," she said. "He is, but what of it?" "I (to *meet*) him everywhere of late."
2. Ever since my University days I (to *study*) the history of Russia. Now I (to *read*) books on the Civil War.
3. I know you (to *ask*) for somebody with experience on your staff. There is a doctor in our laboratory who might interest you. But he now (to *finish*) an experiment.
4. "I (to *visit*) with friends." "How long you (to *stay*) with your friends?"
5. The door was opened by Mrs Pitt. "Well, well, you're just in time. I (to *make*) some cakes. And your father (to *have*) breakfast."
6. "Where's my daughter?" "She (to *talk*) to a policeman." "What's happened?" "She (to *drive*) without a license."

7. "I hope you (*to do*) well?" "Splendid. I was very sorry that you left us. We (*to do*) better ever since."
8. "Hello," she said. "I'm glad you (*to have*) lunch here. I (*to want*) to talk to you."
9. "We (*to stay*) here nearly a week," "I hope you (*not to think*) of leaving."
10. "The girl (*to wait*) to see you, doctor." "How long she (*to wait*)?"

Ex. 31. Explain the use of Present Perfect III in the following sentences:

1. I'm tidying up for tomorrow. When I've *finished* this I'll go and put the child to bed.
2. As soon as we *have had* some tea, John, we shall go to inspect your garden.
3. I said, "Well, don't take him away until I've *had* a chance to speak to him."
4. After we've *done* all the packing it will be nice to have a light meal.
5. I shall probably bore you to death by the time I've *finished* talking about myself.
6. I tell you flatly that unless something *has been done* about your brother I won't go to that house.
7. With a shrug she said: "Their affair will fade into nothing before he's *been* here a week."

Ex. 32. Use the Present Perfect or the Present Indefinite in the following clauses of time referring to the future:

1. All right. I'll come down when I (*to put*) on a fresh collar.
2. When he (*to be*) off duty he'll go there.
3. "I must know where they are and I shall not rest till I (*to see*) them again," he thought.
4. "No more," she said to the dog, "but when I (*to finish*) you may have the bone."
5. Go on with your picture. We'll have a look at it when we (*to return*) from the party.
6. "I'll hand the book over when I (*to read*) it," he said.
7. "Has he gone?" she asked as soon as her sister entered. "No. He refuses to go till he (*to see*) you."

8. I will not leave you till we (*to talk*) this thing out.
9. Nobody knows we are here. We may stay here till we (*to die*).
10. You won't think so when you (*to see*) a bit more of it.
11. I'll lock the door when you (*to go*).
12. When I (*to wake*) I'll go for a swim.
13. I know that when she (*to refuse*) to help him he'll make some scenc.
14. I'll come when my guests (*to go*).
15. Please don't start watching TV till we (*to have*) supper.
16. You'll find it lonely here after the sun (*to set*).
17. Look, call him up again when he (*to finish*) eating.
18. "You'll find," said Ted, "that you'll long for home when you (*to leave*) it."
19. I'll keep it with me till we (*to decide*) what is to be done with it.
20. "I'll give you some paper and brushes and let you make a picture when we (*to ask*) your mother," she said to the girl.

Ex. 33. Revision: use one of the present forms or the Past Indefinite in the following short situations:

1. "You (*to know*) the man for many years?" "Yes. We (*to be*) at Cambridge together."
2. In the morning, coming down the stairs, Rosemary (*to see*) Tony lying in the sitting-room. "What you (*to do*) here?" "I (*to sleep*) here." "I'm sorry we (*to take*) your room." "I (*to sleep*) in my room for fifteen years." "But this is a pretty room, isn't it?" "Yes. The sun (*to be*) in it since six this morning." "You (*to see*) Philip? You (*to know*) where he is?" "I expect he (*to talk*) to Mother." "Oh, well, they're old friends, aren't they?" "Inseparable. They (*to start*) quarrelling this morning at seven o'clock."
3. "Are you keen on golf?" "I (*not to play*) myself. I somehow never (*to have*) the time."
4. The pilot was young with a bad twitch that pulled his mouth to the right twenty times a minute. "This morning," he kept saying, "this morning I (*not to have*) this. It (*to get*) worse and worse. It (*to look*) bad?" "No," I said, "I hardly (*to notice*) it." "I (*to be*) shot down by an American," the pilot said. "The first American I ever (*to see*). I even (*not to know*) they (*to be*) here."

5. "I'm sorry I (*to keep*) you waiting," said the maid. "I do hope you (*not to ring*) long. I just (*to do*) the bedroom and the bell (*to be*) rather faint there."
6. Turning I found my father sitting beside me on the sofa. "Hello, Dad," I said, "how you (*to get*) here?"
7. "You (*not to sing*) the song once since you (*to come*) back," Barbara complained. "I (*to forget*) it," said Pat.
8. I (*to sit*) here all night, and I swear I (*not to doze*) for a moment.
9. "Mr Brown, we (*not to want*) you to misunderstand our leaving your hotel. We (*to be*) very happy here under your roof." "I (*to be*) glad to have you. You (*to catch*) the Medea? She (*to arrive*) tomorrow." "No. We won't wait for her. I (*to write*) out our address for you. We (*to fly*) to Santo Domingo tomorrow."
10. Then about ten years ago he (*to disappear*) and I never (*to hear*) from him since.
11. "The gas stove is covered in grease. It's filthy. Why you (*not to clear*) up after you had cooked breakfast? You even (*to leave*) the breakfast things in the sink."
12. I can't think where I (*to leave*) my key. It's probably in my other bag.
13. You (*to paint*) any more pictures lately?
14. Then I (*to come*) here and I (*to be*) here since.
15. The general turned to my father and said abruptly: "You (*to be*) in the Boer war?"
16. The voice on the telephone said: "I'm sorry to bother you but you (*to receive*) my letters?" I said: "Well, I may have and I may not. I (*to be*) away and there are a lot of letters here. I (*not to look*) at them yet." "I (*to write*) to your club as well." "I (*not to open*) those either."
17. "Oh, Mary. Come in. You (*to have*) tea?" "Yes, thanks."
18. When I (*to meet*) her she (*to talk*) to me of you. "God, what a pedestal she (*to put*) you on!" "Well, I (*to come*) off it with a crash. I (*to topple*) for some time," he said bitterly.

Ex. 34. Revision: use one of the present forms or the Past Indefinite in the following texts:

a) They returned to London on Monday night. Jan went straight to his office, she drove home, where Mrs Bristow, the house-keeper, was smoking a cigarette and listening to the wireless.

"Everything (*to be*) all right?"

"Mrs Troy (*to go*)."

"Where?"

"She (*not to say*). I (*to help*) her down with the bags. Oh, and she (*to leave*) you this." The housekeeper gave her a letter.

"Darling, I (*to be*) sorry not to be here to say goodbye but I (*to be*) sure you will be quite pleased to have me out of your house at last. What an angel you (*to be*). I can never thank you or Jan enough. I (*to leave*) a little present to Jan. Let's meet soon and I'll tell you all about everything. All love. Virginia."

"She (*to leave*) anything else, Mrs Bristow?"

"Just two books. They (*to be*) upstairs."

"Mrs Troy (*to leave*) no address?"

"She (*not to go*) far. I (*not to catch*) what she (*to say*) to the taxi-driver but it (*not to be*) a railway station."

The mystery (*to be*) soon solved. Jan (*to telephone*). "Good news," he said. "We (*to get*) rid of Virginia"

"I know."

"For good. She (*to be*) a sensible woman. She (*to do*) just what I (*to say*) she should — she (*to find*) a husband."

b) Drawing Roma to the arm of his chair, her uncle said to his guest: "This little girl (*to be*) my dead nephew Eden's daughter. Eden (*to be*) a poet, the first in the family to turn to things artistic. Of course, you (*to hear*) that young Christian (*to turn*) to painting. And Finch (*to be*) a concert pianist, and Wakefield (*to be*) an actor. And there (*to be*) a young man nearby who (*to write*). What is his name, Roma?"

"Humphrey Bell."

"That's it. And what he (*to write*)?" She answered, as though in a lesson: "Short stories in the American and Canadian magazines."

"Well, well," said the uncle, "before we (*to know*) it we shall have artists' colony here in place of the settlement of retired British officers we (*to set*) out with. You (*to think*) that will be a change for the better, Roma?"

"I (*not to think*) about it," she returned.

c) Then, with the noise of the bombardment still echoing in his ears, he (*to open*) his eyes and for a moment (*can*) see nothing but flashes of light.

"Fielden," he (*to call*) wildly, and immediately a familiar voice (*to reassure*) him:

"You (*to be*) all right. You (*to come*) round. You (*to feel*) better, Frankie?"

He (*to rub*) his eyes and (*to see*) Fielden beside him. He was lying on a camp-bed in an unknown place amid a group of strange officers. "I (*to be*) quite all right. But what (*to happen*)? Where I (*to be*)?"

"You (*to be*) in a dug-out. You (*to be*) buried by a bomb from a trench mortar."

"But how I (*to get*) here?"

"Someone (*to drag*) you out. I'm afraid four of your men (*to be*) killed and several others (*to be*) wounded."

"My God!" (*to cry*) Frankie, struggling to sit up. "Anyone (*to look*) for them?"

"That's all right. We (*to get*) the wounded ones down to the dressing table long ago. You (*to be*) unconscious for over an hour. The Doc's going to have a look at you and if you (*to be*) all right we shall take you back to your dug-out."

d) As they were drinking coffee Finch said, "Now tell me about yourself. How is your work?"

For a moment it (*to seem*) as though Bell could not bring himself to answer, then he (*to get*) out: "Not too badly. I (*to write*) a novel."

"A novel," Finch shouted. "Well, this is news. And it (*to be*) finished?"

"Yes. It (*to be*) finished. To tell the truth, it (*to be*) accepted by a publisher."

"You (*to work*) on it long?"

"For over a year."

e) "What time it (*to be*)? It must be terribly late. I (*to see*) that the moon (*to be*) gone," Sylvia said to Finch.

"I'll take you back in my car, but not till I (*to make*) you some coffee."

They (*to go*) together to the kitchen. They (*to get*) the cups and saucers, the cream, (*to boil*) the kettle. When the tray (*to be*) laid Finch (*to carry*) it to the music room and (*to set*) it on the little table. Then they (*to place*) the chairs by it and (*to sit*) down.

"Is the coffee right?" she asked anxiously, for she had made it. And immediately she exclaimed: "Someone (*to come*). I (*to hear*) a car."

They (*to go*) to see who it (*to be*). When the car (*to stop*), Finch's brother (*to get*) out of it.

"I (*to be*) sent by my wife to rescue you," he said to Sylvia. "She (*to refuse*) to go to bed till you (*to come*). The others (*to leave*) some time ago. It (*to be*) almost morning."

"It (*to be*) all my fault," said Finch. "I (*to play*) the piano."

"All this while?"

"Yes."

They (*to come*) into the music room. Almost apologetically Finch said: "We (*to have*) coffee."

"For the second time tonight. No wonder you (*to be*) wakeful," said his brother.

Ex. 35. Explain the use of the Past Continuous in the following sentences:

1. The front door of the house stood open. The maid *was polishing* the windows.
2. After a while he informed me that John *was doing* a translation of some poems from Spanish.
3. I knew Harry *was coming* sometime on Monday.
4. You remember how he *was always writing* verses.
5. He glanced my way to see if I *was listening*.
6. By the time the month was up, Eric realized he *was fighting* a losing battle.
7. Roma said: "Hallo, everybody. We *were passing* and saw the light in the studio. We guessed you *were having* a party."
8. She stopped beside Tommy who was in a particularly scornful mood. He *was leaving* in the morning.
9. Well, I was taught not to interrupt when older people *were talking*.
10. She said it very calmly but her face had gone the curious colour which meant that she *wasn't liking* it very much.
11. He looked across the street to see if they *were waiting*.
12. "What *were you doing* in New York, Mr Brown?" "I *was trying* to find someone to buy my hotel," he replied truthfully.
13. It *was raining* when I left.

14. "This is his breakfast," Adeline said, indicating the tray with a bandaged finger. She *was* always *suffering* from a cut or a burn.

Ex. 36. Explain the use of the Past Continuous and the Past Indefinite in the following sentences which contain actions taking place at a given past moment:

1. We had some difficulty with Jerry, who *was enjoying* himself and *did not want* to come away.
2. He laughed and said how nice the country *looked*. Branches and little dark delicate twigs *formed* a fretwork of black lace against a cold, silvery sky.
3. It *was getting* dark now, and the general *drove* more slowly than ever.
4. I *was driving* along a country road when I spotted a telephone box.
5. I looked at my watch — it *read* five minutes to eleven.
6. I looked at my husband. He *was reading* a letter.
7. Philip made no haste to move from where he *sat*.
8. Lunch was over. Theo *was smoking* a cigarette. Barbara *was sitting* on the window seat with a book in her hands.
9. I rang the bell and the door was opened by a small man in overalls who *was carrying* a pot of white paint.
10. In the dim light it was difficult for the passengers to read the papers they *carried*.
11. I *offered* to call him up but they *told* me that the telephone *didn't work*.
12. I looked into my father's study. He *was* no longer *working*.
13. John, turning from the door, noticed that he *was standing* upon a letter which *lay* on the mat.

Ex. 37. Use the Past Continuous or the Past Indefinite in the following sentences:

1. I (*to have*) an uncomfortable feeling that he (*to laugh*) at me.
2. They (*to move*) into the shelter. The rain (*to come*) down swiftly.
3. The general (*to wait*) on the platform when I (*to arrive*) at Camberley.
4. She (*to be*) on her guard because he always (*to tease*) her.
5. I only (*to want*) to know if you (*to come*) on Saturday.

6. He (*to see*) to it that their publishing house (*to become*) a flourishing firm again.
7. He (*to have*) a bath when the sirens (*to start*).
8. He (*to walk*) in the frosty fields when he (*not to work*).
9. Jack (*to look*) at her trying to guess what (*to come*).
10. The road under the limes (*to lead*) straight to the village.
11. He (*to find*) that he (*to speak*) in a low voice.
12. He (*to be*) surprised to find how much her hands (*to shake*).
13. It (*to be*) suddenly clear to me that she (*to act*) a part and (*to amuse*) herself at our expense.
14. Mother said you (*to join*) the Bombardier Guards.
15. I (*to know*) that they (*to go*) out that night.
16. He (*to have*) interests elsewhere. He always (*to ask*) for special leave.
17. Then he (*to notice*) Jack. He (*to stand*) in front of the fire and (*to talk*) Italian to a man in glasses.
18. When I (*to come*) up to her she (*to search*) through a velvet bag which she always (*to carry*) for her spectacles which she always (*to lose*).

Ex. 38. Use the Past Indefinite or the Past Continuous in the following sentences containing *as*-clauses and *while*-clauses:

1. They (*to talk*) little as they (*to drive*) home.
2. As they (*to drink*) coffee, Ted (*to say*): "Now tell me about yourself."
3. She (*to sing*) softly as she (*to beat*) the eggs.
4. As the sun (*to disappear*), a fresh breeze (*to stir*) the curtains at the window.
5. His steps (*to slow*) down as he (*to mount*) the stairs.
6. I (*to hear*) a telephone ringing as I (*to come*) up in the lift.
7. He (*to come*) forward as we (*to climb*) out of the car and (*to hold*) his hand to my father.
8. Bernard (*to call*) up as I (*to prepare*) to leave the office.
9. He (*to give*) his father an anxious look as he (*to enter*).
10. She (*to watch*) him as he (*to walk*) to a chair across the room.
11. He (*to look*) up as Eric (*to come*) in.
12. Her husband (*to stop*) her just as she (*to get*) into the car.
13. While he (*to stand*) irresolute, the door (*to open*) and his brother (*to come*) out.
14. He (*to listen*) gravely while I (*to complain*) about my reading.

15. While she (*to wait*) for the kettle to boil she (*to sit*) by the table.
16. He (*not to say*) a word while we (*to eat*).
17. Mrs Blair (*to talk*) about domestic affairs, while the general (*to lecture*) my father on some subject which I didn't understand.
18. We (*to look*) at the stamps while we (*to wait*) for Hudson to turn up.
19. She (*to tear*) her dress while she (*to change*).
20. While we (*to talk*) Beryl (*to come*) out of the house.
21. We (*to stand*) about while lemonade and biscuits (*to be*) set out on the table.
22. I (*to examine*) the picture while she (*to organize*) her thoughts.

Ex. 39. Translate the following into English concentrating on the use of the Past Continuous:

1. Пока носильщик и шофер укладывали его вещи в машину, Джек закурил сигарету. 2. В этот момент он увидел своего брата. Он стоял по другую сторону стеклянных дверей. 3. Женщина что-то сказала мальчику, который шел рядом с ней. 4. Когда мальчик заснул, он все еще держал новую игрушку. 5. Он проснулся. Возле его кровати звонил телефон. 6. Джо был доволен, что его брат теперь вел машину медленнее. 7. Она сидела в глубине комнаты, лицом к двери. На ней было то же самое платье, и она смело смотрела на трех мужчин, которые стояли в другой стороне комнаты. Когда Джек подошел к ней, она улыбнулась ему. Он ясно чувствовал, что трое мужчин наблюдают за ним.

Ex. 40. Revision: use one of the present forms or the Past Indefinite or the Past Continuous in the following sentences:

1. "He (*to like*) you?" "Like me? He never even (*to see*) me when we (*to meet*). He (*to look*) straight through me. The other day I (*to pass*) him by near the lake; he just (*to stare*) at the sky. I (*to say*) "Hello, David." He even (*not to bother*) to look my way."
2. On the 1st of September, 1939, I (*to lunch*) with my father. And I (*to try*) to explain to him something of the work I (*to do*). In the middle of the meal the telephone (*to ring*) and my father (*to answer*) it. Then he (*to come*) back and (*to say*): "Philip (*to say*) the war (*to start*)."

3. Through the arch I (*to see*) Simon. He (*to lie*) on the ground. He (*to have*) a cut which (*to bleed*) a lot. A few people (*to stand*) around. His friend, at the top of his voice, (*to yell*): "You (*to hurt*) him!" One of the crowd (*to say*): "I (*not to touch*) him." As I (*to come*) up Simon (*to open*) his eyes and (*to say*), "What on earth (*to happen*)? Where I (*to be*)?"
4. It (*to be*) evening, Jessica (*to go*) to the window and (*to look*) out. A Siamese cat (*to walk*) slowly along the top of the garden wall. A newspaper boy (*to deliver*) the evening papers. A student (*to polish*) his old car. Two dogs who had just met (*to wag*) their tails. She (*to turn*) away from the window and (*to go*) back to her desk.
5. While we (*to eat*) our sandwiches and (*to drink*) a glass of beer Kathy (*to smile*) at me and (*to say*): "Well, you (*to enjoy*) the book?"
6. He is the sort of chap who always (*to look*) at a clock.
7. The snow (*to melt*) as it (*to touch*) the ground.
8. It's funny that all these years he never (*to bother*) to see you.
9. Oh, what a gorgeous piano! You (*to play*) since you (*to come*) home, Uncle Harry?
10. Barbie (*to lay*) the table while I (*to fry*) the fish.
11. At the end of the week she (*to write*) that she (*to return*).
12. You (*not to understand*) what your mother (*to have*) to put up with these twenty years.
13. When I (*to save*) up enough, I shall be able to study law.
14. What you (*to be*) up to all day while I (*to be*) busy?
15. When you (*to translate*) that, I shall sign it.
16. Just think how you (*to improve*) in the short time I (*to know*) you.
17. "They tell at Timothy's," said Nicholas lowering his voice, "that Dartie (*to go*) off at last. He (*to be*) a rotten egg."
18. He (*to look*) down at the crowds as he (*to walk*) down the platform.

Ex. 41. Revision: use one of the present forms or the Past Indefinite or the Past Continuous in the following sentences:

a) Pat (*to leave*) the house and (*to go*) along a sandy path leading to the vegetable garden. Soon she (*to see*) that someone (*to move*) among the tomato plants. Coming closer she (*to recognize*) Humphrey Bell. "Hallo," Pat (*to call*) out. "You (*to get*) tomatoes, eh?"

He (*to straighten*) himself. "Yes, and I (*not to be*) the thief I (*to look*). Your uncle (*to tell*) me to help myself." He (*to show*) her the basket half full of tomatoes. "I really (*to take*) more than I (*to need*)."

"I'll help you," said Pat and without waiting for his reply she (*to begin*) to gather the tomatoes.

"You (*to look*) unusually elegant," he said.

"We (*to have*) a family dinner party. But they'll not miss me. As a matter of fact, the party is rather scattered. The young people (*to pair*) off and (*to stroll*) about."

"Then I (*to consider*) myself lucky that you (*to pair*) off with me — in the vegetable garden."

"It (*not to sound*) very romantic," she said. "How you (*to get*) on with your writing? You yourself (*to like*) what you (*to write*)?"

"Yes, I do." He (*to speak*) with conviction.

b) The old servant (*to come*) in with a tray of clean glasses. As he (*to see*) Maurice standing in front of the window he (*to say*): "The party (*to go*) off nicely, I hope, Sir."

"Very nicely," said Maurice, amiably.

"There's nothing like a nice family party, I always say."

"You ought to know," Maurice said.

"You (*to have*) plenty of experience."

"Oh, yes. I (*to work*) in this house more than thirty years."

"That's a long while to stick to one job."

"You're right, Sir. I'll be sorry to leave."

"Surely you (*not to leave*), Rags."

"My wife and I (*to take*) a year off. We (*to go*) to London."

"If you (*to spend*) a year there you'll never come back," Maurice exclaimed.

"We (*to save*) a bit. We may stay there as long as we like."

"My uncle (*to know*) this?"

"I (*to tell*) him this morning."

Ex. 42. Revision: use one of the present forms or the Past Indefinite or the Past Continuous in the following text:

A knock at the door (*to arouse*) Martin. He (*to think*) about Joe and (*to wonder*) where he (*to be*), as he (*to say*): "Come in."

He (*not to turn*) toward the door. He (*to hear*) it close softly. There (*to be*) a long silence. He (*to forget*) there had been a knock

at the door, and (to stare) blankly before him when he (to hear) a woman's sob. The next instant he (to be) on his feet. "Ruth," he said, amazed.

Her face (to be) white and strained. He (to lead) her to a chair and (to draw) up another one for himself. He (to be) too confused to speak. In his own mind his affair with Ruth (to be) closed and sealed.

"No one (to know) I (to be) here," Ruth said in a faint voice.

"What you (to say)?" Martin asked.

She (to repeat) her words.

"Oh," he said, then (to wonder) what more he could possibly say.

"I (to see) you come in, and (to wait) a few minutes," Ruth continued.

"Oh," he said. "And then you (to come) in."

She (to nod). Then she (to come) over to him, (to rest) her hand on his shoulder a moment and then (to slip) into his arms. He (to know) now what she had come for.

"My mother (to want) me to marry Charlie Hapgood," she announced.

Martin then said, "And now, I suppose, your mother (to want) you to marry me."

"She will not object. I (to know) that much," Ruth said.

"She (to consider) me quite eligible?"

Ruth (to nod).

"And yet I (to be) not a bit more eligible now than I (to be) when she (to break) our engagement. I (not to change). I (not to get) a job. I (not to look) for a job. And I still (to believe) that Judge Blount (to be) an ass. I (to have) dinner with him the other night, so I ought to know."

"But you (not to accept) Father's invitation," she said.

"Who (to send) him? Your mother?"

Ruth (to remain) silent.

"Then she (to send) him. And now I suppose she (to send) you."

"No one (to know) I (to be) here," she protested. "Oh, Martin, don't be cruel. You (not to kiss) me once. And think what I (to dare) to do!"

"Why you (not to dare) it before," he asked, "when I (not to have) a job? When I (to starve)? That's the question I (to put) to myself all this time. You see I (not to change). I (to be) the same."

I (*not to develop*) any new virtue. And what (*to puzzle*) me is why everybody (*to want*) me now. Surely they (*not to want*) me for myself but for something that (*to be*) outside me. It is for the recognition I (*to receive*). Then again for the money I (*to earn*)."

"You (*to break*) my heart," she sobbed. "You (*to know*) I (*to love*) you."

"If you (*to love*) me," he said gently, "then why your love (*to be*) weak enough to deny me?"

"Forget and forgive," she cried. "I (*to love*) you all the time."

"Oh, you (*to do*) nothing that (*to require*) forgiveness," he said impatiently.

They (*to sit*) in silence for a long time. He (*to know*), now, that he had not really loved her.

Ruth suddenly (*to begin*) to speak. "I know that much of what you (*to say*) is so, I (*not to love*) you well enough. In the last ten minutes I (*to learn*) much. I (*to learn*) to love better."

"It's too late," he said. "I (*to be*) a sick man. It is my soul. I (*to care*) for nothing. Something (*to go*) out of me." Martin (*to lean*) his head back and (*to close*) his eyes. He (*to forget*) the presence of Ruth.

He (*to be*) brought back to himself by the rattle of the door-knob. Ruth (*to try*) to open the door.

"Oh, forgive me," he cried, rising to his feet. "I (*to forget*) you (*to be*) here. I'll take you home."

Ex. 43. Explain the use of the Past Perfect in the following sentences and describe the character of the action expressed by it:

1. He asked me if I *had had* breakfast.
2. He now opened the low gate that he *had* so often *swung* on as a small boy.
3. She was sure that he *had* never *lied* to her before.
4. He knew that as a girl she *had lived* in Rome.
5. Jack chose the hotel. He *had* never *been* there before but he *had heard* his mother speak of it once. She *had said* she *had liked* it.
6. He was pleased to meet Dave again. He *had known* him for ten or eleven years, and they *had played* tennis together in Paris.
7. He remembered how the ball *had hit* squarely on the nose and the bleeding *hadn't stopped* for three hours.
8. They *had been married* only a few months when they gave up living in London.

9. He glanced up and down the beach to see if he *had left* anything.
10. She realized that she was faint for food. She *had eaten* nothing since the picnic.
11. He quite forgot that Julian *had been divorced* for some time.
12. He decided to wait till he *had talked* to the man himself.
13. He was not aware how long he *had sat* there.
14. I called at nine and the man said she *had gone* out about an hour ago.
15. I knew he would ask me for news of his son as soon as he *had seen* the last guest off.
16. It happened that his desire to go to France fell in with certain ideas which *had been* of late *discussed* at the committee.
17. I took my temperature again later in the evening, when David *had gone*, and found that it *had gone* up by point two degrees, which made me feel more unwell than ever.

Ex. 44. Use Past Perfect I' or the Past Indefinite in the following sentences:

1. From downstairs (*to come*) the sound of a radio playing a song he never (*to hear*) before.
2. He (*to re-read*) what he (*to write*).
3. I (*to know*) he (*to make*) a joke because he (*to giggle*) but I could not see it.
4. I was going round to see Roberta after dinner. I (*to arrange*) this visit the day before.
5. As she (*to rise*), there (*to shoot*) through his mind something that he (*to read*) in the etiquette books, and he (*to stand*) up awkwardly, worrying as to whether he (*to do*) the right thing, and fearing that she might take it as a sign that he (*to be*) about to go.
6. When she (*to enter*) the house at dinner-time and (*to find*) Tom gone she (*to know*) what (*to happen*). He (*to leave*) no note, nor any message. She (*to know*) that in the last moment he even (*not to think*) of her, and she (*not to be*) hurt by it. In whatever way he could, he (*to love*) her.
7. I (*to press*) the door gently. It always (*to be*) left open at night in the old days. When I (*to become*) quite certain that it (*to be*)

* For Past Perfect I, II, III see E. M. Gordon and I. P. Krylova's Grammar — § 30, for Past Perfect Continuous I, II — § 34.

locked, I (*to step*) back into the moonlight and (*to look*) up at the house. Although it (*to be*) barely midnight, there (*to be*) not a light showing. They (*to be*) all abed and asleep. I (*to feel*) a resentment against them. I (*to expect*) them to welcome me back at the door.

8. On the fifteenth of October Andrew (*to set*) out alone for London. Now that the exam (*to be*) so close at hand, he (*to feel*) that he (*to know*) nothing. Yet, on the following day when he (*to begin*) the written part of the examination, he (*to find*) himself answering the papers with a blind automatism. He (*to write*) and (*to write*), never looking at the clock, filling sheet after sheet. He (*to take*) a room at the Museum Hotel, where Christine and he (*to stay*) on their first visit to London. Here it (*to be*) extremely cheap. But the food (*to be*) bad. Between his exams he (*to live*) in a kind of daze. He scarcely (*to see*) the people in the street. After the written part, the practical part of the examination (*to begin*); and Andrew (*to find*) himself dreading this more than anything which (*to go*) before. Luckily his practical part (*to go*) well enough. His case (*to be*) an illness which he (*to treat*) before. He (*to feel*) that he (*to write*) a good report.

Ex. 45. Translate the following into English concentrating on the use of the Past Perfect:

Я оделся и вышел в сад. Выходило солнце. Ветра не было, но в саду всё падали листья. Березы за одну ночь пожелтели до самых верхушек.

Я вернулся в дом. Там было тепло. Маленькая береза, которую принес мой сын и которую мы посадили в кадучку, стояла у окна. Вдруг я заметил, что она тоже за одну ночь вся пожелтела и несколько листьев уже лежало на полу.

Теплая комната не спасла березку. Через день она вся облетела. Мой сын и все мы были очень огорчены. Мы уже свыклись с мыслью, что она останется зеленой всю зиму. Лесничий только улыбнулся, когда мы рассказали ему, как мы пытались сохранить зеленую листву березки.

Ex. 46. Explain the use of the Past Perfect Continuous in the following sentences:

1. When I rang up your father, he said that people *had been inquiring* about you all day.

2. Pat's poodle now appeared, coming out of the stream where it *had been cooling*.
3. They *had been driving* for half an hour before Blair spoke.
4. He went to the theatre to see the play which *had been running* for a week.
5. The rain that *had been threatening* now began to fall gently.
6. Philip came into the room. He *had been wandering* about, not quite belonging anywhere.
7. When she came there to act as governess, the children *had been running wild* for a year.
8. Alice threw down the book she *had been holding* since she came into the room.

Ex. 47. Explain the use of Past Perfect Continuous I and Past Perfect II in the following sentences:

1. I did not remember much about the Pinleys, whom I *had not seen* for about ten years.
2. It *had been freezing* for the last few days, but it *had not snowed*.
3. He told me he *had not heard* from her since the day she walked out of their office.
4. He said that they *had now been hunting* hard for ten days.
5. She was aware that they *had been getting* on each other's nerves lately.
6. I was happy that ever since Max moved in here, the place *had been ringing* with laughter.
7. He said frankly that he *had been thinking* about the offer for a long time now but he *hadn't discussed* it with his wife yet.
8. I knew they *had known* each other since the war and *had now been corresponding* for years.
9. It seemed to me that I *had done* nothing since I arrived.
10. I told him I *had been* in all evening. I *had been waiting* to talk with him.

Ex. 48. Use the Past Perfect Continuous or Past Perfect II in the following sentences:

1. Her name was Logan. She (*to be*) a widow for fifteen years and had no children.
2. He wanted to find out how long the two men (*to stay*) with them.

3. We talked about what we (*to do*) since we left school.
4. The last member of the party was Neville, the film star, whom David (*to know*) for some time.
5. The bearded man told him that the partisans (*to import*) arms for some time now.
6. We told them that in our absence the garden (*to be*) looked after by an old man who (*to live*) in the area since the Boer war.
7. Now they were floating in the little green boat upon the perfectly calm sea in which they lately (*to swim*).
8. Jack was half an hour late and he asked what we (*to eat*) because he wanted to order the same.
9. Basil said that he (*to write*) all day and (*not to eat*) anything.
10. She said she (*not to see*) him since he was in his first year at the university.
11. Her lack of accent was explained by the fact that she (*to be*) for twenty years in London.
12. It was cold and dark in the small room because it (*to rain*) for five days.
13. He said he (*to have*) the statuette for a long time.
14. The noise woke Joe who (*to sleep*) in his pram by the garage door.
15. I went into the kitchen. Nothing (*to be*) touched in it since the morning before.
16. He said he (*not to write*) to me because he (*to work*) on the new play.

Ex. 49. Translate the following into English concentrating on the use of Past Perfect Continuous II:

1. Он поднял голову от чашки кофе, который он все помешивал, но не пил.
2. Том никак не хотел, чтобы его мать знала, чем мы все время занимались.
3. Она видела по их мокрым костюмам, что они только что плавали.
4. Люди, которых она встречала, казалось, знали, где она была и что там делала.
5. В машинку был вставлен лист бумаги, на котором кто-то учился печатать.
6. Когда он вернулся, мы постарались сделать вид, что мы говорили не о нем.

7. Макс поднял книгу, которую он перед этим читал, и загнул уголок страницы, чтобы отметить место.
8. Я сидела на кухне и курила. Флора, которая играла в гостиной, пришла посмотреть, что я делаю.

Ex. 50. Use Past Perfect III or the Past Indefinite in the following clauses of time:

1. He wanted her to believe that when he (*to return*) things would change.
2. She knew that he would not speak till they (*to reach*) their house.
3. She took her manicure set and began to do her nails, waiting till he (*to finish*) eating.
4. He decided to read nothing but the dictionary until he (*to master*) every word of it.
5. And then came the great idea — he would write. He would begin as soon as he (*to get*) back. It would be slowly succeeding at first. He would go on studying. And then after some time, when he (*to prepare*) himself he would write great things.
6. She asked if Grant would wait until the doctor (*to see*) the patient.
7. She told him not to come back until he (*to talk*) to her on the telephone first.
8. He would have to make a decision sooner or later, but he wanted it to be as late as possible, when the other problems (*to be*) solved.
9. I said we'd better leave this little chat until I (*to make*) coffee.
10. He did not sign the contract until he (*to drag*) a formal approval out of me.
11. He said he'd tell me all about it when he (*to get*) back.
12. I sat there for another five minutes, until my eyes (*to begin*) to close and my head to nod with sleep.
13. When he (*to find*) the photo, I took the album back to the shelf.

Ex. 51. Revision: use one of the present or past forms in the following sentences:

1. It was early evening. John, who (*to be*) in bed until half an hour ago, (*to wear*) his silk gown. A fire (*to burn*) in the grate which he (*to lay*) and (*to light*) himself.

2. Mr Wrangle: "Why does a woman say she *(to shop)* when she *(not to buy)* a thing?" Mrs Wrangle: "Why does a man say that he *(to fish)* when he *(not to catch)* anything?"
3. When she *(to go)* out of the room Jack *(to stand)* just outside the door, and she *(to have)* the impression that he *(to try)* to listen to what her father *(to say)* in the room.
4. She *(to find)* the family on the beach. Theo *(to sit)* on the sand beside his clothes. Pierce, who *(to swim)*, *(to lie)* limply on the pebbles, half in and half out of the water. The dog, who *(to swim)* with Pierce, *(to shake)* itself and *(to spray)* rainbow drops on Pierce's trousers. The cat, who *(to fluff)* itself into a woollen ball, *(to watch)* the dog. Paula and John *(to get)* fully dressed and *(to walk)* slowly along the beach.
5. Martin Eden asked Ruth: "I wonder if I can get some advice from you. You remember the other time I *(to be)* here I *(to say)* I *(can)* not talk about books and things because I *(not to know)* how. Well, I *(to do)* a lot of thinking since. I *(to be)* to the library many times, but most of the books I *(to read)* *(to be)* too hard for me to understand. Maybe I'd better begin at the beginning. I never *(to have)* any advantages. I *(to work)* pretty hard ever since I *(to be)* a kid and now that I *(to be)* to the library, looking with new eyes at books, I just *(to conclude)* I *(not to read)* the right kind.
6. She *(to realize)* that she *(to be)* so interested in what Jack *(to say)* that she *(to forget)* to eat.
7. "I *(to mean)* to call you up," Pete said, wanting to get away, "but I *(to be)* busy."
8. As we *(to approach)* the corner we *(to fall)* silent.
9. They *(to walk)* for less than an hour when the moon, which *(to pass)* its first quarter, suddenly *(to appear)* between the heavy clouds.
10. Her parents *(to live)* in Florence and she *(to visit)* them every week-end.
11. Eric, who *(to pace)* the room, *(to stop)* behind the chair and *(to lean)* on it, when his father *(to tell)* him to come up to his desk.
12. He *(to remember)* that his mother *(to meet)* her first husband when she *(to work)* in a New York publishing house.
13. "Hello," she said, "I'm glad you *(to have)* lunch here. I *(to want)* to talk to you."
14. "How's your sister?" "I *(not to know)* anything about her." "Why you *(to stop)* going to see her?"

15. When news of his uncle's illness (*to reach*) him, Wake (*to be*) in New York. He (*to act*) in a play that (*to have*) a success in London.
16. He is not in very high spirits. He (*to stay*) up many nights cramming for an examination he (*to fear*) he is going to fail.
17. As he (*to pay*) his bill his brother (*to come*) up.
18. The lights were switched off and she (*to sit*) in the glow of the wood fire and he (*to have*) the impression that she (*to cry*).
19. "I (*to be*) on pension for a few years now." "Why they (*to give*) you a pension? What was you (*to be*) in?"
20. Nick had to repeat that he (*to have*) a letter from his sister and that she and her husband (*to sail*) the following week for Canada.
21. "You (*to see*) her today?" "Yes. We (*to have*) lunch."
22. I (*to play*) for several minutes before I (*to see*) that Marcel (*to sit*) behind my back.
23. The telephone (*to ring*) as he (*to unlock*) the door to his apartment.
24. I felt I (*to make*) a fool of myself. I always (*to do*) things first and (*to think*) afterwards.
25. While I (*to watch*) the advertisements on the television last night I (*to see*) Sophy Brent. I (*not to set*) eyes on her for some months. She (*to advertise*) a new kind of chocolate cake.
26. As he (*to come*) near the desk he (*to stop*). Veronica (*to stand*) there. She (*not to see*) him because she (*to scribble*) a note on a piece of the hotel stationery.

Ex. 52. Use the required past forms in the following sentences which pattern actions related to the same past moment:

1. Grant just (*to change*) into some dry things and (*to wait*) for dinner to be announced when there was a knock at the door.
2. Then we realized that Richard (*to come*) in through the garden and (*to stand*) in the room listening.
3. Outside on the square it (*to stop*) raining and the moon (*to try*) to get through the clouds.
4. Saturday lunch was over. Mary still (*to sit*) at the table smoking. Kate and John (*to retire*) to the sofa and (*to talk*) in low voices. Paula and the twins (*to go*) out on to the lawn where the twins now (*to play*). Barbara (*to sit*) on the window-seat reading "Country Life".
5. When Roger returned into the room, the girl (*to stop*) crying but (*to shiver*) from head to foot.

6. Then she saw her father. He *(to lay)* his fishing rod and *(to take)* something from his pocket.
7. Bernard *(to take)* off his hat and *(to carry)* it in his hand.
8. When the telephone rang Wolfe *(to finish)* his egg and *(to drink)* coffee.
9. It was dark by the time I reached London. The black-out *(to begin)* and it *(to rain)* heavily.
10. Pierce *(to tow)* the boat quite fast now. The dog, who *(to swim)* out after him, *(to accompany)* the boat.

Ex. 53. Translate the following into English bringing out the difference between sentences which pattern actions related to the same past moment and those containing consecutive actions:

1. Он снова положил руки на стол и посмотрел на них.
2. Он снова положил руки на стол и глядел на них.
3. Мальчик бросил лодку и поплыл к берегу.
4. Мальчик бросил лодку и теперь плыл к берегу.
5. Они закончили еду и теперь пили кофе.
6. Она поела и отнесла тарелки на кухню.
7. Они вышли из кино и пошли вверх по улице.
8. Они вышли из кино и теперь шли вверх по улице.
9. Джо спустился в холл и там ждал своего приятеля.
10. Ветер прекратился, а дождь все шел.
11. Дети потеряли мяч в высокой траве и теперь искали его.
12. Ветер сдул с него шляпу, и теперь она катилась по улице.
13. Ветер сдул с него шляпу, и она покатила по улице.
14. Мэри нашла старую шляпу и стала ее примерять.
15. Мэри нашла старую шляпу и теперь примеряла ее.

Ex. 54. Make up situations to justify the use of the past forms in the following sentence patterns:

1. He threw the rug over the radiator of the car and walked up the path.
He had thrown the rug over the radiator of the car and was walking up the path.
2. She bought her ticket and moved away from the window.
She had bought her ticket and was moving away from the window.

3. He opened the window and looked out with pleasure at the river flowing past.

He had opened the window and was looking out with pleasure at the river flowing past.

4. He put out the light and tried to sleep.

He had put out the light and was trying to sleep.

5. They parked the car and walked along the wall.

They had parked the car and were walking along the wall.

6. The rain stopped and John went out to mow the lawn.

The rain had stopped and John was mowing the lawn.

7. He shaved and had a shower.

He had shaved and was having a shower.

8. He had a glass of whiskey and ate his food with appetite.

He had had a glass of whiskey and was eating his food with appetite.

9. They finished their meal and had coffee.

They had finished their meal and were having coffee.

Ex. 55. Use the required past forms in the following complex sentences with *when*-clauses:

1. When he (*to see*) Bell, he (*to come*) straight to him, smiling.

2. When Jimmy (*to get*) to the café a little late, Christine (*not to arrive*) yet.

3. When Ted (*to turn*) to thank the doctor, he already (*to walk*) away.

4. When she (*to walk*) she (*to carry*) herself like a ballet-dancer.

5. We (*not to walk*) a hundred yards towards the cottage when the inspector suddenly (*to go*) down on his knees.

6. One afternoon I went to play tennis with some neighbours and when I (*to return*) my mother (*to disappear*).

7. When she (*to smile*), she (*to seem*) friendly and simple.

8. When I (*to go*) down to Hugh's room he (*to sit*) at his table reading a small book.

9. When Paula (*to tidy*) up she (*to go*) out of doors.

10. I (*to meet*) her on the beach when I (*to have*) my early walk.

11. When he (*to finish*) speaking, everyone (*to clap*).

12. I (*to have*) a good sleep when I (*to get*) back yesterday.

13. The play (*to be*) in progress for about twenty minutes when Grant (*to find*) his seat at the back of the dress circle.

14. When Jack (*to look*) back, the Holts (*to dance*) cheek to cheek.
15. "How do you like that?" he (*to ask*) her when he (*to finish*) painting.
16. When she (*to come*) back, he (*to eat*) the sandwiches.
17. I (*to do*) the washing when she (*to arrive*).
18. When Theo (*to go*) for a walk he (*to look*) exclusively at his own feet.
19. I (*not to go*) very far from the turn-off when I (*to notice*) there was a car behind me.
20. When they (*to go*) I (*to go*) to the woods.
21. I (*to get*) out a box of matches when he (*to offer*) me a light.
22. She (*not to talk*) to me two minutes when she suddenly (*to feel*) faint.
23. He (*to shrug*) when Peter (*to explain*) the details.
24. When they (*to show*) him round and (*to feed*) him on their best, they eagerly (*to demand*) news.
25. When she (*to return*) with the book she (*to draw*) a chair and (*to sit*) down beside him.

Ex. 56. Use the required past forms in the following complex sentences with *as soon as*-clauses:

1. He (*to telephone*) to his office as soon as he (*to reach*) his house.
2. "I (*to come*) as soon as I (*to get*) your message," Lloyd said.
3. He always (*to dislike*) anybody as soon as he (*to be*) appointed to a position of authority.
4. He (*to dial*) the number but (*to replace*) the receiver as soon as the familiar voice (*to answer*) the telephone.
5. David (*to disappear*) as soon as we (*to have*) breakfast.
6. As soon as I (*to hear*) the sound I (*to know*) what had happened.
7. He (*to open*) the letter as soon as he (*to enter*) the room.
8. As soon as he (*to enter*) I (*to be*) struck by the expression on his face.

Ex. 57. Use the required past forms in the following complex sentences with *after*-clauses:

1. After they (*to have*) coffee Meg (*to invite*) him to go over the house.
2. She (*to see*) him every day after we (*to arrive*) in New York.

3. After we (*to lunch*) we (*to go*) and (*to sit*) out in the garden.
4. There (*to be*) another raid in the early hours of the morning after we (*to go*) to bed.
5. After he (*to take*) the girl home, he (*to go*) down the road to the village.
6. I (*cannot*) stay in Wales after what (*to happen*).
7. After she (*to go*), Willy (*to lock*) the door and (*to go*) into the bedroom.
8. There (*to be*) a short silence after he (*to leave*).

Ex. 58. Use the required past forms in the following complex sentences with *till/until*-clauses:

1. Neither of us (*to speak*) until we (*to arrive*) at the office.
2. She (*not to speak*) until the steps (*to move*) on.
3. Savina (*to say*) nothing until they (*to order*) but Eric knew she was waiting.
4. He (*to wait*) until he (*to hear*) a hello from the other end of the telephone.
5. She (*to wait*) motionless until he (*to finish*) his speech.
6. So I (*to go*) on searching until I (*to select*) a dozen books that I wanted to read.
7. She (*to wait*) until he (*to shave*) and (*to finish*) dressing.
8. His anger (*to last*) till his wife (*to put*) the soup on the table.
9. Then he (*to go*) out to the reading-room and (*to explore*) magazines until the place (*to close*) at ten o'clock.
10. Nicole (*to wait*) silently till he (*to pass*); then she went on.
11. He (*to hope*) to delay my going until he (*to come*) to some decision.
12. We (*to sit*) in silence till the worst of the storm (*to be*) over.
13. He drove very slowly and when he met another car, he usually (*to stop*) altogether until it (*to pass*).
14. She (*to laugh*) till her eyes (*to fill*) with tears.

Ex. 59. Use the required past forms in the following complex sentences with *before*-clauses:

1. He (*to stumble*) against the chair before he (*to find*) the lamp.
2. He (*to decide*) to get a present for his children before he (*to leave*) Rome.
3. He (*to begin*) apologizing before I (*to pay*) the driver.

4. The noise of their footsteps (*to become*) distant before my father (*to speak*) again.
5. He (*to knock*) and (*to ring*) for some time before he (*to make*) himself heard.
6. He (*to walk*) quite close to them before he (*to speak*).
7. They (*not to go*) four miles before Tony (*to get*) the impression that the children liked driving with him.
8. I (*to realize*) before you (*to be*) here a fortnight that you never were cut out for this life.
9. Miss Able (*to hunt*) everywhere for the box before she (*to find*) it.
10. Almost before I (*to shut*) my eyes, I (*to feel*) a nudge in my side.
11. The next morning Hudson (*to come*) into my room before I (*to finish*) breakfast.
12. She looked so cool and fresh that he (*to spend*) a moment admiring her before he (*to speak*).
13. He (*to hang*) around the theatre for seven years before he (*to have*) any recognition at all.
14. He (*not to be*) there for two days before he (*to say*) that the wish to see her had been the reason for his coming.
15. She went, unwillingly, at the end of the week. Before she (*to be*) gone twenty-four hours he (*to find*) his mistake.
16. He (*to know*) before he (*to say*) this that it would annoy her.
17. On the beach they (*to find*) a suitable place for lunch before they (*to go*) very far.
18. In the summer Willy often (*to take*) very early walks by the sea before anyone (*to be*) up.
19. Thank God I (*to find*) it out before I (*to make*) more of a fool of myself.
20. The bus (*to begin*) to move before he (*to reach*) it.

Ex. 60. Use the required past forms in the following complex sentences containing the correlatives *scarcely* / *hardly* / *nearly* / *barely* / *when* and *no sooner... than*:

1. She hardly (*to sit*) down when a very stout gentleman wearing a very small hat (*to flop*) into the chair opposite hers.
2. He hardly (*to reach*) the door of his office when he (*to encounter*) two young men.
3. He emerged from the theatre with the first of the crowd; but he scarcely (*to take*) his position on the edge of the sidewalk when the girls (*to appear*).

4. He barely (*to disappear*) when Dennis (*to come*) sliding down the stairs.
5. No sooner, however, they (*to establish*) themselves in their new house than he (*to perceive*) to his dismay a return of her absorbed and brooding manner.
6. He barely (*to arrive*) in Rome when he (*to get*) a telegram from home that his father was seriously ill.
7. No sooner the curtain (*to fall*) than he (*to rise*) to go.
8. Hardly he (*to ask*) his questions when she (*to answer*) them.
9. He scarcely (*to take*) his coat off when he (*to begin*) to read the letter.
10. The band barely (*to begin*) to play when he (*to go*) away.
11. The rain nearly (*to stop*) when he (*to reach*) his hotel.
12. They barely (*to come*) out of the house when a sudden shouting (*to arise*).

Ex. 61. Use the required present or past forms in the following sentences containing the adverbs *scarcely*, *hardly*, *nearly* and *barely*:

1. Haven't we got enough junk in the house already? There (*to be*) barely room to move as it is.
2. David got really angry and beat his fist on the wall. Bits of plaster began to fall thick on the floor. "How amazing!" he said. "I hardly (*to touch*) it."
3. When the train got in, it (*to be*) nearly midnight.
4. I heard his father say: "I scarcely (*to speak*) to my son today."
5. Charles became impatient. He scarcely (*to have*) time to listen to our congratulations.
6. Last summer I very nearly (*to go*) to Spain.
7. There (*to be*) scarcely anyone there whom I knew.
8. Charles did not hope to become a doctor. He (*to be*) nearly twenty-six.
9. This was the side of my life he scarcely (*to know*).
10. I scarcely (*to have*) a glass of water since breakfast.
11. I asked her about her plans. But she scarcely (*to listen*).
12. I saw that all the family nearly (*to come*) to a disaster.
13. After ten minutes of the film, during which the star barely (*to get*) into her clothes, Ann rose to go.
14. I scarcely (*to know*) him up to the time I came to London.
15. The man (*to be*) hardly recognizable.

16. Grant hardly (*to have*) enough time to examine the room before the landlady came back.
17. You (*to have*) hardly any right to talk to me about these children.
18. He looked at his brother for agreement, but Philip barely (*to move*) his head.
19. I hardly (*to see*) him this week.
20. I (*to be*) nearly through with my work.
21. If you stand back, your face (*to be*) hardly visible.
22. It occurred to me that since we began our walk, he hardly (*to talk*) without guard.
23. His voice quavered. He nearly (*to cry*).

Ex. 62. Revision: use the required present or past forms in the following texts:

a) He (*to find*) his father about to lunch, and they (*to sit*) down together. Making sure that the waiter (*not to look*) over his shoulder, Ronny, who (*to bring*) the book with him, (*to push*) it over, and (*to say*), "You (*to read*) it?" His father (*to shrug*): "Everybody now (*to read*) it."

b) Tom (*to whitewash*) the fence for some time when he (*to see*) Jim coming out of the gate. Jim (*to go*) to the town pump for water. Bringing water from the pump always (*to be*) hateful work for Tom, but it (*not to seem*) so now. Tom (*to offer*) to fetch the water instead of Jim, but the latter (*to shake*) his head and (*to say*) that he (*to do*) this work so long that he (*to get*) used to it.

c) It (*to be*) Saturday evening after supper. The big brightly lit kitchen (*to be*) silent except for the click of dominoes. The shutters (*to be*) closed and barred. The long rows of blue dishes on the dresser (*to gleam*) like sea water. At the long table the boys (*to play*) dominoes. Miranda (*to go*) to bed. Ann (*to sew*). Hugh (*to smoke*) his pipe and (*to watch*) the others. Every now and then Ann (*to look*) up and (*to smile*) at him. She certainly (*to be*) bravely cheerful in a way that (*to compel*) everybody's admiration. By a kind of inertia things slowly (*to come*) back to normal. The danger point (*to be*) passed by now. Hugh (*to think*) that tomorrow he (*can*) decently tell the family that he (*to leave*) on Tuesday.

d) When Tom (*to wake*) the farmhouse (*to burn*). It (*to start*) burning when the shell (*to hit*). None of the other soldiers who (*to*)

be) in the farmhouse (to be) to be seen. They (to be) lucky to escape. In the confusion they (to miss) Tom who (to sleep) on the kitchen floor. As his leg (to be) broken it (to take) him hours to crawl across the room to the window. He (to pass) out again and again. But he (to be) sure he (not to want) to die and finally he (to get) to the window and (to pull) himself up so that he (can) look over the sill. Somebody (to see) his head above the window and (to get) him, Tom (not to remember) any of that. He never (to find) out who (to save) him.

e) She (to be) in the lobby when he (to come) out of the elevator. She (to talk) to another woman and she (not to see) him for a moment and he (to have) an opportunity to study her and observe what the years (to do) to her. She (to put) on weight and the old sharpness of her face (to be) gone. Her beauty (to diminish), and she (to be) transformed into a robust matron.

f) Although it (to be) early afternoon the airport (to look) gloomy. The plane from New York (to be) delayed. In a corner of the restaurant a man and a woman (to wait), drinking coffee. The man (to smile) absently. He (to try) to come to the airport alone. He (not to like) the prolonged ceremonies of leave-taking. But his wife (to insist) upon driving him out.

g) When I (to arrive) at the college hall, I (to see) John in the crowd and (to go) over to him.

"Hallo, John," I said. "What you (to do) here?"

"Oh, I (to be) a student here."

"You might have called on me."

"I (to do), but you (to be) out," said John, looking at me with very wide eyes.

"What you (to read)?"

"Modern languages," he said with a grin. He suddenly (to break) off and (to move) away. Then the man who (to watch) us talk (to smile) at me and (to ask): "You (to know) John?"

"Yes. We (to be) at school together."

h) Lloyd Barber (to lie) on his bed reading the newspaper when the telephone (to ring).

It (to be) only two o'clock in the afternoon, but it (to rain) hard and he (to have) no place to go anyway. He (to read) about

most of his time in the stables. The sheepdog (*to have*) a fancy for the kitchen. It's a good thing, too, because the amount of mud he (*to carry*) in on his long coat is extraordinary. He actually (*to ruin*) the rugs. I (*to think*) Alayne (*to be*) quite right to keep them out."

"I (*to miss*) them," Meg said. "And so I'm sure will Renny when he (*to come*) home from the war." She (*to draw*) a deep breath and (*to continue*): "He will find other changes too. For one thing, he will not find me in my house."

Her uncle (*to stare*) at her speechless.

"I (*to sell*) it," she said dramatically. "To a Mr Clapperton."

"Sold it," her uncle (*to repeat*).

"Yes. You know I (*to talk*) of selling it ever since my husband (*to die*). Three days ago an agent (*to bring*) this Mr Clapperton to see me. He (*to be*) a widower, a retired man. His wife (*to hate*) the country but he (*to love*) it. He (*to want*) to settle down and to live a quiet country life. He just (*to want*) something he never (*to have*). He (*to have*) plenty of money."

At that moment Alayne (*to come*) into the room. She (*to be*) aware that Meg (*to be*) with her uncle and (*to give*) them time to talk. Now she (*to be*) told of the sale of the house. She (*to congratulate*) Meg. She (*to think*) Meg (*to do*) well for herself. The talk (*to circle*) round and round Mr Clapperton and Meg's plans for the future. She barely (*to go*) when Wright, the servant, (*to enter*).

"Excuse me, ma'm," he said, "but I have to tell you that the oil heater (*to go*) off. I can't do anything with it. Shall I telephone for the repair man to come out?"

"That oil heater," said the uncle, "(*to be*) a pest. I sometimes wish you had never had it installed, Alayne."

"You must admit," she returned, "that the house (*to have*) a more even temperature since then. You (*to say*) repeatedly how comfortable it (*to make*) every room."

"I know, I know," the uncle said testily. He (*not to like*) to be reminded of what he (*to say*) on another occasion. "But it always (*to get*) out of order."

Alayne (*to rise*) abruptly. "I must go to the children," she said.

"Speaking of the children, ma'm," said Wright. "I (*to have*) a note here from Archer's teacher. I (*to meet*) her on the road and she (*to hand*) it to me."

"Why you (*not to give*) it to me before?" asked Alayne. She (*to give*) him an icy look as she (*to take*) the note. She (*to read*):

the relative standing of the football teams. He (*to have*) no interest in them but he (*to finish*) everything else in the paper.

He (*to pick*) up the phone, and the man at the desk downstairs (*to say*): "There is a lady waiting for you here, Mr Barber."

"She (*to give*) her name?" he asked.

"No. Shall I ask it?"

"Never mind," Barber said. "I'll be right down."

He (*to hang*) up the phone, (*to put*) on his shoes, (*to button*) his collar and (*to pull*) his tie into place. Then he (*to get*) into his jacket and (*to pat*) his pockets to see if he (*to have*) cigarettes. He (*to have*) no cigarettes. He (*to shrug*) and (*to go*) downstairs.

Maureen (*to sit*) in the lobby. She (*to be*) a pretty girl with bright credulous eyes when Barber first (*to meet*) her. But she (*to have*) two children since then, and now she (*to wear*) a worn coat, and her complexion (*to go*) and her eyes (*to be*) pale.

i) He (*to be*) too tired to sleep. He (*to lie*) on his back limply. It (*to seem*) that all the strength (*to go*) out of his limbs, and presently I (*to see*) that he (*to fall*) asleep. It (*to be*) the first natural sleep he (*to have*) for a week. I (*to cover*) him and (*to turn*) down the light. In the morning when I (*to awake*) he (*to be*) still asleep. He (*not to move*). His gold-rimmed spectacles (*to be*) still on his nose.

j) When the train (*to get*) in, half an hour late, it (*to be*) nearly midnight. All the way up the valley the engine (*to battle*) against a high wind. The station (*to be*) deserted. Andrew (*to start*) along Station Road. Full of his success he (*to want*) to reach his wife fast enough to tell her joyously everything that (*to take*) place.

As he (*to turn*) into the main street he (*to see*) a man running. It (*to be*) Frank Davis. He said: "I (*to come*) for you, Doctor. The wind (*to knock*) the wires all to smash."

"What (*to be*) wrong?"

"There (*to be*) a fall-down at Number Three. A lad (*to get*) buried there, almost."

"I've got to have my bag," Andrew said to Davis. "You go up to my house and fetch it for me. Tell my wife where I (*to go*)."

Andrew (*to be*) at Number Three in four minutes. There he (*to find*) three men waiting for him. They (*to go*) to the shaft. As they (*to enter*) the cage another figure (*to come*) across the yard. It (*to be*) Davis with the bag.

"You (to be) quick," Andrew said, as Davis (to enter) the cage. There (to be) a clang and the cage (to drop) to the bottom. Andrew (to be) underground before. Number Three (to be) an old mine with very low passages through which they (to crawl) for nearly half a mile. Then they (to see) a light and three men who (to do) their best to revive another man.

Andrew (to reach) forward. By the light of the lamp he (to run) his hands over the injured man. The whole of the man's body (to be) free except his left forearm, which (to lie) beneath the fall, so pressed by the weight of the rock that it (to hold) him immovably a prisoner.

Andrew (to see) instantly that the only way to free the man (to be) to amputate his forearm and (to ask) for his bag.

Andrew (to open) the bag and (to smell) chloroform. Before he (to thrust) his hand into the bag, he (to know) what (to occur). Frank Davis, in his haste to reach the mine, (to drop) the bag. The chloroform bottle (to be) broken, its contents spilled. He (to have) no time to send up to the surface because the roof (to be) rotten and it (may) crash upon them all.

For perhaps thirty seconds he (to remain) paralysed. Then he again (to bend) over the man and (to say): "Shut your eyes, Sam."

The light (to be) dim. At the first incision Sam (to groan) between his teeth. Then, mercifully, when the knife (to grate) upon the bone, he (to faint). Andrew (can) not see what he (to do). He (to believe) that nobody ever (to think) of performing an operation under such conditions. He (to feel) suffocated here, in this rat-hole, deep down beneath the surface of the ground, lying in the mud.

When he (to finish) at last, he (to sob) with relief. "Take Sam out," he said stumbling to his knees. The men (to put) Sam on the stretcher and (to begin) moving slowly. They (not to go) sixty paces when they (to hear) an echo of a new fall-down behind them.

k) After Meg (to present) the pot of jelly to her uncle she (to sit) down by the open fire and (to prepare) to tell her news. But first she (to remark): "It (to seem) strange not to see three or four dogs stretched on the hearth, as there used to be."

"Yes," her uncle (to agree), "it does. But since the old terrier (to die), Alayne (to be) able to keep them more or less under control. The bulldog (to take) up with the groom and (to spend)

most of his time in the stables. The sheepdog *(to have)* a fancy for the kitchen. It's a good thing, too, because the amount of mud he *(to carry)* in on his long coat is extraordinary. He actually *(to ruin)* the rugs. I *(to think)* Alayne *(to be)* quite right to keep them out.

"I *(to miss)* them," Meg said. "And so I'm sure will Renny when he *(to come)* home from the war." She *(to draw)* a deep breath and *(to continue)*: "He will find other changes too. For one thing, he will not find me in my house."

Her uncle *(to stare)* at her speechless.

"I *(to sell)* it," she said dramatically. "To a Mr Clapperton.

"Sold it," her uncle *(to repeat)*.

"Yes. You know I *(to talk)* of selling it ever since my husband *(to die)*. Three days ago an agent *(to bring)* this Mr Clapperton to see me. He *(to be)* a widower, a retired man. His wife *(to hate)* the country but he *(to love)* it. He *(to want)* to settle down and to live a quiet country life. He just *(to want)* something he never *(to have)*. He *(to have)* plenty of money."

At that moment Alayne *(to come)* into the room. She *(to be)* aware that Meg *(to be)* with her uncle and *(to give)* them time to talk. Now she *(to be)* told of the sale of the house. She *(to congratulate)* Meg. She *(to think)* Meg *(to do)* well for herself. The talk *(to circle)* round and round Mr Clapperton and Meg's plans for the future. She barely *(to go)* when Wright, the servant, *(to enter)*.

"Excuse me, ma'm," he said, "but I have to tell you that the oil heater *(to go)* off. I can't do anything with it. Shall I telephone for the repair man to come out?"

"That oil heater," said the uncle, "*(to be)* a pest. I sometimes wish you had never had it installed, Alayne."

"You must admit," she returned, "that the house *(to have)* a more even temperature since then. You *(to say)* repeatedly how comfortable it *(to make)* every room."

"I know, I know," the uncle said testily. He *(not to like)* to be reminded of what he *(to say)* on another occasion. "But it always *(to get)* out of order."

Alayne *(to rise)* abruptly. "I must go to the children," she said.

"Speaking of the children, ma'm," said Wright. "I *(to have)* a note here from Archer's teacher. I *(to meet)* her on the road and she *(to hand)* it to me."

"Why you *(not to give)* it to me before?" asked Alayne. She *(to give)* him an icy look as she *(to take)* the note. She *(to read)*:

"Dear Mrs Whiteoak, I do dislike to complain of dear little Archer, but he (*to be*) very late for school every morning this week and yesterday he (*not to appear*) till afternoon. This is very bad for his work which, as you know, is uneven ..."

"Is anything wrong?" the uncle asked.

"No, not exactly."

Wright (*to listen*). To him Alayne (*to say*): "You may telephone for the repair man." When he (*to leave*) the room she (*to exclaim*) almost tragically: "It's about Archer. He (*to play*) truant again. Really, I (*not to know*) what to do about him."

At that moment the door (*to open*) and a boy of eight years (*to come*) into the room. He (*to look*) at his elders with an air of profound pessimism.

"Now then, sir," the uncle said, "what about these complaints of you? We (*to know*) what you (*to be*) up to."

"I (*not to like*) going to school," said Archer. "It (*to make*) me tired."

His mother (*to look*) at him anxiously. "Archer, when you (*to say*) school (*to make*) you tired, you (*to mean*) it (*to make*) you tired in a slangy sense or you (*to mean*) it (*to tire*) you?"

Archer (*to consider*) this and then (*to reply*): "The teacher (*to make*) me tired and the lessons (*to tire*) me."

"Good man!" the uncle exclaimed. "You (*to explain*) it perfectly."

1) There (*to be*) a loud crash upstairs, followed by a prolonged wailing sound. Mary (*to toss*) the book which she (*to read*) on the table and (*to run*) up the stairs two at a time.

The scene (*to be*) much as she (*to expect*). Theo (*to sit*) up in bed looking rather sheepish, holding the dog in his arms. The maid (*to cry*) and (*to try*) to extract a handkerchief from her apron. Theo's tea tray (*to lie*) upon the floor with a mess, partly on it and partly round about it, of broken crockery, scattered bread and butter and shattered cake. The carpet (*not to suffer*), since the floor in Theo's room (*to be*) always thickly covered with old newspapers, and into this litter the spilt tea already (*to be*) absorbed.

"Oh, Casie, do stop it," said Mary to the maid. "Go downstairs and put the kettle on again. I'll clear this up."

Casie (*to go*) away still weeping.

"What (*to happen*)?" said Mary.

"Casie (*to say*) she (*to be*) old and useless now and I (*to agree*) with her, and then she (*to throw*) the tea tray on the floor."

"Theo, you mustn't bait Casie like that, you always (to do) it, it (to be) so unkind."

The dog (to jump) down and (to investigate) the wreckage on the floor. His wet pink nose (to quiver) as he (to shoot) out a delicate pink lip and very daintily (to pick) up a thin slice of bread and butter.

"Don't let the dog get at the cake, please. Would you mind putting it on to this?" Theo (to say) and (to hold) out a sheet of newspaper. Mary (to pick) up the larger fragments of the cake and (to put) them on the newspaper. Then she (to begin) to collect the debris on to the tray.

The dog (to be) now on the bed again, his tail, on which he (to sit), vibrating with frustrated wags. Theo (to beam) too. Looking at them sternly, it (to occur) to Mary that the dog (to come) to resemble Theo, or perhaps it (to be) the other way round.

m) It was four years ago that Maurice (to leave) his native land and now he (to be) again within its borders. Then he (to sail) by passenger ship from Halifax to Cobh. He (to return) by plane and warship by way of Portugal and New York. He (to smile) as he (to consider) the change made in him by those four years in Ireland. He (to be) now a different being, he thought, from the child of thirteen who (to go) to live with old Dermot. How timid he (to be) then! The very marrow of him (to shudder) as he (to stand) waiting in the hall while old Dermot (to interview) Wright in whose charge Maurice (to be). When Wright (to come) out of the room he (to wink) at Maurice and (to whisper): "I (to hope) you'll like the old man better than I do."

Maurice slowly (to enter) the room where Dermot (to wait). The man (to look) very old, but his voice (to be) strong and his handclasp warm. Maurice clearly (to remember) the first words they (to exchange).

"How do you do?" Dermot (to say). "I hear you (to be) seasick coming across."

"A little. After that it (to be) fine."

Then Dermot (to ask): "You (to think) you can bear to visit me for a while?"

"Yes. I'm sure I can." His own voice (to sound) very small even to himself.

"Remember," Dermot (to continue), "if you (not to like) me you may go home whenever you (to choose)."

"Mummie (to tell) me so."

Maurice (to be) terribly homesick on that first night in Ireland, but the next day (to be) warm and sunny. Dermot (to show) him the garden and the pastures where the horses (to graze). Later, by himself, Maurice (to cross) the green fields and (to climb) the hill from where he (to have) a glimpse of the sea.

At the end of his first summer in Ireland the war (to come). It now (to go) on for four years. In spite of all the letters from home Maurice (to feel) remote from the war. Even when his father and his uncles (to go) overseas to fight, even when he (to hear) that his father (to be) a prisoner in Germany, he (to feel) remote from the war, leading his peaceful life with his tutor and the old man.

Now Dermot (to be) dead and young Maurice (to be) on his way home.

Again he (to think) of the change in himself. He (to go) over to Ireland in the charge of Wright, doing just what Wright (to tell) him to do; he (to come) back by himself, doing just as he (to please). He (to leave) home wearing the clothes of a small boy. He (to return) in the clothes of a man. He (to try) to feel the unconcern of the seasoned traveller, a man who (to be) abroad and (to know) all about life. But, as the train (to near) the city, a tremor (to run) through him and his mouth (to become) dry. Who would be at the station to meet him? Not his father, for his father (to be) still a prisoner in Germany. Perhaps his mother would come! At the thought of her his heart (to give) a quick thud. Her figure (to rise) before him, as he (to see) her at the moment of their parting more than four years ago. Her arms (to be) held close against her body, but her eyes (to cling) to him in anguish. She (to fear) she (may) never see him again. Now he (to have) a sharp stab of jealousy as he (to think) how his brothers (to be) close beside her all these years, and he far away. He (to be) almost a stranger.

Now he (to look) out at the fields baked brown in the late summer drought, at the wire fences and the ugly little houses of the suburbs. The train (to near) the city. People (to begin) to gather their things together.

Ex. 63. State the kind of action the Future Indefinite, the Future Continuous and the Future Perfect are used to express in the following sentences:

1. Come back tomorrow, I'll explain it all then.
2. She'll stay with us as long as her family can do without her.

3. "The evenings *will be getting* long soon," I said to my aunt, to cheer her up.
4. It is not wise for you to go back home. You'll *meet* a nice boy here, you'll *settle* down, *get* a nice flat and you'll *get* everything you want and deserve.
5. If you come back in about twenty minutes Alec and I *will have had* our talk.
6. He'll *talk* only of his father.
7. I'll *remember* that.
8. You'd better ring me back in half an hour. By then I'll *have found* the letter.
9. "I do wish you'd do something about these stones," said Mary. "We *shall all be falling* over them."
10. In the meantime, I *shall be* careful what I eat.
11. "You *will talk* to Paula, won't you?" "Yes. I'll *do it* straight away."
12. He's very much ashamed. He realizes that it's all over between them. I think he'll *be leaving* quite soon.
13. The trial *will last* a few weeks.
14. Let's go for a walk. We'll *go up* through the woods and I'll *show* you where the spring comes out to the ground.
15. They'll *miss* her a lot, I know.

Ex. 64. Use the required future forms in the following sentences:

1. How terribly nice of you to come! I just (*to wash*) off and (*to get*) my coat on, and then I (*to show*) you round.
2. I (*to clean*) up when you come with my things.
3. He says they (*to finish*) the house by the end of next month.
4. Meg cast herself on her father's knee and threw her arms about his neck. "Your father's tea (*to get*) cold, Meg," said her mother.
5. He probably (*to get*) here in about three weeks. By which time I (*to return*) to the University.
6. "I don't have a job." "Don't be scared. We (*to find*) something."
7. In that case we (*to take*) a taxi.
8. You can't live that far from the office. In a little while you (*to look*) for a place back here.
9. Your father (*to be*) disappointed.
10. He never (*to make*) much money.

11. He (*to eat*) an orange every day.
12. He (*to practise*) the violin all the afternoon.
13. All of Bennet's men (*to wait*) when the union organisers show up.
14. The judge (*to ask*) you a few questions.

Ex. 65. Say whether the use of the Future Indefinite in the following sentences is free or conditioned or modally coloured:

1. I'll come round tomorrow night.
2. His father *won't hear* of his giving up the job.
3. Suddenly sorry, she said: "Some day, perhaps, I *shall come* to life again."
4. John is not here. He'll be back soon though.
5. I'll drop you a note when I've seen Paula.
6. Do sit down, Edmund. You'll break something if you go on moving around.
7. I don't know what I'll do when I leave here. I'll probably never get another job.
8. Will you forgive me for saying something, Mr March?
9. Shall I turn on the bath for you?
10. It'll be easier when you get away. We *won't see* one another every day.
11. Oh, don't bother about me. I'll stroll down and look at the town.
12. He's got a lovely voice. He'll go a long way. You'll see.
13. "The sun *will dry* me quickly enough," he said leaving the towel on the edge of the pool.
14. They *will do* whatever they have to do to regain their self-respect.
15. They'll wonder where I am.
16. Andy is overtired, and unless he rests he *will have* a breakdown.
17. It *won't do* Tony any real harm to wait.
18. "I'll only go to oblige you," said Kate.
19. Most people *will assume* that I intend to drift around and become completely idle.
20. I *shall go* through with it. I won't let Renny down.
21. A boat *will be sent* to fetch them at the pier.
22. *Won't* you sit down?
23. If you'll take my advice you'll go home.

24. I am forced to discharge you from the Service. The necessary papers *will reach* you in due course. Meanwhile you *will return* to your post.
25. Now go to bed, or you'll be ill.
26. The dining-room *will be painted* next.
27. I think he'll *speak* to us about it.
28. You *shall have* it back tomorrow.
29. This barn *will be pulled* down soon.
30. He'll certainly *find* it out for you.

Ex. 66. Compare, in the following sentences, different grammatical means of denoting future actions and state the specific meaning each of these means adds to the idea of futurity:

1. "We're *going to have* more rain." "Yes. Bob *will be* glad he's got his hay in."
2. I'm *having* some people in after dinner tonight at my place. *Will* you come?
3. "When is Rosemary *coming*?" "Some time later this evening, Philip said. And he's *coming*, too. We're *going to have* a jolly family evening." "You'll *have* to look after her till I *get* back."
4. At least I'll *see* that they *don't do* anything outrageous to her.
5. He heard a young female voice cry harshly and distinctly: "I'm *going to have* one more cake. I *will have* one more."
6. Now everything is prepared. We only want the taxi. But it *is not to be* here till 10 o'clock.
7. What time *do* we *arrive*?
8. Well, I'll *be seeing* you this evening.
9. "How long *are* you *going to stay* with us?"
10. He says he'll *do* whatever I wish.
11. I don't know when I *shall be* in the mood for entertainment.
12. There is a train that *leaves* Waverly at ten o'clock tomorrow morning.
13. I'll probably *come* back and *sleep* here.
14. "What's your brother like? I *shall be knowing* him at Oxford," said Val.
15. What *do* I *say* to him?
16. A new car *will cost* you a lot of money.
17. If we *don't get* there before seven o'clock they *will have had* dinner.
18. Are you *staying* at home tonight?

19. You *are to stay* here till I *come* back.
20. Now that your assistant's gone you *will be looking* for someone to do his job.
21. "When he *comes*," said the General, "I'll see him alone."
22. In that case we'll *take* a bus.
23. They *are to be* married this spring.

Ex. 67. Choose the best suited means of denoting future actions for the following sentences:

1. I (*to write*) to Jack tonight and (*to make*) sure that he (*to meet*) you and (*to look*) after you.
2. I have the feeling that something (*to happen*), and it depresses me.
3. "Can I help you, Mary? You (*to wash*) up?" "No. Casie (*to do*) it. I (*to take*) some strawberries up to Uncle Willy." "May I come, too? I just (*to go*) as far as the cottage."
4. Well, I (*to speak*) to Aubrey. I (*to see*) him at lunch.
5. Do you think there (*to be*) a war?
6. I suppose I (*to stay*) here a little longer.
7. Sooner or later you (*to get*) over it.
8. I never (*to forget*) that night.
9. We soon (*to see*) who is right.
10. Whatever damage they (*to do*) they (*to pay*) for it.
11. "Ann," said her mother, "here is news that (*to surprise*) you. Phil has come from abroad. He (*to come*) to see us tomorrow."
12. If you (*not to go*) I (*to fetch*) my husband.
13. It (*to be*) a real pleasure for me to see them back.
14. Roy is on his way. He probably (*to get*) here in about three hours.
15. Do put something on, Tony. You (*to catch*) cold.
16. We (*to have*) coffee after dinner as usual.
17. You should go and say good-bye to your mother. The train (*to leave*) in twenty minutes.
18. No, I don't think you can see her. And she (*to do*) her home-work after supper.
19. A soft voice said: "Are you locked out? Don't worry. I (*to let*) you in."
20. "Now I feel much stronger. And the doctor says I (*to leave*) the hospital soon."
21. I (*to tell*) you the whole story one of these days.

22. I'm sure you (*not to like*) the play.
23. He certainly (*to expect*) you to come.
24. Tell me all about it. I (*not to mention*) it to anybody.
25. You must keep away from the road until it (*to be*) dark. The peasants (*to go*) to market soon.
26. It is September already. The leaves (*to fall*) soon.
27. The sun (*to set*) by the time we (*to get*) home.
28. This book (*to tell*) you all about it.
29. When we (*to get*) back he (*to have*) a bath and we (*to find*) him asleep in his bed.
30. She was still sitting in the chair in which he had left her. "Hello, why haven't you dressed for dinner?" He looked about the room. "You haven't even unpacked." "I (*not to unpack*). I (*not to stay*) here. I (*to leave*) you."
31. "Now that you have arrived, what you (*to do*) with yourself in England?" "Hunt a job. I expect I (*to end*) as a chauffeur. Where you (*to stay*)?" "With my people at first, anyway. If you still (*to want*) to see me when you (*to be*) home a week, you (*to find*) me there."
32. Unlike me, he can't remain alone for any length of time. Place him in my position and see what (*to happen*). Within an hour he (*to look*) for his morning paper, within two hours he (*to invite*) his friends in to play poker.

Ex. 68. Revision: use the required present, past or future forms in the following texts:

a) When the old man (*to finish*) his meal, he (*to feel*) inclined to discuss their Irish relative with his grandson.

"I (*to like*) the man," he said. "He (*to appear*) to be a very agreeable fellow, but I can't somehow picture him on our farm. Can you, John?"

"Not for the life of me," said John. "I can't imagine what Father (*to do*) with him. He (*to be*) no use to anyone."

"But you always (*to complain*) that you (*to have*) too much to do," the old man retorted.

"What we (*to need*)," said John, "(*to be*) another good farm hand, not a gentleman farmer to share the profits."

"I understand from your mother that he (*to do*) anything."

"You may understand it from her, but he (*to say*) so?"

"My god!" exclaimed the old man, "the man barely (*to arrive*)!"

b) Meanwhile it (*to get*) on to the time for the family's usual fortnight at the seaside. They always (*to go*) to Herne Bay and for years they (*to take*) the same lodgings. One evening Herbert (*to say*) to his mother as casually as he could: "By the way, Mum, you'd better write and tell them I (*not to want*) my room this year. Betty and I (*to get*) married and we (*to go*) to Scotland for the honeymoon."

His mother (*not to say*) a word. She (*to go*) deathly pale.

"Oh, Mum, don't take it so hard. I'm sure you (*to like*) Betty when you (*to get*) to know her. Everything (*to be*) all right if you only (*to be*) reasonable."

"That's what you think. Well, let me tell you that this woman never (*to set*) foot in this house, only over my dead body."

c) "What I (*to have*) to do to earn so much money?" Barber asked.

"You (*to have*) to do a little flying," Smith chuckled.

"Go on," said Barber.

"A friend of mine just (*to buy*) a single-engine plane. He (*to need*) a private pilot. My friend (*to be*) a wealthy man who (*to like*) to travel, especially to France. He (*to go*) there at every opportunity."

"Yes?"

"With you he would like to make two trips from Egypt to the South of France within next month. Then, on the third trip he (*to find*) that he (*to be*) in a hurry and he (*to take*) the commercial plane and his pilot (*to follow*) two days later, alone."

"Alone?" Barber asked.

"Alone," Smith said, "with a small box."

"And what there (*to be*) in the small box?"

"It (*to be*) absolutely necessary to know?"

"What I (*to tell*) the customs people when they (*to ask*) me what (*to be*) in the box?" Barber said.

"You (*to have*) nothing to do with the customs people," Smith said. "When you (*to take*) off from the airport in Cairo, the box (*not to be*) on board. And when you (*to land*) at the airport at Cannes, the box (*not to be*) on board. This is how it (*to be*) done. You (*to establish*) a pattern. You (*to be*) in and out of Cairo airport several times. They (*to know*) you. You (*to become*) a part of the routine of the field. Then on the trip you (*to take*) alone, everything (*to be*) perfectly legitimate. You (*to have*) only a small

bag with your personal effects. Your flight plan (*to show*) that your destination (*to be*) Cannes and that you (*to come*) down at Malta and Rome for refuelling only. You (*to take*) off from Cairo. You (*to go*) off course by only a few miles. Some distance from the coast, you (*to be*) over the desert. You (*to come*) down on an old RAF landing strip that (*not to be*) used since 1943. There (*to be*) several men there. They (*to put*) the box on board. The whole thing (*not to take*) more than two minutes. At Malta, nobody (*to ask*) you anything, because you (*to be*) in transit and you (*not to leave*) the plane and you (*to stay*) only long enough to refuel. The same thing at Rome. You (*to arrive*) over the South coast of France in the evening, before the moon (*to be*) up. Once more, Smith continued, you (*to be*) just a little off course. You (*to fly*) low over the hills between Cannes and Grasse. At a certain point, you (*to see*) an arrangement of lights. You (*to throttle*) down, (*to open*) the door, and (*to push*) the box out, from a height of a hundred feet. Then you (*to close*) the door and (*to turn*) towards the sea and (*to land*) at Cannes airport. Your papers (*to be*) perfectly in order. You (*to have*) nothing to declare. You (*to walk*) away from the plane once and for all and we (*to pay*) you the money I (*to speak*) of. Isn't it lovely?"

"No. It isn't lovely at all."

d) "Let's go and see what the workmen (*to do*) at our new house," said Dorothy.

Dorothy's mother (*to plan*) for several months to build a house on a plot of land on the same street that they (*to live*) on now, but farther down. The contractor (*to be*) at work only a few days.

"He just (*to finish*) staking off the ground when I (*to be*) there the other afternoon," said Ethel.

"He (*to be*) way ahead of that now," Dorothy (*to report*) as they (*to walk*) on. "I (*to be*) sure that the workmen (*to dig*) the whole cellar by this afternoon and they (*to begin*) to put in the concrete wall."

As they (*to approach*) the place which they (*to call*) "our house lot" for several months, they (*to see*) that the gravel for the concrete (*to be*) hauled to the top of the hill where the bags of sand and cement already (*to be*) unloaded and a small concrete mixer set up.

"They (*to do*) things fast, () they?" exclaimed Dorothy.

Mr Anderson, the contractor, (*to bow*) to them as they (*to reach*) the top of the hill.

"You (*to come*) to superintend us, Miss Dorothy? " he asked pleasantly. "We (*to make*) all our preparations for mixing the concrete today, and then we (*to start*) up the machine tomorrow. It (*not to take*) us long to do this small cellar," Mr Anderson (*to say*) and (*to walk*) away to attend to the placing of the pile of gravel.

"If your driveway (*not to wind*) around more than this road, all your friends' horses (*to puff*) like mills when they (*to reach*) the top," Ethel warned her cousin.

"The driveway," said Dorothy, "(*to sweep*) around the foot of the hill and (*to come*) gently up the side."

"That (*to be*) a long walk for people on foot."

"There (*to be*) a footpath over there," Dorothy (*to indicate*) a side of the hill away from the proposed driveway. "It (*to be*) a short cut and it (*to be*) walled in with shrubs so it (*not to be*) seen from the driveway."

The girls now (*to come*) to the excavation for the cellar and (*to watch*) the workmen throwing out the last shovelfuls of earth.

"They (*to make*) a fence all around the cellar, you see," Dorothy said, "it (*to keep*) the concrete in place when it (*to be*) poured in, and (*to give*) it shape."

"I think the cellar (*to look*) ugly with that plank wall," declared Ethel seriously.

"The planks (*to be*) taken away."

"The concrete (*not to show*) lines where the cracks between the boards (*to be*)?"

"You (*to see*) those rolls of heavy paper over there? The planks (*to be*) lined with that so that the concrete (*to come*) against a perfectly smooth surface."

"Oh, it (*to be*) all right then," said Ethel, who (*to be*) afraid that she (*to hurt*) Dorothy's feelings.

Ex. 69. Compare, in the following sentences, different grammatical means of denoting future actions viewed from the past and state the specific meaning each of these means adds to the idea of futurity:

1. Her parents were out playing bridge, and *would not return* for another hour.
2. She told me last night that she *was going* for a swim if she *woke* early.
3. He said he *was going to live* in France.
4. He had made all his plans. He *was going to buy* a house and he *would keep* a motor-car.

5. I told him that when his wife *came* they *were to follow* the path till they *found* us.
6. She felt certain that if she *refused* he *would make* some scene.
7. He learned that Mrs Carter had been on the ship since she left Yokohama and she *would be spending* Christmas at sea.
8. Then I told my father that I *wasn't going* into his goddamn business.
9. She held out her hands in entreaty and I saw that she *was going to cry*.
10. She talked a little about the old days and asked if I *would come* to the party.
11. He said that the head *would now have to sack* Canning, and they'd *be losing* a good man.
12. He made sure that the child *was provided* for.
13. In a few weeks he *was to marry* Meg.
14. They had heard that he *would never be* quite well again.

Ex. 70. Choose the best-suited means of denoting future actions viewed from the past in the following sentences:

1. He asked him if he *(to stay)* for supper and *(to meet)* the staff.
2. We all knew that Basil *(to have)* to cut his hair when he *(to go)* into the army.
3. Rehearsals at the theatre *(to begin)* at the end of March. The season *(to open)* in May.
4. She had heard they *(to send)* somebody from Sidney to inspect their work.
5. Your mother thought that you *(to want)* a place of your own when you *(to come)* out of the army.
6. Renny started out early the next day. He knew it *(to be)* hot.
7. Marge informed her landlady that she soon *(to leave)*.
8. Then one day he suddenly asked me if I *(to marry)* him.
9. The grand wedding ball *(to begin)* at eight o'clock that evening.
10. I did not know what *(to become)* of me.
11. Did you think you *(to be)* believed?
12. He saw to it that she *(to get)* everything she needed.
13. I hoped he *(to find)* some fun where he *(to go)* for his holiday.
14. Peter *(to dine)* with the Duncans on Sunday. But in the morning he called up and asked if he might be excused because his father *(to come)* down and they *(to have)* a family party.
15. He took care that his luggage *(to be)* sent directly to the hotel.

Ex. 71. Revision: use the required present, past, future or future-in-the-past forms in the following texts:

a) George Moon (*to sit*) in his office. His work (*to be*) finished, and he (*to linger*) there because he (*not to have*) the heart to go down to the club. It (*to get*) on towards dinner time, and there (*to be*) a good many fellows hanging about the bar. Two or three of them (*to offer*) him a drink. He (*can*) not face their heartiness. He (*to know*) some of them for thirty years. They (*to bore*) him, and on the whole he (*to dislike*) them, but now that he (*to see*) them for the last time it (*to give*) him a pang. Tonight they (*to give*) him a farewell dinner. Everyone (*to be*) there and they (*to present*) him with a silver tea-service that he (*not to want*) in the least. They (*to make*) speeches in which they (*to refer*) to his work in the colony, (*to express*) their regret at his departure and (*to wish*) him long life to enjoy his well-earned leisure. He (*to reply*) suitably. He (*to prepare*) a speech in which he (*to survey*) the change that (*to take*) place in the colony since he (*to land*) at Singapore. He (*to thank*) them for their loyal co-operation with him during the term he (*to be*) in the service. They (*to sing*) "For he's a jolly good fellow." Then they (*to dance*) and a good many of the younger men (*to get*) drunk. Tomorrow a large crowd (*to see*) him off at the station and that (*to be*) the end of him. He (*to wonder*) what they (*to say*) of him. His subordinates (*to fear*) him. He never (*to spare*) himself and (*to see*) no reason why he should spare others. George Moon (*to sigh*) a little. From an official standpoint his career (*to be*) a success; but from the human one it perhaps (*to be*) otherwise. He (*to earn*) respect, but he (*to be*) too clever to think for a moment that he (*to inspire*) affection. No one (*to regret*) him. In a few months he (*to be*) forgotten.

b) He (*to walk*) slowly towards the Etoile. It (*to be*) a raw night and a fog (*to move*) in from the river, and the streets (*to be*) almost empty, because everybody (*to be*) inside eating dinner. He (*not to look*) at any of the lighted windows, because he (*not to buy*) anything for a long time. He (*to pass*) several movie houses. That (*to set*) him thinking about a scenario he (*may*) write to earn some money. In it his hero (*to have*) to fly to Africa to bring back a secret load. He nearly (*to be*) caught several times there, and he (*to fight*) his way out of a trap on the desert, killing several dark men just when they (*to set*) fire to the shed he (*to hide*) in. And

there (*to be*) some engine trouble over the Mediterranean on his way back. And he just (*to pull*) out, with the water lapping at the wing tips, and he undoubtedly (*to crash*), without doing too much damage to himself, probably just a photogenic cut on the forehead. And he (*to turn*) out to be a member of the British Intelligence and he never (*to doubt*) his luck and his nerve never (*to fail*) him. Or, if it was an artistic picture, there (*to be*) a heavy ground mist on the hills and the plane (*to drone*) on and on, desperate and lost, and then, finally, with the fuel tanks empty, the hero (*to crash*) in flames. Battered and staggering, as he was, he (*to try*) to get the secret load out, but he (*not to be*) able to move it, and finally the flames (*to drive*) him back and he (*to stand*) against a tree, laughing crazily, his face black with smoke, watching the plane and the load burn, to show the vanity of human aspiration.

Ex. 72. Say whether the action of the object clause precedes, follows or is simultaneous with the action of the principal clause in the following sentences:

1. He asked me what work I *was doing* and whether I *intended* to go to a University.
2. Has she been telling you why she *wants* to chuck her job?
3. I'm afraid I'll *be doing* the washing tomorrow.
4. She claimed that she *had met* Monty on her way home. Monty had told her that I *would* probably come to his place later.
5. Then I thought about Mother. She would certainly ask me where I *had been* all day.
6. I don't believe anyone *has troubled* to think about that.
7. She said she *would be staying* in town next day to do some shopping.
8. It's not true she *is* my friend.
9. I'll tell you what he's *doing*.
10. He had told me he *had been* on the island for fifteen years.
11. I will say that we *have agreed* to provide for the child.
12. I don't think that I *shall* ever work for your father.
13. Out of the corner of my eye I saw the youths *had stopped* talking and *were watching* us.
14. I hope you *know* what you're *doing*.
15. I'll let you know what the situation *is*.
16. I don't know whether he *was* a fool or a wise man.
17. I'll tell Marcel that you'll *take* over the actual direction immediately.

18. In the hotel the waiter told me that an American *had been staying* there for three months.
19. It is strange that he *didn't speak* to you.
20. It was also rumoured that Dan *had got* married.

Ex. 73. Make the actions in the following object clauses simultaneous with those of their principal clauses:

1. I was surprised you *(to know)* my name.
2. She cannot imagine what he *(to do)* there.
3. I've forgotten what he *(to look)* like.
4. I did not know whether the doctor *(to mean)* what he *(to say)* or whether he *(to have)* a joke at my expense.
5. They'll say you *(not to make)* proper use of your information.
6. When he had a chance he would certainly ask her if she *(to do)* her bit to make the party a success.
7. "Hallo, Jack," Mrs Holt smiled at him. "My husband has been telling me how much he *(to like)* you."
8. Quite soon he'll be asking if all the doors *(to be)* locked for the night.
9. He had told his father that now he *(to make)* ten dollars a week less.
10. The last two weeks she had been saying to everyone who phoned her that she *(to be)* unwell and *(not to leave)* home.
11. It was strange to me that her world *(to seem)* to contain no conflict.
12. When I knew him better he admitted that he *(to feel)* lonely in London.
13. "I had hoped to take a dip before breakfast," Mrs Smith said, "but I found Joseph *(to clean)* the pool."
14. It was a pity I no longer *(to care)* in the least about Pat.
15. David, Nellie has been telling me she *(not to get)* anywhere in her present job.

Ex. 74. Make the actions in the following object clauses precede those of their principal clauses:

1. David said that he *(to ask)* permission from the director for me to watch the dress rehearsal.
2. I knew that for the past twenty-five years he *(to buy)* the same paper each morning.

3. Indeed it was whispered that the headmaster (*to receive*) a telegram from the boy's father.
4. You'll see what I (*to write*) about you.
5. But he was uneasy. His wife would easily find out why he (*to go*) to Saigon.
6. It is not known where he (*to spend*) his early childhood.
7. I don't know what (*to go*) wrong between them.
8. Then he admitted that he (*to live*) since the summer in his father's house.
9. Of course he'll wonder why you (*to cry*).
10. It's a pity you (*to miss*) that concert.
11. Her mother had once confided to her that she (*to want*) to be an actress.
12. It was probably true that he (*to be*) quite fond of his late brother.
13. One day I'll tell you why I never (*to marry*).
14. I wonder what she (*to do*) there so late at night.
15. "I'm glad you (*to come*) early," she said again.
16. Have you heard that I (*to be*) given that job?
17. You know how hard I (*to try*) to talk them out of it?

Ex. 75. Make the actions in the following object clauses follow those of their principal clauses:

1. He decided that he (*to go*) to Berlin as soon as possible.
2. He had written to her that he (*to come*) home.
3. I sent them a telegram this morning to say I (*to go*) to England and that I (*to write*).
4. I'll ask him what he (*to have*) for lunch.
5. They wondered if he (*to come*) back.
6. I'm sorry. I'd quite forgotten you (*to stay*) here.
7. Before leaving the house in the morning, she had told her mother she (*to work*) in the hospital that afternoon.
8. I won't mention where he (*to be*) sent.
9. It is improbable that they (*to make*) any considerable progress in so short a time.
10. I think you (*to stay*) in town for a night at least.
11. It was understood that he (*to invite*) us to lunch on Saturday.

Ex. 76. Find in the following sentences the head-words which the object clauses are subordinated to:

1. She seemed to have forgotten what had been happening a few minutes before.

2. Freddy felt relieved that there was no one in the house.
3. I pretended to be reading, afraid that he would come and look at my face.
4. After he told his story he stared at me, as if to see whether it had been worth telling.
5. At home I found a note asking me if I would lunch with my aunt.
6. He was suddenly conscious that the little lady across the aisle was staring intently at him.
7. Peter had telephoned from the office to say that Simon had agreed to taking a holiday.
8. She talked about herself quite frankly, admitting that there had been a quarrel between her and her husband.

Ex. 77. Identify the kinds of subordinate clauses in which the rules of the sequence of tenses are strictly observed:

1. What surprised me was that Pat was so much at home here.
2. Arthur is working his guts out so that he can get a good job and keep his family.
3. He grimaced at the thought of what the suitcase had cost him.
4. We had better withdraw our opposition, Mr Carter thought. The young people had promised not to marry until Grace had taken her degree. That would give them a year, and by then, he hoped, she would have changed her mind.
5. All this led to the promise that she would entrust her future security to me.
6. The odd thing about him is that he is so shy.
7. Tom looked at his French teacher. She was particularly attractive today, he thought.
8. He invited me to lunch with him at the club, so that we could go together to his office afterwards.
9. He had gone to the manager to protest, Mr Holt said, but the manager had said he was sorry, there was nothing he could do about it.
10. Whoever told you that was lying.
11. The question was why he had done it at all.
12. What she couldn't understand was why he had told them such a pack of lies.

Ex. 78. Explain how the rules of the sequence of tenses work in clauses of the second, third, etc. degree of subordination:

1. She thought that her sister would detest the idea that their husbands had met to decide what they were going to do about the farm.
2. Henry's father came down to the school field to tell Henry that they had just got a telegram from Washington announcing that Henry's brother had been killed in action in Germany.
3. I knew she was itching to tell me what had happened.
4. I felt that I at last knew her well enough to ask about what had been in my mind for the past week.
5. I wonder if you realize that your sister is going to be in London too.
6. He knew that his mother would think he was seriously ill and would probably speak to the teacher.
7. He wanted to return to the house to see how Billy was doing and tell him that he had phoned to his mother and that he would be going out to California in two or three days.
8. She knew that he had been worried by the letter, too, and was now relieved to know that things were taking a turn for the better.
9. Rudy had decided that he would have to tell Denton that it was impossible for him to appear before the board the next day, but that he would offer to do so any other day.

Ex. 79. Explain why the rules of the sequence of tenses are not observed in the following sentences:

1. I just wanted to thank you and tell you you *don't have* to be there tomorrow at two p.m.
2. Yet was it not plain that he *ought*, whatever his motives for it might be, to break with Jessica and to see her no more?
3. He spoke with the satisfaction of a competent workman who *knows* his job from A to Z.
4. I practised for only about a quarter of an hour, then watched the others shoot. I had forgotten how deafening a pistol *can* be.
5. His only passion was for the beauty of nature, and he sought felicity in the simple and natural things that life *offers* to everyone.

6. She began to consider how she *should* face her family.
7. Monty had told me that he had no permit for the gun, and that in England it *is* illegal to own a gun without a permit.
8. His room was getting cold, and I knew I *should* go; but we sat there because it *is* difficult to go without any particular reason for leaving.
9. "Eat your milk," she said, "it is getting cold." Billy folded his arms and leaned back. "I told you I *don't like* milk."
10. "Did anybody telephone Father at the shop?" "I was out. But Mrs Chapman said he *took* a call."
11. I thought he'll go there tomorrow.
12. He knew that he *must* not tell Willy about his friend.
13. After a few trips to the stream I realized why fishing as a sport *takes* such a hold on such different types of people.
14. I felt like a man who *wants* to fall down and go to sleep, but *is* forced to keep on walking.
15. He made me realize that half the confusion of philosophers *is* not a failure to find the right answers, but a failure to ask the right questions.

Ex. 80. Use the required forms in the following sentences, observing the rules of the sequence of tenses:

1. He hastened back home in the hope that the guests (*not to go*) all yet.
2. Well, I don't think I ever (*to see*) you before.
3. She ended by saying that she (*to think*) she (*to make*) a mistake.
4. She knew what (*to go*) on in their minds.
5. She felt that her father (*not to want*) to disturb her.
6. She had telephoned her husband to the office to say that her brother (*to return*) from abroad.
7. An old friend rang up to ask if they (*to have*) a good time in Italy, how Elisabeth (*to feel*), and whether she (*can*) go with his wife to a concert on Sunday morning.
8. I could see that he (*to be*) glad that the talk (*to turn*) to a new subject.
9. It's odd that they both (*to turn*) up there about the same time.
10. She had not yet figured out what she (*to do*) and she (*to hope*) to be able to wait a little.
11. It was possible that Jack (*to hang*) around.

12. She knew that John (*to work*) very hard and (*not to agree*) certainly to taking a holiday at the moment.
13. She didn't know why she (*to invent*) suddenly the story.
14. He wondered if Sinclair (*to have*) to go to his father to get the money and (*to have*) to explain why he (*to need*) it.

Ex. 81. Translate the following into English, observing the rules of the sequence of tenses:

1. Я был уверен, что он уже жалеет, что написал ей.
2. Мне показалось, что он утомлен, и я спросил его, чем он занимался.
3. У меня было впечатление, что он уже давно здесь.
4. Я кивнул и сказал «да», чувствуя, что это именно то, что ей нужно.
5. Убедившись, что он ничего не сделает, чтобы помочь мне, я изменил свои планы.
6. Я подозревал, что она просто забыла сказать, что я жду.
7. Он знал, о чем она думает.
8. Я понятия не имею, знает ли она, что Фил будет здесь.
9. Кстати, Тед знает, что моя сестра приезжает завтра?
10. Он еще не знал, что будет делать в Нью-Йорке.

Ex. 82. Revision: use the required verb forms in the following sentences:

1. As he (*to think*) for months about leaving his wife and (*not to do*) it because it (*to be*) too cruel to deprive her of himself, her departure (*to be*) a very healthful shock.
2. When she nearly (*to reach*) the end of the curve she (*to see*) a figure ahead of her.
3. Mary (*to return*) to the room. Al (*to sit*) down beside the gas fire and (*to take*) off his shoes.
4. Her eyes (*to be*) puffed, and she obviously (*to cry*) that afternoon.
5. No sooner I (*to arrive*) than I (*to send*) her a letter to say that I (*to have*) a present for her.
6. I (*to get*) back as soon as I (*to get*) through with my business.
7. His cheek (*to be*) cut. When she (*to see*) it she (*to say*): "Oh, you (*to fight*) again."
8. He (*to have*) a son of twenty-seven. He (*to farm*) in New Zealand.
9. She (*to make*) me promise to say nothing about it till she (*to have*) a chance of breaking the news to her father gradually.

10. "How's the baby?" "Frightfully well, thank you, Aunt Em. He (to walk)."
11. As we (to drive), her eyes (to stare) rigidly out of the car window.
12. Before we (to walk) four hundred yards he (to take) his jacket off.
13. She (to become) aware that Tony (to come) back and considerably (to say) nothing.
14. Delany (to sit) up in bed and (to eat) his dinner when Jack (to come) into the room. His complexion (to be) ruddy. Obviously he (to be) shaved. He (to have) a glass of red wine with his meal. He (to wave) his fork as he (to see) Jack.
15. He (to remain) in his seat, as though studying his programme, till the three (to pass) out into the foyer.
16. Darkness (to fall) when he finally (to return) to the hotel. He (to say) nothing to Pat except that he (to turn) down the job. He (cannot) give her any explanation until he completely (to understand) the meaning of what (to happen).
17. He (to take) to drink before they (to be) married three years.
18. A little break like this (to be) what she (to need) all these years.
19. She (to look) up at him from where she (to sit). Her makeup things (to lie) in front of her. She (to do) her face.
20. While his wife (to read) the letter, he (to cross) to the window.
21. My mother said: "You hardly (to touch) your food."
22. As Hugh and I (to come) down the steps we nearly (to run) into my father.
23. I don't know what's the matter with him. He (to act) funny since you (to be) away.
24. I (to sit) there for about ten minutes, pretending to read, when someone (to sit) down at my table.
25. He (to be) sure that there (to be) a serious row when Hugh (to hear) of it.
26. The actress (to stop) in front of their table, smiling widely. He (to stand) up and (to take) her hand. "Hello," he said. "We (to see) your show tonight. We (to think) you (to be) very good indeed."
27. Before we (to sit) five minutes in the drawing-room, there (to be) a heavy shuffle outside and the old man (to push) open the door.
28. "I (to take) you out every day," she promised.

Ex. 83. Revision: use the required verb forms in the following sentences containing the adverb *already*:

1. She felt restless and started washing blouses that (to be) already spotlessly clean.
2. "Margot will be horrified when she hears about it." "She is ready (to hear)."
3. Next day they already (to sit) at table when she came in dinner.
4. It (to be) already dark, and there was a thin rain.
5. An hour later, when my father came home, Uncle Jack already (to teach) me the elements of geometry.
6. When I went into the office next morning I already (to formulate) my plan.
7. "He'll go to the place you work," Jack said. "He already (to be) there."
8. Now if you will excuse me I'll go and change. I (to be) already late.
9. So I went into the living-room, where my aunt already (to wait) for me.
10. It was only a year after the wedding, but he already (to hate) his wife.
11. Most of the trees already (to put) out their leaves and there were buds everywhere.
12. Will it surprise you to know that they already (to offer) me a job?

Ex. 84. Revision: use the required verb forms in the following sentences containing an indication of a period of time expressed by a *for*-phrase:

1. The war (to roll) along its course for two years when she began to grow apprehensive about her son's future.
2. The next week summer arrived. Basil did not ring. For days and days I (not to hear) of or from him.
3. Grant said to Barker: "I (to go) fishing in Scotland for a day or two."
4. "How does it happen that you speak English so well?" "When I was a boy I had an English nanny. And I (to go) to school in England for two years, besides."
5. "You were a marvellous boy in those days," Maurice sighed. "And we (to do) wonderful things together for a few years."
6. Soon the Pellews left the district, and I neither (to see) not (to hear) anything of them for nearly five years.

7. Everything considered, they (*to live*) together for nearly thirty years in what would certainly pass in those days as happiness.
8. I hope you (*to leave*) the child alone for half an hour.
9. He hung up and (*to sit*) looking at the telephone for a long time.
10. She then asked Dick, "You (*to be*) here for a long time?" "I'm to stay in Zurich till July."
11. I (*not to have*) anything to eat for five days.
12. I (*to play*) the piano for five hours a day.
13. Angela took her glass of orange juice to the bathroom and drank it slowly in the bath. She (*to lie*) for a long time in the water, scarcely thinking.
14. At ten o'clock he awoke and remembered that he (*not to see*) Lily for three weeks.
15. That night when my mother said good night to me she (*to hold*) me for a long time in silence.
16. Such periods usually (*to last*) for about two or three weeks.
17. Rumour said that though they always were on good terms, the boys often (*not to speak*) to one another for days together.
18. But it does seem queer his getting caught by the machine he (*to lend*) for years.
19. When he came back into the living-room, he (*to hold*) the envelope in his hands for a long time before he tore it open.
20. The phone at the other end (*to ring*) a long time and he was just about to hang up when he heard Clare's voice in the ear-piece.
21. He (*to keep*) listening for shots for a long time and he got hot and damp in the dug-out.
22. "I'd like you to meet Savina. I (*to tell*) her about you for months." "It's about time I met her," said Haviland, "after I (*to listen*) to you talk to her on the hall telephone for so long now."
23. Don't you realize that for seven years I (*to work*) in London hospitals?
24. "Do they take boarders?" "They (*to let*) their house for a month in the summer."

Ex. 85. Revision: translate the following sentences into English concentrating on the use of verb forms:

1. «Энн, Марта возвращается». — «Я предполагаю, что она остановится у своей сестры».

2. Она заперлась и не спустится вниз, пока они не уйдут.
3. Я понял, что момент, которого он ждал, наступил.
4. Он взял котенка и осторожно положил его туда, где мы его нашли.
5. Привет, Джек. Где ты был и что ты делал все это время?
6. Пока он ждал, он слышал голоса детей, играющих внизу в саду.
7. Я знаю имена всех в деревне. Я живу здесь всю жизнь.
8. Она совсем не была робкой: она попросила меня называть ее Сэлли, когда мы еще не были знакомы и десять минут.
9. Я был не таким уж плохим мужем все эти двадцать лет, что мы женаты.
10. Через шесть месяцев я едва узнавал себя.
11. Я решил не поступать в Кэмбридж. В течение шести месяцев я почти не заглядывал ни в одну книгу по математике.
12. Мы сделаем так, чтобы ты с ним не встретился здесь.
13. Я не пробыл на борту и часа, как он пригласил меня на лпч.
14. Вас будут кормить три раза в день.
15. Рой много работал и плохо спал все это время, и вид у него был очень усталый.
16. Я почти закончил книгу.
17. Ты даже не знаешь, что ты со мною сделал.
18. Я еще ни разу не поел как следует, с тех пор как приехал в Англию.
19. Он не придет. Я только что разговаривала с ним по телефону.
20. «Что ты собираешься делать в воскресенье?» — «Я еще не знаю».
21. Филипп отнес свой чемодан в вагон и теперь курил на перроне.
22. Я видел твою сестру в театре.
23. Как, ты еще не готова? Что же ты делала?
24. В течение двух лет она была лучшей ученицей в классе.
25. Она уже два года лучшая ученица в классе.
26. Ты ведь знаешь, что в следующем семестре профессор Лен-нон будет читать курс по Ренессансу.
27. Жарко, и уже больше месяца нет дождя.
28. Куда я положил свою зажигалку?
29. Я получил большое удовольствие от балета. Почему ты не пошел с нами?
30. Почему ты пришел так поздно?

31. Поезд отправляется без четверти два. Если мы сейчас же не отправимся на вокзал, мы опоздаем.
32. Мы прожили в деревне два месяца, когда мой брат приехал навестить нас.
33. Мы прожили у Смитов два дня и вернулись в Лондон поездом.
34. Когда я встал, я подошел к окну. Хотя дождя уже не было, везде стояли большие лужи.
35. Джон проверил сочинения своих учеников и теперь читал книгу, которую он купил утром по дороге в школу.
36. Как она добралась сюда в такую погоду?
37. Я никогда не чувствовала себя так хорошо, как сейчас.
38. Я никогда не чувствовала себя так хорошо, как тогда.
39. Завтра я уезжаю за город на две недели.
40. После лепча я обычно занимаюсь в библиотеке часа два.
41. Не успел я дойти до угла, как услышал чьи-то шаги сзади.
42. Я дам вам знать, какие меры я приму.
43. Погода в тот день была мрачная. Холодный ветер, дувший с утра, прекратился, но дождь все еще моросил.
44. Едва я успел попрощаться с ними, как поезд тронулся.
45. Перед войной она преподавала географию в течение недолгого времени.
46. Анна сложила свои вещи и теперь ждала такси.
47. Я скажу ему, чтобы он вернул ключ, когда осмотрит дом.
48. Мы ехали около часа и потом увидели небольшое озеро.
49. Мы ехали часа два, когда наконец мы увидели озеро.
50. Я бродил по лесу около часа, когда увидел маленький домик. Так как я никогда не бывал в этих местах, то я не знал, кто в нем живет. Дом стоял среди деревьев, и к нему вела тропинка, по которой я шел.

Ex. 86. Revision: use the required verb forms in the following texts:

a) On Saturday evening Herbert (*to say*) suddenly: "Mum, I (*to ask*) a young lady to come in to tea tomorrow. Is that all right?"

"And may I ask who she (*to be*) and how you (*to get*) to know her?"

"Her name (*to be*) Betty Bevan, and I (*to meet*) her first at the pictures one Saturday afternoon when it (*to rain*). She (*to sit*) next to me and she (*to drop*) her bag and I (*to pick*) it up and we (*to get*) talking."

"And when all this *(to happen)*?"

"About three months ago, and we *(to go)* to the pictures about twice a week ever since."

"What she *(to do)*?"

"She *(to work)* in a typewriting office in the City."

Next day Mrs Sunbury *(to arrange)* the tea very stylishly. Herbert *(to give)* the tea-table a glance of surprise as he *(to usher)* the girl into the sitting-room. Mrs Sunbury *(to cast)* a look at Betty's make-up and dress and *(to take)* an instant dislike to her. But she *(to decide)* to behave like a lady. She *(to talk)* about the weather. She *(to pour)* out tea and *(to ask)* Herbert to give a cup to his lady friend. Then she *(to cut)* the cake and *(to press)* a large piece on her guest. Betty *(to take)* a bite at it and when she *(to put)* it in her saucer it *(to fall)* to the ground.

"Oh, I *(to be)* sorry," *(to say)* the girl, as she *(to pick)* it up.

"It doesn't matter at all, I *(to cut)* you another piece," said Mrs Sunbury.

"Oh, don't bother. I *(not to be)* particular. The floor *(to be)* clean."

"I hope so," said Mrs Sunbury with an acid smile, "but I wouldn't dream of letting you eat a piece of cake that *(to be)* on the floor."

"But I *(not to want)* any more, Mrs Sunbury."

"I *(to be)* sorry you *(not to like)* my cake."

"It's not that. It *(to be)* a beautiful cake, it's only that I *(not to be)* hungry."

Betty *(to refuse)* to have more tea. But when Herbert *(to light)* a cigarette, she *(to say)* to him: "Give me one, too, please. I *(to die)* for a smoke."

Mrs Sunbury *(not to say)* anything to that. She only *(to raise)* her eyebrows slightly. But Betty *(not to be)* such a fool as not to see that Herbert's mother *(to do)* all she could to make her uncomfortable and she *(to be)* offended. She *(to want)* to go, but she *(not to know)* quite how to manage it.

Finally Herbert said: "Well, Betty, I think it's about time we were getting along. I *(to walk)* back with you."

"It *(to be)* a pleasure to see you, Miss Bevan, I'm sure," said Mrs Sunbury, rising to her feet.

An hour later Herbert *(to come)* back and there *(to be)* quite a scene between him and his mother. No reference *(to be)* made next day to what *(to pass)*.

b) The moon now (*to cast*) its light on the bridge. Turning to Finch, Sylvia (*can*) see his face clearly. She (*to think*) of him as an artist, absorbed in his own life, successful as a concert pianist. But now she (*to see*) his vulnerability, the marks left by the suffering of a nature too sensitive for the harsh encounters of life.

He (*to be*) conscious of the gentle compassion of her face. He (*to smile*) and (*to say*): "I'd like to go to my new house and see it in this light. The moon (*to be*) full and when we (*to get*) there it (*to shine*) right in at the large window. Would you come with me? It's not far." They (*to return*) to the house to tell that they (*to leave*). They (*to walk*) in silence, their shadows distinct on the white road. The air (*to be*) vibrant with the shrilling of the locusts.

"What a strange feeling they (*to give*) one," said Sylvia. "As though there were no time to spare."

"There isn't," said Finch.

She said, with regret rather than bitterness, "And I (*to waste*) so much of mine."

As Finch (*to consider*) what to say to that, she (*to add*), "I (*to waste*) some of my time in a nervous breakdown."

"I (*to know*) what nerves (*to be*). I (*to go*) through hell with mine."

They (*to be*) now in a wooded grove and before long (*to stand*) on the terrace of his house. Moonlight (*to lie*) on the stones. The front door (*to stand*) open. Finch (*to lead*) Sylvia into the music room.

"You (*to like*) it?" he demanded.

"I do," she answered earnestly. "I think it's the most adorable room I ever (*to see*)."

"Oh, I say," he (*to exclaim*) in gratification. "That's too much. I (*not to expect*) that."

He (*to go*) and (*to stand*) by the piano, the tips of his fingers just touching the keys.

"I (*to play*)?" he asked.

"Please do."

He (*to turn*) on the light of a lamp. She (*to sit*) down where she (*can*) see his face as he (*to play*).

"A little Bach first," he said.

Sylvia (*to smile*) and (*to nod*). She (*to sit*) still as a statue, while he (*to play*). Sometimes the intricacies of the Bach (*to steal*)

her senses. She (*can*) not see the player. At other times she scarcely (*to hear*) the music but (*to be*) conscious only of the flying hands. Their isolation (*to appear*) so complete to her that the house they (*to leave*) (*to seem*) far away.

She (*to become*) conscious after a time that Finch no longer (*to play*) Bach but Beethoven. Her imagination now (*to turn*) back to the time of her girlhood in Ireland, to the time when she (*to feel*) safe, when her father and mother (*to stand*) between her and the world. How wonderful it all (*to be*)!

An hour (*to pass*) and Finch still (*to play*). But now he (*to remember*) her presence. His hands (*to rest*) on the keys and he (*to ask*): "Tired?"

"No, rested! Please go on."

He (*to give*) her a glance of appreciation and (*to go*) on playing. At last, pale but bright-eyed, he (*to rise*) and (*to come*) to her. He (*to sit*) down beside her, looking anxiously into her face.

"I (*to be*) an egoistical brute," he said. "You must be terribly tired."

"I (*not to feel*) so truly rested in years."

"I can't tell you what it (*to mean*) to me, having you here." Then he (*to add*), with something of an effort: "The last thing I (*to play*) — you (*to notice*) it?"

"I (*to think*) it (*to be*) enchanting."

"It's something I (*to work*) at at odd times. I (*not to play*) it through till tonight. I (*to play*) it very badly."

"And it (*to be*) your own?"

"Yes."

"I see the moon (*to be*) gone. It must be terribly late."

"I (*to take*) you back in my car, but not till I (*to make*) you some coffee."

c) Then John (*to go*) up the long walk to his house.

The house (*to be*) old and strong and there (*to be*) lights in a few windows. His grandfather (*to add*) this huge porch which (*to extend*) all about the house. Here on rainy days he (*to play*) with his brother or (*to sit*) alone, listening or reading, or talking with his father. What they (*to talk*) about? He (*not to remember*).

John (*to stand*) there now, looking at the still porch in the faint light that (*to come*) through the windows and from the street lamp and thinking of his brother.

One early spring evening when he (*to return*) from school he (*to pass*) here. It (*to rain*) all day and now the whispering sound of the rain (*to be*) on the air, rustling mysteriously through new leaves, and a wind (*to sigh*) down the long porch, which (*to be*) empty. Then he (*to hear*) a sound of sobbing, dismal and faint, and he (*to turn*) and (*to walk*) a short distance down the porch, which (*to echo*) with his footsteps, and he (*to find*) his brother, then twelve years old, crouched on the floor. He (*to lift*) his head at John's approach and (*to stop*) his sobbing, but he still (*to crouch*) there desolately.

John said, "What you (*to do*) here, crying like a baby?"

His brother (*not to answer*) for a moment or two, and then he (*to say*): "Father (*to laugh*) at one of my paintings. He (*to say*) I (*to have*) no talent."

John (*to say*) bluntly to his brother, "I (*not to know*) if you (*to have*) any talent. But I (*to know*) that Father (*not to have*) any."

His brother (*to catch*) his breath, and then slowly (*to rise*) to his feet. "You (*to mean*) that, John?"

"Sure I (*to mean*) it. If you (*to have*) talent it (*to show*). That's all it should mean to you. If you (*to start*) listening to people, and their advice, you never (*to amount*) to anything." And he (*to walk*) away and (*to leave*) him.

He (*to stand*) alone on this hot July night, completely exhausted, and he (*to remember*) that rainy twilight and his brother. It (*to be*) certainly strange how things (*to return*) to a man when he least (*to expect*) them.

He (*to open*) the hall door and (*to go*) inside. The hall (*to be*) long and wide and the ceiling (*to be*) high. His mother (*to paint*) the dark wood in her favourite shade of pale grey, and she (*to remove*) the heavy old dark furniture and (*to replace*) it with graceful pieces beautifully arranged. She also (*to hang*) a crystal chandelier from the ceiling. A few of the lamps (*to be*) lighted now.

His mother (*to come*) through the door, and her thin silk dress (*to rustle*) as she (*to move*). She (*to smile*) but her eyes (*to be*) anxious. "Dear John," she said, "I (*to be*) worried about you. Why, you (*to look*) so tired." She (*to glance*) down at his hands. She (*to see*) they (*to be*) red and the skin (*to appear*) dry and so she (*to know*) he (*to operate*). He (*to see*) her glance, and (*to say*), "Yes, I (). Don't ask me who. I (*to tell*) you later."

Ex. 87. Revision: use the required verb forms in the following text and tell it as a story:

Jane's Diary

a) 5th September

Let me introduce myself. I (*to be*) Jane Bailey, and I (*to live*) with my parents in Nottingham. At the moment, though, it (*to seem*) I may not be here much longer. The reason? Last June, I (*to take*) my A-levels in three subjects: biology, chemistry and maths. I (*to pass*) the first two but I (*to fail*) maths. That (*to mean*) I (*cannot*) get into a university this year. I (*to be*) really upset when I (*to hear*) that I (*to fail*) one of the exams.

Now I (*to have*) to decide what to do. I (*to work*) in a shop near home for the summer, and (*to manage*) to save some money. I (*to think*) I must do a quick secretarial course and get a job. So my plan (*to be*) to go to London and do a three-month typing course there. I (*to want*) to earn some money and then take my A-level maths again next summer. My father (*not to agree*). He (*not to want*) me to go to London and he (*not to think*) a university education (*to be*) necessary for a girl. My mother (*to be*) on my side. She (*to think*) I should work this year and try to study for my exam at the same time. At the moment we still (*to try*) to decide.

b) 9th September

I (*to win*). I (*to go*) to London. We (*to have*) another discussion at supper this evening. My father (*to keep*) saying, "You (*can*) do what you (*to like*), my girl, but don't come running to me for money when you (*to find*) that you (*to make*) a mistake." Of course I won't! However, he (*to agree*) to pay for my three-month typing course and my living in London for that time.

c) 15th September

I (*to be*) tired. It (*to be*) one-thirty in the morning, and I just (*to have*) my farewell party. The last guest (*to leave*) a few minutes ago. A lot of my friends (*to go*) away, too. Pat and Robert (*to go*) to London university, so I (*to see*) them there. The others (*to go*) all over the place — to colleges, jobs and medical training.

We (*to have*) a marvellous party. Dad (*to make*) some punch. Someone (*to start*) Scottish dancing, so we all (*to join*) in. I (*to hate*) learning Scottish dancing at school, but it (*to be*) hilarious tonight.

Chris (*to bring*) me a record of the American folk singer, Bob Dylan, whose concert we once (*to attend*) together. Chris always (*to be*) nice to me. He (*to stay*) in Nottingham to work in his father's office.

26th September

Well, I (*to be*) in London and in despair. I (*cannot*) find anywhere to live. And it (*to rain*) all the time.

d) 6th October

Well, I (*to manage*) to find a room at last. I (*to sit*) on my own chair with my own bed and chest-of-drawers a few feet away. In fact these things (*not to be*) really "my own." I (*to rent*) the place furnished for £ 8 a week. Everyone (*to say*) it (*not to be*) expensive, but I (*not to tell*) my father yet because he (*to be*) ready to pay only £ 5 a week maximum for rent.

Yesterday I (*to walk*) in the direction of the paper-shop where I (*to see*) the advertisement for my room. The advertisement (*to be*) still there, behind the glass. Some rain which (*to fall*) since the morning (*to leak*) into the frame and there (*to be*) a yellow stain on the card. The shop owner (*to come*) out to put a new card into the frame. "That room (*to be*) taken," I said, pointing to the card with the stain. It (*to be*) the first time I (*to speak*) since I (*to make*) the arrangement with the landlady at noon.

The old man before he (*to put*) up the new card (*to turn*) round and (*to look*) at me, puzzled.

"You (*not to go*) to take that card down?" I said again. "I (*to tell*) you, that room (*to be*) taken."

"How you (*to know*) it (*to be*) taken?"

"Because I (*to take*) it."

He (*to come*) closer to where I (*to stand*) in the rain and (*to ask*): "You (*not to put*) that card in, () you?"

"No," I said. "I just (*to see*) the card and (*to go*) about the room, and I (*to take*) it."

"Well then," he said impatiently, "who you (*to be*) to tell me to take it down? When you (*to have*) a card up there, then you (*to have*) the right to tell me to take it down."

e) 8th October

There are two other girls in the flat, Pamela and Sue. I (*to share*) the kitchen and bathroom with them. They (*to be*) both nice, though Sue always (*to apologize*) even when she (*not to do*)

anything wrong and Pamela (*to lie*) in the bath for hours and hours. But I (*not to complain*). I (*to be*) lucky to have anywhere to live.

I (*to phone*) Pat just now. She (*to try*) to write a philosophy essay, poor girl! She (*to find*) her course very hard work. I (), too, though of course secretarial work is much easier.

f) 15th November

This evening I (*to have*) supper with Pat. We (*to talk*) about our friends. Pat (*to write*) to David and also to a few other people. "I (*to have*) a letter from Suzie this morning," Pat said. "She (*to do*) a course in French in Grenoble. She (*to ask*) if I (*to read*) any good French books recently."

"And I (*to have*) a letter from Edith," I told Pat. "You (*to know*) that she (*to go*) back to live with her family? She (*to write*) she (*to have*) a good job now. In her spare time she (*to cross-country ski*). Other than that she (*to enjoy*) reading and sewing, and spending time with friends she (*not to see*) for a long time."

THE VERB

PASSIVE VOICE FORMS

Ex. 1. State the type of the passive construction in the following sentences:

1. The question *was* often *put* to me but I never answered it.
2. "Where is Frank?" "He's *being taken care of*."
3. It *was decided* that their marriage should take place in December.
4. He *had been seen* to nod in quiet agreement with his wife's words.
5. Bell *was looked on* as a sweet-tempered young man.
6. I noticed at once that the room *had been* recently *tidied*.
7. That afternoon we had our first history lesson, and the teacher showed up pictures of mastodons. It *was explained* to us that the men in those days had almost no chance of protecting themselves against such monsters.
8. "Where did you hear that?" "I *was told* by a man I know."
9. Blair is not in his room, and his bed *hasn't been slept in*.
10. Next day no reference *was made* to the scene.
11. The driver was mysteriously silent. Eric was silent, too, wondering uneasily where he *was being taken*.
12. None of the boys liked the new teacher, but French *got taught*.
13. "Why did you allow him to do anything so silly, Henry?" "I had no means of stopping him. And of course I *was lied to* as usual."
14. Mr Smith *was expected* to return shortly.
15. I *had been given* a card to the Club and in the afternoon I used to go there to play bridge.
16. The meal *was somehow finished with*, everyone moved out of doors.
17. Small feet *were heard* running in the hall.
18. We ought to deal with the problem before it *got talked about*.

Ex. 2. Turn the following active constructions into passive omitting all mention of the agent of the action:

1. No one has made any mistakes.

2. What do you call it?
3. They asked us to stay a little longer.
4. One expects him to obey the regulations.
5. People have made great progress in physics.
6. They are discussing the possibility of new negotiations.
7. Everybody thought that Jack was clever but lazy.
8. People use coal for making artificial materials.
9. People say it is difficult.
10. What books are people reading this year?
11. They elected him President of the Club last year.
12. They are rehearsing a new play at the National Theatre.
13. Someone found the children in the morning.
14. Nobody has ever treated me with such kindness.
15. He knew that they had sent the invitations out two weeks earlier.
16. They can arrange all things.
17. People expect you to meet the chief.
18. Are they sending for you?
19. They have always passed his telephone calls through to the Minister without questions.
20. They never took any major decision without his knowledge or advice.
21. I knew that they had told him of the meeting at once.
22. The trouble started when they told me to change the way we were running this department.
23. There was a tear in his trousers which someone had already darned.
24. In his circle they looked on the police as enemies.
25. They took the child to the hospital for the poor.
26. Ever since I started asking questions about my sister they have lied to me.
27. I'm sure they will look better after him in an army hospital.
28. When the situation called for a lie, he lied firmly and well.
29. No one has ever beaten my brother at tennis.
30. They gave his little daughter a present, too.
31. They will show the visitors all the new pictures.
32. They promised the workers higher wages.
33. The others told the new pupils where to sit.
34. We must look into the matter.
35. They gave me two shillings change at the shop.

Ex. 3. Supply the required passive forms of the verbs in brackets:

1. Aunt Dinah (*not to like*) by my father's family; she (*to consider*) vulgar.
2. After his brother's departure Paul sat for a long time thinking about what (*to say*).
3. "I'm not prepared," my father said, "to listen to your suggestions that you never (*to treat*) fairly at school."
4. In the drawing-room the music of Mozart (*to play*) by an orchestra seen on the screen.
5. "Remember I (*to pay*) by the hour," grumbled the driver.
6. But there were signs that order (*to restore*) in the town.
7. I (*to receive*) by one of the chiefs and (*to take*) for lunch to the canteen.
8. Well, what (*to do*) about it, Ted?
9. He went into the bedroom. The bed (*to turn*) down for the night by the maid many hours before.
10. I said we yet (*not to teach*) anything.
11. Please find out if your father (*to see*) to leave.
12. She could have gone to Cambridge if she had wanted, she (*to offer*) a scholarship.
13. He arrived just after the electricity (*to cut*), and Joseph was lighting the oil-lamps.
14. On Friday she (*to give*) two weeks notice at the Works.
15. Then the voice announced that the passengers (*to beg*) to pass through the Customs.
16. I wondered to what extent she (*to influence*) by his name to accept the offer.
17. Meg (*to look*) upon as the perfect wife for a clergyman.
18. Such are the matters that (*to deal*) with in Mr Gimson's book.
19. He (*to see*) entering the school building just when the first student (*to call*) upon to read aloud from *Béowulf*.
20. Ahead of us the port lay in a flood of lights. Two cargo-ships (*to unload*).
21. I found the idea of going to Hereford very upsetting because I (*to promise*) a very nice job a couple of weeks before.
22. Not far away she noticed the film manager in whose office she once (*to make*) to feel so ridiculous.
23. "You must be very prosperous, Eustace, to own a car like that." "This car (*to lend*) me by an American woman."
24. I felt I (*to catch*) out boasting.

25. I could not tell him that I had spent the money I (to leave) in order to get myself a house.
26. After lunch, we heard that Charles (to send) for.
27. She (to operate) on at seven o'clock next morning.
28. Their engagement (to announce) and a number of parties (to give) for the young couple.
29. I said, "Our dog (to run) over, but we're going to have another."
30. The days that followed afterward (to look) back on by Philip as a kind of nightmare.
31. The scene (to put) an end to abruptly by the arrival of their father.
32. I discovered that a similar message (to send) to my office.
33. After the two women (to show) over the house they (to take) for a walk round the garden.
34. Our garden was all weeds, but the one next door (to look) after to perfection.
35. You have hardly any right to talk to me about the children. They (to see) to all right, and it will be me that sees to them, not you.
36. Somewhere from far away in the town came the sound of shots. "Somebody (to kill)," I said.
37. Joe (to try) and (to sentence) to five years in New Caledonia.
38. He watched Jack while the film (to run).
39. The boy who put a frog in the teacher's desk (to ask) to return the frog to the pool.
40. Our ability to use English subtly or precisely continually (to interfere) with by our need to use language simply and imprecisely for everyday purposes.

Ex. 4. Translate the following sentences into English using passive constructions:

1. Ниже на этой улице строится новый жилой массив.
2. Его еще никогда не принимали за англичанина.
3. В твоей комнате ничего не трогали с тех пор, как тебя послали в санаторий.
4. Представляет ли для тебя интерес работа, которую тебе предложили?
5. За каждый пенни нужно отчитаться.
6. Вас когда-нибудь учили, как надо вести себя?

7. Его пришлось оперировать.
8. Детей угостили мороженым.
9. У меня украли коллекцию марок.
10. Со мной так никогда не разговаривали.
11. Посмотри! Кто-то пролил чай на скатерть.
12. Уроки нужно сделать более интересными.
13. Надо что-то сделать для этих людей.
14. В футбол играют во всем мире.
15. Боюсь, что этот замок нельзя починить.
16. На день рождения ей подарили коробку шоколадных конфет.
17. О его приятеле хорошо отзываются.
18. Студентам велели подождать за дверью.
19. Моего дядю произвели в капитаны.
20. Постороннего попросили уйти с собрания.
21. Тебе скажут, когда отправляется поезд.
22. Она чувствовала, что от нее что-то скрывают.
23. Там будет так темно, что вас совсем не будет видно.
24. Я почувствовал, что ему уже задавали этот вопрос раньше.
25. Меня отослали спать.
26. Он не слышал, о чем говорили.
27. Мы узнаем, хорошо ли за ним смотрели.
28. Ему дали первоклассное образование.
29. Что-нибудь делается, чтобы восстановить это здание?
30. Говорят, что его не видно уже три месяца.
31. Он включил радио. Исполняли фортепианный концерт Брамса.
32. Я не знал, кому меня представляют.
33. На приеме на профессора не обращали внимания, но поносились с его хорошепкой женой.

Ex. 5. Turn the following active constructions into passive, using *it* as subject wherever necessary:

1. He *explained* to me that almost everything the children were taught at school was unnecessary.
2. I had no suitable girl to take to the party and they *arranged* that I should partner Dick's sister.
3. It was not easy to see what to do about Jack, and someone *proposed* that he should come and stay with us.
4. The lawyer *explained* the new law to us.
5. I *mentioned* the fact to my friends.
6. They *request* that you should write it again.

7. A guide *pointed out* the Pyramids to us.
8. They *arranged* the party on Saturday.
9. They *discovered* him at home two hours later.
10. They *said* there had been a boy who broke this rule of the school once.
11. Someone *proposed* my father's health.
12. At lunch somebody *mentioned* to me that the Johnsons had come from abroad.
13. Everyone *knew* that her father had gone to a place some distance away on an important business.
14. Somebody *reported* the accident to the police.
15. They *announced* on the radio that the peace treaty between the two countries had been signed.
16. Somebody *discovered* that he had left for Europe two days before.
17. Someone *pointed out* to us that the camp was deserted.
18. They *expected* that the Minister would interview him.
19. The weather was warm and somebody *suggested* a walk to the river.
20. They *demand*ed that I should stay behind.
21. They *believed* that I had to attend a family party.
22. Everyone *understood* that I was to drive the family to inspect the new house.
23. Everyone *noticed* his absence.
24. No one *believed* his story.
25. They *demand*ed an explanation from him.
26. Then someone *suggested* that we drop the discussion and talk about something else.
27. They *decided* on a course of action.
28. They *agreed* that I should speak to the colonel.
29. They *announced* at the meeting that the firm was closing down.
30. Everyone *knows* these facts well.
31. Everyone *noticed* that he had had a short talk with the reporter.
32. They *decided* that I would go to Oxford next year.

Ex. 6. Translate the following sentences into English, using passive constructions with *it* as subject wherever necessary:

1. По радио объявили, что к вечеру ожидается похолодание.
2. Я сомневаюсь, что это явление можно объяснить.

3. Ему показали эту женщину, и он подошел к ней.
4. Договорились, что она подождет его в гостинице.
5. Сообщение было объявлено по радио.
6. Ей объяснили, кто мы такие.
7. Ожидали, что он вернется как раз к заседанию.
8. Было решено, что он вернется в пятницу.
9. Замечали, что он никогда не звонит к себе домой с работы.
10. Ему объяснили, почему он неправ.
11. Ему указали на его ошибки.
12. К юго-западу от города были обнаружены значительные запасы руды.
13. Ожидались большие изменения в производственных планах компании.
14. Не думал, что он долго проработает с ними.
15. Говорили, что ему не легко было сделать это.
16. Ходят слухи, что он уехал в Канаду.
17. Было решено, что выплата была незаконной.
18. О потере документа доложили руководству.
19. Ему было указано, что курить в зале не разрешается.
20. Его храбрость была хорошо известна в полку.
21. В разговоре его приезд был упомянут мимоходом.
22. Мне предложили сначала поесть.
23. Хорошо известно, что Фрэнк признал свою ошибку.

Ex. 7. Explain why the agent of the action is mentioned in the following passive constructions:

1. The house will be locked up for the summer and it will be looked after *by the gardener*.
2. I was lent the book *by a friend*.
3. His business has been taken over *by a bigger firm*.
4. I was deeply struck *by her beauty*.
5. The dam may be broken *by a sudden increase in water pressure*.
6. The little boat was overturned *by a huge wave*.
7. Many valuable pictures were destroyed *by the fire*.
8. They had been caught *by the war* in Australia.
9. Milly was awakened *by the telephone's insistent ringing*.
10. One of his favourite pastimes was collecting clocks. He already had a most remarkable collection, which was admired *by his friends* and envied *by his fellow-collectors*.

11. Suddenly the silence was shattered *by a mob of schoolchildren*, all shouting and screaming.
12. It was believed that the fire was caused *by a short circuit* in the lift machinery.
13. That work was handled *by other people*.

Ex. 8. Say whether the passive forms in the following sentences express an action or a state resulting from a previously accomplished action:

1. The car stopped and the near-side door *was opened*.
2. Warren said, "Well, my question *is answered*."
3. The Prime Minister's forthcoming talks in Washington *were officially announced* on the radio.
4. His calculations *were proved* wrong.
5. The piano *is not tuned*.
6. The arrival of the plane *was announced* over the loudspeakers.
7. The symphony *was performed* for the first time last week.
8. It *is decided* to open a new branch next year.
9. You'll *be given* new instructions before you leave.
10. All your words *will be taken* down.
11. All the dishes *were washed* up.
12. His instructions *are not carried* out.
13. He *was finally persuaded* to enter politics.
14. His parents' home *was now closed* to him.
15. Such things *are said* of talented people.
16. He pointed to the fire which *was already laid*.

Ex. 9. Use the required passive forms in the following sentences, observing the difference between the passive of action and the passive of state:

1. The house *(to lock)* up when they set off.
2. The house *(to lock)* up before they set off.
3. He wished to know if his instructions *(to carry)* out.
4. Talking of Susan, Milly *(to remind)* of something she once *(to tell)*.
5. The officials usually make careful inquiries into the applicant's character. Then he *(to give)* a trial, discreetly *(to watch)*, and if the impression is unfavourable politely *(to thank)* and *(to tell)* that his services no longer *(to need)*.
6. Wherever I went I found that the camp *(to leave)* in a disgraceful condition.

7. Wherever I went I found evidence that the camp (*to leave*) only a short while before we arrived.
8. From where I stood the house (*to hide*) by lime trees.
9. Everything (*to prepare*) for the ball. The front lawn (*to floor*) and (*to tent*); palms and azaleas (*to place*) round it.
10. Dan had a car waiting, and open country easily (*to reach*) in those days.
11. Looking over his shoulder I saw that the note (*to write*) in pencil and on a whole sheet of paper.
12. We went to the back of the house and he tried another door. "Everything (*to shut*) up," he said.
13. Sometimes he would drive away for a whole day. His errands never (*to explain*).
14. "How do you find the cooking?" "Unchanged." "When the cook (*to hire*), your aunt gave her ten menus, and they never (*to vary*) since."
15. "I am so sorry to miss so much of your visit. You (*to look*) after properly?" Mr Ryder asked me.
16. I've just been to the garage trying to get a car but everything (*to lock*).
17. Then dinner (*to announce*), and we went to the dining-room where the subject (*not to mention*).
18. The idea, however, seemed to take root in his mind; when, a few days later, we spoke of the matter again it firmly (*to establish*).
19. When I arrived the family were in the sitting-room. Tea (*to clear*) away and the curtains (*to draw*).
20. When I stayed at the hotel I always (*to give*) the room I had had on my first visit.
21. His house in Hertford Street was large enough for them both and lately (*to furnish*) and (*to decorate*) by the most expensive firm.
22. His house was large, and it completely (*to furnish*) and (*to decorate*).
23. "It's the first time I ever (*to take*) out to dinner at a restaurant," she said.
24. Then he looked round furtively to see if he (*to observe*).
25. He was lying in bed. His eyes (*to close*).
26. At the beginning of May the engagement (*to announce*). Rex (*to dismay*) and (*to perplex*) by this new development.

27. The date for her wedding (*to fix*)?
28. After his aunt (*to bury*) her will (*to read*).
29. I never knew where he (*to bury*).
30. He came to tell me that the work (*to do*).
31. I wandered down the corridor trying doors that (*to lock*).
32. Two men badly (*to injure*) in the accident.
33. "Can we have three clean glasses?" "In a moment. They (*to wash*) up."
34. The event (*to describe*) in detail in his book.
35. I don't have many things to pack because lots of my old clothes (*to dispose*) of.
36. While my car (*to fix*) I made a telephone call to my office.
37. Luckily, my car (*to park*) some distance from the front door of the house, so I didn't get very wet in the rain.

Ex. 10. Revision: use the required passive forms in the following texts:

a) It was now a charming room. The walls (*to paint*) light blue. The curtains (*to draw*) and the fire (*to light*). All the furniture (*to dust*). The piano (*to move*) out but a wireless set (*to add*). On the chest of drawers there was a collection of small presents which (*to bring*) to the old woman at various times by her children.

b) No one there could understand a word he said, but an interpreter (*to send*) for, his papers (*to examine*) and he (*to tell*) that he (*to fly*) back by the first plane.

c) The reception was all that (*to expect*). When we arrived we (*to show*) into some kind of hall where we (*to detain*) with the rest of the actors. Apparently we (*not to allow*) yet to mingle with the other crowd. As the guests assembled in the room, it was plain to me that they (*to choose*) carefully. Looking around, I recognized Anthony Blanche. He (*to point*) out to me often in the streets. I (*to interrupt*) in my observation by a woman reporter whom the manager had led up to me. I (*to warn*) against the dangers of being interviewed by strangers. As we (*to introduce*) I made up my mind to avoid it at any cost.

d) It was Saturday night and Pete sat watching TV. People (*to kill*) by the hour on the screen. Policemen (*to shoot*) in the line of duty, gangsters (*to throw*) off roofs, and an elderly lady slowly (*to poison*) for her pearls, and her murderer (*to bring*) to justice

by a cigarette company after long discussions which (*to hold*) in the office of a private detective. Villains holding guns (*to leap*) at by brave, unarmed actors, and ingenues (*to save*) from deaths by the quick-thinking young men.

e) The Connolly children (*to find*) lurking under the seats of a carriage when the train (*to empty*). They (*to drag*) out and (*to stand*) on the platform. Since they could not (*to leave*) there, they (*to include*) in the party that (*to send*) by bus to the village. From that moment their destiny for ever (*to involve*) with that of the village. Nothing ever (*to discover*) about the children's parents.

f) Bridgehampton. Friday. A disastrous fire broke out on the top floor of the Grand Hotel, Washington Road, in the small hours of the morning.

The alarm (*to give*) by the night porter. His attention (*to draw*) to smoke issuing from one of the top floor windows by a group of young people who were returning late from a dance. Within five minutes the town Fire Brigade was on the spot. The work of fighting the fire and evacuating the guests seriously (*to hamper*) by the non-operation of the lifts. It (*to believe*) that the fire (*to cause*) by a short circuit in the lift machinery and had extended to the whole floor before it (*to observe*). The flames (*to bring*) under control in two hours. Two of the guests staying at the hotel lost their lives. They (*to trap*) in their rooms and evidently (*to overcome*) by fumes before the rescuers could reach them. A third guest (*to take*) to hospital with multiple burns. His condition (*to report*) as being serious.

Ex. 11. Revision: use the required active and passive forms in the following text:

At the last glow of sunset, they (*to board*) the aeroplane in inverse order of seniority beginning with the sergeant and ending with General Spitz. The plane they (*to provide*) with was luxurious for the wartime. It (*to fit*) with seats. Little lights (*to glow*) along the roof. Soon the doors (*to shut*). The lights (*to go*) out. It (*to be*) now completely dark. What once (*to be*) windows (*to paint*) out. The roar of the engine (*to impose*) silence on the party. Dan, who (*to put*) himself next to the cockpit, (*to long*) for a forbidden cigarette and (*to try*) to compose himself for sleep, though it (*to be*) far from his normal bedtime. He (*to wear*) the same shirt all

day without a chance of changing. In the hot afternoon it (*to be*) damp with sweat. Now in the chill upper air it (*to cling*) to him and (*to set*) him shivering. It (*not to occur*) to him to bring his greatcoat. It (*to be*) an unsatisfactory day. He (*to wander*) about the streets of the old town with the Lieutenant. They (*to lunch*) at the club and (*to order*) to report at the airfield two hours before they (*to need*). He (*not to dine*) and (*to see*) no hope of doing so. He (*to sit*) in black boredom and discomfort until, after an hour, sleep (*to come*).

Ex. 12. Make up situations of your own using the following common sentence openings in which the verbs are used in the passive voice:

1. It is generally agreed that ...
2. It is well known that ...
3. It is hoped that...
4. It is only to be expected that ...
5. It has been decided that...
6. It has often been questioned whether ...
7. It was widely assumed that ...
8. It was taken for granted that ...
9. It has now been proved that ...
10. I thought that it had been clearly understood that ...
11. It must be borne in mind that ...
12. As has been said (pointed out), ...
13. As is well known, ...

Ex. 13. Revision: use the required active and passive forms in the following text:

Walker's ambition (*to be*) to make a road right round the island and a great part of it already (*to build*). His roads (*to be*) the joy of his heart and he (*to make*) excursions constantly to see that they (*to keep*) in order.

The roads (*to be*) wide tracks which (*to cut*) through the jungle. When they (*to lay*), trees (*to root*) out and rocks (*to dig*) up. It (*to be*) hard work, and all of it (*to do*) by the natives who (*to pay*) almost nominal wages for it.

Then the day (*to come*) when the natives (*to learn*) that larger sums (*to pay*) for such work in other places and they (*to stop*) the work. Now the wages (*to discuss*) in the village. The natives (*to hold*) together and (*to say*) they (*not to return*) to the work unless

Walker (to agree) to accept their terms. The administrator only (to promise) to give them a feast when the road (to finish).

But when Walker (to find) that no attempt (to make) to start work, he (to go) to the village and (to ask) the men what silly game (to play). The natives (to be) calm and only (to say) they (to do) it if he (to give) them a hundred pounds. Walker (to fly) into a rage and (to say): "If you (not to start) in a week, take care." Then he (to turn) round and (to walk) away.

That same night when Walker (to stroll) along the road that (to run) past his house, he (to hear) something whizz past him and strike a tree. He (to understand) that something (to throw) at him. He (to know) it (to be) hopeless to pursue in the darkness. Instead he (to look) for what (to throw), but (can) find nothing. He (to go) quickly back to the house for a lantern. Then he (to return) to the place and after a long search (to see) a long knife sticking into the trunk of a tree. It (to throw) with such force that it (to require) quite an effort to pull it out.

The next day Walker (to ride) over to the village again. He (to find) the men sitting round the floor in the chief's hut. He (to guess) that the question of the road (to discuss) again. The hut (to form) in this way: trunks of slender trees (to place) in a circle at intervals of perhaps five or six feet; a tall tree (to set) in the middle from which the thatched roof (to slope) downwards. At night or when it (to ruin), coconut leaves (to pull) down. In the daytime that hut (to be) open for the breeze to blow through. Walker (to ride) up to the edge of the hut and (to call) out to the chief: "You (to leave) your knife in a tree last night," and he (to fling) it down on the ground.

On Monday Walker (to go) out to see if the natives (to start) work. There (to be) no sign of it. "They (to regret) it," he (to say) to himself, devising a scheme to punish them.

Next morning a large group of men (to come) into the village and their chief (to say) that they (to make) a bargain with Walker to build the road. According to the local rules of hospitality which (to have) the force of laws the people of the village (to have) to give lodging to the workers as well as provide them with food and drink as long as they (to wish) to stay. Soon it (to become) clear that the strangers (to work) very slowly. Ruin (to stare) the village people in the face. They (to realize) that Walker (to outwit) them and that they (to laugh) at. The humiliation (to be) hard to bear. So no one (to be) surprised when one afternoon Walker (to find) lying on the floor in his cabin — he (to shoot).

THE VERB

MODAL VERBS

Ex. 1. Explain the meanings of *can* in the following sentences:

1. But the next day she was not well. She *could* not leave her cabin.
2. We *can* discuss it now, clause by clause.
3. My son is not in town; but he will be before long. *Can* I give him any message?
4. What on earth induced her to behave as she did, I never *could* understand. She *could* have married anybody she chose.
5. *Can* I smoke, Mr Hawkins?
6. I ate the next course grimly to an end; she *couldn't* have been enjoying her meal much either.
7. We'll get you into the next room, and you *can* lie on the sofa for a bit.
8. What *can* have happened to change him so much?
9. *Can* there have been any misunderstanding in our first encounter?
10. The teacher said they *could* all go home.
11. A policeman arrived and told him he *couldn't* park there.
12. *Can* he have changed now? Do you think it possible?
13. How did he get to know it? Who *can* he have been talking to?
14. "There's no such train." "We came by it." "You *can't* have."
15. "Life," the old man said, "*can* only be understood backward. Now I see clearly all the mistakes I made and *could* have avoided."
16. Really he had no idea that she *could* use water-colour as well as that.
17. You and I are in charge of a great business. We *cannot* leave our responsibility to others.

Ex. 2. State in which of the following sentences the form *could* is (1) the Past Indefinite of *can*, (2) a form expressing unreality, (3) a more polite form of *can* and (4) a form implying more uncertainty than *can*:

1. She would often say that no one but she *could* control the little girl.
2. *Could* you bring me some paper, please, to write my note on?

3. Milly asked what time it was, and her mother said it *couldn't* be more than one.
4. It was time for me to be getting back too, and I *could* have walked back with him. But I knew somehow that he didn't want that, so I sat for a few minutes watching him as he went down the road.
5. From where I was I *could* see the clear profile of his face.
6. "Do you know what time we arrive at the frontier?" "I'm afraid I *couldn't* tell you exactly."
7. "It's impossible," exclaimed Phil. "He *couldn't* have done it."
8. It *could not* be done under the present circumstances.
9. You have no idea, I suppose, who *could* have been there.
10. You are Agatha, aren't you? I *could not* be mistaken.
11. Perhaps you *could* tell me a little about these messages.
12. At present they *could* promise nothing.

Ex. 3. Turn the following into unreal statements and translate both variants into Russian.

Note: Change the form of the infinitive if necessary.

1. He's obstinate. Nothing *can* move him.
2. No one *can* ever tell when he is being serious and when he is joking.
3. In the dimness of the room I *could not* see him very well.
4. You know I *can* never refuse you.
5. Roger told me that she *could* run his small establishment better than any paid housekeeper.
6. No one *could* tell me where he lived.
7. He's very good at all that. You *can* learn a lot from him.
8. The trouble was I *couldn't* do anything else.
9. She *cannot* tell us the truth.
10. She *could not* tell us the truth then.
11. That's a question nobody *can* answer.

Ex. 4. Make the following sentences containing *can* more polite or less categorical:

1. "What *can* I do for you?" he asked in cordial tones.
2. *Can* I see John now?
3. Pat, my dear, where *can* you have got such a foolish idea?
4. What difference *can* it make?

5. I'm hungry. *Can* I have my tea?
6. I know a very nice little place up the hill where we *can* have dinner.
7. "We've brought you something!" cried Edward. "Whatever *can* it be?"
8. "But you don't understand me. Hugh hates me." "He *can't*."
9. "I don't believe you've forgotten our song. You *can't* have done it."
10. "But the door is locked." "I expect we *can* open it."
11. "In the end he insisted on walking in the rain." "He *can't* be so silly."
12. And I've got a bit of money. We *can* get ourselves a nice flat.
13. They are all watching the telly, so you *can* have your supper in peace.
14. *Can* this woman be Lousie? She *can't* have changed so much.
15. She *can't* have told you that I don't believe you.
16. What else *can* we do for you?

Ex. 5. Use the required form of the infinitive after *can* (*could*) in the following sentences:

1. Her face was quite unlined and she could not (*to be*) more than thirty.
2. I'm wondering if something can (*to do*) about it.
3. Her friend said quickly: "I know where you can (*to get*) your bicycle fixed."
4. "You couldn't (*to worry*) too much," Jack was tempted to say, "if you're still out at one thirty in the morning."
5. It's impossible. He can't (*to do*) it.
6. There wasn't anything wrong with tea. There couldn't (*to be*).
7. Harry's story disappointed him because if the girl had been with him at half past eight she couldn't (*to be*) at Hexley at the same time.
8. She lay, raised up rather high upon the pillow, her eyes closed and her hair undone. She could not (*to sleep*), though it would have been hard to say quite how this was evident.
9. "Have you seen anything of Roberta lately?" "Not for ages. I don't know what she can (*to do*)."
10. He couldn't (*to hear*) the news at dinner because his sister hadn't arrived yet.
11. I can easily (*to walk*) to the railway station.

12. For several seconds Bolt stared at her, terrified. "I can't (to die). I don't want to die."

Ex. 6. Explain the possible ways 1) of expressing negation in sentences with *can* used in the meaning of improbability in (a) and 2) of building up special questions with *can* used for emotional colouring in (b):

a)

1. I was staggered by his youth. He could not have been much over thirty.
2. "They say he was her lover," replied the man. "She can never have had one," said Rosalia, with a laugh of scorn.
3. You could hardly expect Father to let you stay here under the circumstances.
4. I don't think the idea can ever have occurred to him before.

b)

1. Who can he be? She has never had a visitor before.
2. "I think she had something to do with the book." "What can she have done?"
3. I don't understand how you can have been so nice, and then do something so cruel.
4. "Somebody drew a pair of spectacles on the face of the portrait." "Who do you think could have done it?"
5. The young woman rose from the yellow hammock. Mary's first thought was how she could have been lying in a hammock and remained so tidy.

Ex. 7. Translate the following sentences into English using *can* in all of its possible meanings:

1. Ты мог бы перевести этот текст?
2. Эту книгу можно купить в любом магазине.
3. Он мог бы сделать это на прошлой неделе. Он был не особенно занят.
4. Он не мог показать нам расчеты, так как они не были готовы.
5. В комнате темно, я не могу найти свои вещи.
6. Не может быть, чтобы она ошиблась.
7. Неужели они ждали нас все это время?
8. Не может быть, чтобы вас послали ко мне. Я не имею к этому никакого отношения.

9. Можно мне чашку чая?
10. Он сказал, что мы можем идти.
11. Я могу вернуться автобусом.
12. Я мог бы вернуться автобусом.
13. Морис уставился на письмо. «И откуда оно могло прийти?»
14. Эванс был настолько неграмотным, что он просто не мог бы написать ни одного слова этого доклада.
15. «Она не поняла тебя», — вскричал Филипп. — «Она поняла меня достаточно хорошо». — «Вряд ли она тебя поняла», — повторил он упрямо.
16. Дорога пешком обратно в гостиницу оказалась очень длинной, и он никогда не проделал бы ее без карты.
17. У нее было квадратное лицо, которое, вероятно, никогда не выглядело молодым.
18. «На что ты смотришь, Вилли?» — «Ни на что, дорогая». — «Нельзя смотреть ни на что».
19. Она сказала более громким голосом: «Ты слышишь меня?»
20. Никто не смог бы произвести на меня большее впечатление, чем это сделал ты.
21. В тот момент я мог бы убить его.
22. Ему не могло быть больше тридцати лет, когда мы с ним познакомились впервые.
23. Я умел плавать, когда мне было пять лет. Папа научил меня.
24. Они очень милы со мной. Просто невозможно быть более вежливыми и услужливыми.
25. Уже темнеет. Сколько же сейчас может быть времени?
26. Ты храбрый, раз работаешь с этими людьми. Я бы не мог с ними работать.
27. Он взял меню и сказал: «Ну, я полагаю, что ты проголодалась. Давай посмотрим, что мы можем поесть».
28. А как щенки? Можно мне посмотреть на них?

Ex. 8. To practise *can*, make up situations of your own using the following patterns:

1. не может быть, чтобы он ...
He *can't be* that foolish.
He *can't be* writing a novel.
He *can't have gone* fishing.
He *can't have been walking* in the rain.

2. неужели он...

*Can he be your brother?**Can he be working so late?**Can he have left?**Can he have been looking for us?*

3. и что (где, как, почему ...) это он...

*What can he mean?**Where can he be hiding?**How can he have done it?**What can he have been doing in there?*

4. он просто не может (не мог, не мог бы)...

*He can't possibly do it.**He couldn't possibly afford a car on his present salary.**He can't possibly have done it.*

5. не могу не ...

*I can't help thinking she has made a grave mistake.**I couldn't help seeing that she was ill.*

6. мне ничего не остается как ...

*I cannot but ask him for help.**I could not but put him up for the night.*Ex. 9. Explain the meanings of *may* in the following sentences:1. Of course I'm too young to be a really good writer yet, but I try hard, and one day I *may* achieve something.2. I asked him if I *might* come over to remove something that I had left in a book I had loaned him.3. "I'm so glad you didn't wait, Agnes," Mr Logan said in a tone which clearly meant "I think you *might* have waited."4. "What's happened to the dog?" "It isn't here. Dan *may* have taken it with him."5. Harry *might* often be seen sitting on the porch with a pipe in his mouth.6. Archer looked touchingly white and weak. He had been through a hard time. He *might* have died.7. "Then *may* I send Kate to you?" "But of course."8. "Oh, Philip," she exclaimed, "your boots are muddy! You *might* have gone by the side door."9. She longed for a letter from John. It *might* contain an explanation of why he had gone away.10. "What shall you do to amuse yourself?" she asked. "Well," I said playing for time, "I *might* do several things."

11. There was so much they had shared together and so much more they *might* have shared that they had not.

Ex. 10. State in which of the following sentences the form *might* is (1) the Past Indefinite of *may*, (2) a form expressing unreality, (3) a more polite form of *may* and (4) a form implying more uncertainty than *may*:

1. I asked if he *might* bring his wife down next Saturday.
2. "Where do you suppose he is now?" "He *might* be in New York."
3. "I thought the picture *might* interest you," Maurice said innocently.
4. "Did she say where she was going?" "No." "Humph! She *might* have left a message."
5. "*Might* I look round?" he asked.
6. I said that I *might* have other problems to raise.
7. We're going to lunch with some neighbours tomorrow. Mother thinks you *might* be bored. Would you like to stay at home?

Ex. 11. Make the following sentences containing *may* more polite or less categorical:

1. *May* I ask you a question?
2. She gave a shrug of impatience. "This affair *may* well fade into nothing."
3. I heard Arthur make a slight noise which *may* have been a sigh or a chuckle.
4. My main task is to find out why he killed himself. It *may* all be terribly simple. He *may* have done it because of his wife.
5. She *may* not find it all that easy to get a job.
6. *May* I have a taxi called?
7. You're welcome to come with me. You *may* notice things that I miss.
8. On the last evening my mother and I sat together in the drawing-room. It was our one formal room and I think my mother *may* have chosen it for its moral effect.

Ex. 12. Use the required form of the infinitive after *may* (*might*) in the following sentences:

1. On the whole there was less said than *might* (to expect).
2. Don't turn on the light. This fellow *may* (to lurk) outside the house door.

3. You've acquired a great deal of experience. You might (to write) a book.
4. There was no sign of John in the street. Of course, I said to myself, he might (to detain) at his office.
5. "Who said Mr Sorrel had gone to America?" "He might (to tell) it himself."
6. Strickland is very ill. He may (to die).
7. Jack had the feeling that Maurice might one day (to break) down.
8. But what you tell me may not (to be) true.
9. I was deeply shocked and worried. "It is no easy matter to find the man," the doctor said to me. He might (to read) my thoughts.
10. He may not (to want) to become a publisher in the first place, but once he had taken it up the profession had appeared to absorb all his interests.
11. Mr Fox said something about it once, but I might not (to understand) him properly.
12. "Then why on earth all this secrecy?" "One never knows who may (to listen)."

Ex. 13. Translate the following sentences into English using *may* in all of its possible meanings:

1. Ты был не так уж сильно занят. Ты мог бы нам помочь.
2. Спроси его, можно ли нам осмотреть лабораторию.
3. Он мог бы сделать это для вас. Ему это совсем не трудно.
4. Он чуть не разбил окно.
5. Она, возможно, опоздает.
6. Они, возможно, работают над этой же проблемой.
7. К вечеру может пойти дождь.
8. Их, возможно, не было вчера в городе.
9. Я подумал, что если его часы были там, то и деньги могли оказаться там же.
10. Я согласен, что разрешить Питеру поехать за границу, возможно, было ошибкой. Но я думал, что это, может быть, вернет его к работе.
11. Я, может быть, не упоминал об этом в своих письмах, но я проделал там довольно большую работу.
12. Не увидев ни своего отца, ни мальчика, Мегги подумала, что они, быть может, переставляют книги на полках.
13. Вы, возможно, слышали его имя.

14. Мне пришло в голову, что он втайне гордился сыном, хотя он, быть может, и не осознавал этого.
15. У него большая семья. Я могу себе представить, что он, возможно, ищет себе работу получше.
16. Мне казалось, что гроза может разразиться в любой момент.
17. Она не была шведкой, но ее можно было принять за шведку.
18. Может быть, он сейчас в гостинице и ждет меня.
19. Я чуть не опоздал на последний автобус.
20. Они, возможно, подумали, что мы не придем в такой дождь.

Ex. 14. To practise *may*, make up situations of your own using the following patterns:

1. может быть (возможно), он ...
 He *may* come yet.
 He *may* be reading in his room.
 He *may* have forgotten about it.
 He *may* have been expecting a letter from them.
2. может быть (возможно), он не ...
 He *may* not be in now.
 He *may* not have heard from his family yet.
3. он чуть не ...
 He *might* have fallen.
4. я, пожалуй, ...
 I *may* as well give you a lift.
 I *might* as well give you a lift.
5. пожалуй, лучше ...
 If your mother has made up her mind, my dear, you *may* (might) just as well give in without any fuss.
6. можно было бы принять за ...
 From afar the house *might* have been taken for a small inn.
7. могло бы быть и ...
 Charles came out of the examination room. "How did you get on?" I asked. "It *might* have been worse, I suppose," he said.

Ex. 15. Revision: fill in the blanks with *can* (could) or *may* (might):

1. When they told me I was cured and ... go, I ... tell you I was more afraid than glad.
2. His letter ... have given them the idea.

3. His knee touched the bottom. He crawled further and at last lay full length on the pebbles. He now felt so tired he ... not understand how a moment ago he ... have been capable of swimming.
4. You've done me a great service. I knew I ... trust you.
5. Her mother said she ... play with me if she wished.
6. He's a nice boy. I'm glad you brought him out here. We ... have some fun.
7. He looked at the lighted window of the cottage. He ... see into a kitchen where two women were sitting by the table drinking tea.
8. She has attractive eyes. There's something about them that holds you. She ... have been pretty once.
9. When he married her she ... not have been more than sixteen.
10. He boasted and told the most extraordinary stories which I'm sure ... not possibly have been true.
11. She ... not think what he was doing. Something ... have happened to him.
12. You ... not have proved that I wrote the letter because I didn't.
13. It never occurred to me that I ... get measles.
14. I was just going to tell you — because of the storm I ... not be home tonight.
15. That is exactly what he did say. But I won't talk any more about it. He ... not have been himself.
16. "To my mind she is a beautiful woman." "Well, yes. But I don't see what you ... have found to say to her."
17. He hurled the heavy thing down the stairs. It made an extraordinary noise in its descent and woke Joe sleeping in his pram. The only thing I ... say to that was: "You ... have killed Joe."
18. "I see one of my statuettes has been broken." "I ... not think what ... have happened to it."
19. He thought it likely that Blair ... have got away unnoticed.
20. It was dark and I ... only see the glimmer of his face.
21. You have acted very irresponsibly and you ... find yourself in serious trouble.
22. After all we don't even know if your sister is proposing to stay in London. She ... be just passing through on her way to somewhere else.
23. One ... not get anything done nowadays.
24. "Come inside in front of the fire where you ... warm up," she said quickly.
25. But I really feel that the late Mr Evans ... not have been a nice man.

26. Listen. I know I ... be making a fool of myself, but then again, I ... be not.
27. I confessed that I ... not swim unless somebody held me.
28. She was smartly, quietly dressed, and ... have been taken for a clever business woman.
29. It was one of those days when nobody ... tell whether it was going to rain.
30. I was driving along when I spotted a telephone box and thought I ... as well give you a call.
31. Jeff said, "Why on earth did Ken say he shot that dog? He ... not possibly have done it."
32. I don't know why he did it. He lost his wife lately. That ... have been it.
33. "Aunt Mary said she hadn't seen him." "She ... have been lying. Perhaps your father asked her to say he wasn't there."
34. I'm tired of listening to him tell me why it ... not be done.
35. ... I ask then, Mr Morley, what you were doing there?
36. I wished to be rid of my companion, and said, "Thank you. I ... look after myself now."
37. I thought you'd be staying in town for a night at least; and we ... have had a dinner and theatre.
38. We shall require, Mr Grey, to have a copy of this story. How soon ... you provide this?
39. Mrs Castle looks familiar to me. Where ... I have met her?

Ex. 16. Revision: translate the following sentences into English using *can (could)* and *may (might)*:

1. Возможно, будет дождь.
2. Возможно, дождя не будет.
3. Не может быть, чтобы пошел дождь.
4. Неужели будет дождь?
5. Может быть, он уже видел их.
6. Может быть, он и не видел их.
7. Не может быть, чтобы он видел их.
8. Просто не может быть, чтобы он видел их.
9. Неужели он видел их?
10. Где он мог их видеть?
11. Возможно, они ждут нас.
12. Возможно, они не ждут нас.
13. Не может быть, чтобы они ждали нас.

14. Неужели они ждут нас?
15. Кого же они могут ждать?
16. Не может быть, чтобы они ждали нас.
17. Я, пожалуй, пойду.
18. Я, пожалуй, лучше останусь дома.
19. Я чуть не потерял ключи.
20. Все могло бы быть гораздо хуже.
21. Погода — хуже некуда.
22. Мне ничего не оставалось делать, как остаться с ними.
23. Я не мог не согласиться с ними.
24. Мне это совершенно безразлично.

Ex. 17. Explain the meanings of *must* in the following sentences:

1. The children *must* brush their own shoes.
2. His mind turned to the incident. It was the kind of thing which *must* not occur again.
3. Dear Paula, there is no point in delaying the happy news. I know how much you *must* have been waiting and expecting.
4. I always have a warm corner for Roberta. I *must* try and find her before I go abroad.
5. It's lovely to have you home. We *must* have a party to celebrate.
6. You *must* give it back to me before you go.
7. "When is your mother to return?" "Next month." "You *must* miss her terribly."
8. *Must* you work hard?
9. You *mustn't* tell anyone about it.
10. "My god, I never thought they'd let me in there again," he said. "They *must* have regretted doing so in view of your behaviour."
11. She *mustn't* go home alone.
12. You *must* change your shoes. I won't have you in here with muddy feet.

Ex. 18. Notice the use of *must* in reported speech in the following sentences and translate them into Russian:

1. He was white and frightened and ready to weep as she told him that he *must* go.
2. Because a thing like coal had once been profitable they thought it *must* always be profitable.

3. She had already decided that she *must* show the letter to Alan.
4. The way she spoke made me think that she *must* be very much in love.
5. He asked where I had picked up such a word. I realized that it *must* have been a wrong word, but I had read it in some book and liked its sound.

Ex. 19. Use the required form of the infinitive after *must*:

1. Both sisters *must (to be)* ashamed of having spoken as they had in front of a third person.
2. Fred knew that the girl's father was a draper and had four assistants. "He *must (to do)* well," he said to her. "He doesn't complain," said the girl.
3. The night porter was very good-looking and it *must (to take)* him a half-hour to comb his hair into such shining black perfection.
4. "You *must (to be)* right," I said.
5. They *must (to hear)* that the fellow was in London.
6. But at last he rose realizing dully that he had work which he *must (to do)*.
7. He had a faint feeling of satisfaction in the thought that Mait *must (to wonder)* why they had gone off together.
8. I *must (to sit)* there for a quarter of an hour waiting and thinking about it before I saw the letter.
9. "His relatives do not think so." "Then they *must (to be)* a lot of damned fools."
10. Mrs Cromwell took us round the yacht. There was no doubt that it *must (to cost)* her a lot of money.
11. He had said that he himself was an admirer of Stendahl. This *must (to influence)* him in making his decision.
12. At half past two I heard Hudson grunt, put down his book and switch out the light. He *must (to read)* since midnight.
13. "I *must (to get)* old," she said, "to be talking like that."
14. There were a lot of mirrors that *must (to buy)* at the sale of some old restaurant.
15. When I jumped up the thing fell off my knee. It *must (to lie)* there yet.

Ex. 20. Translate the following sentences into English using *must* in all of its meanings:

1. Я должен много работать эту неделю.

2. Марта ведь видела их. Она, должно быть, сказала вам об этом.
3. Он должен попасть туда до восьми часов.
4. Она разожгла камин и сказала: «Ну, садись же. Ты, наверное, заоченел».
5. Я должна еще перемыть все стаканы.
6. Отойдя от двери, Джон заметил, что стоит на письме, которое лежало на полочке. Оно, по-видимому, было доставлено спустя некоторое время после его возвращения.
7. «Мы будем рано пить чай, — сказала Кэт. — Ты, наверное, умираешь с голоду».
8. «А, это ты!» — сказал он, взглянув на меня с удивлением. Он, должно быть, забыл, как меня зовут.
9. Я не видел Джима, но знал, что он, вероятно, ждет меня где-то здесь.
10. Я подождал с полчаса, и когда я уже думал, что что-то, должно быть, случилось с Китти, она приехала на такси.
11. Она такая бледная. Наверное, она была больна.
12. Я должен написать им сегодня же.
13. Я должен для него что-нибудь сделать, — подумал Джек.
14. «Филипп, в твоей книжке было какое-то письмо». — «Разве?» — «Ты, наверное, забыл о нем».

Ex. 21. Remembering that *must* in the meaning of probability is not used either with reference to the future or in the negative form, find a suitable way of translating the following sentences into English:

1. Я не хочу сдавать экзамены. Меня, вероятно, не будет в Лондоне в это время.
2. Наверное, в его распоряжении никогда раньше не было так много денег.
3. Мартин стоял по другую сторону камина. Я подумал, что он, вероятно, не слышал их слов.
4. Он, должно быть, не сумел уговорить его поехать с нами.
5. У него, очевидно, пока просто не нашлось времени для вас.
6. Они, наверное, не встретили его на станции.
7. Я терпел это так долго, потому что думал, что она меня по-своему любит. Но она, вероятно, никогда не любила меня.
8. Преподаватель, видимо, по ошибке не упомянул твоей фамилии.
9. Она, должно быть, не знает, что вы здесь.

10. Они, вероятно, не видели ее с лета.
11. «Могу я поговорить с тобой завтра утром?» — «Я, наверное, буду занят утром».
12. Он, вероятно, не захочет говорить по-английски.
13. Дома, наверное, нет никого сейчас.
14. «Кто этот старик?» — «Новый президент компании». — «Ты шутишь». — «Я не шучу. Ты, должно быть, не читал газет».

Ex. 22. To practise *must*, make up situations of your own using the following patterns:

1. должно быть, он ...
 He *must be* ill.
 He *must be* staying the night in town.
 He *must have* lost it.
 He *must have been* working since breakfast.
2. он, должно быть (наверное), будет ...
 He *probably will be* there tomorrow.
3. он, должно быть, не ...
 He *must never have been* poor.
 He *must have misunderstood* you.
 He *must have failed* to get the book.
 He *cannot have read* the book.
4. нельзя ...
 You *mustn't make* so much noise.
 Close the door. The children *mustn't hear* what you are saying.
5. пора уходить ...
 I *must be* off.
 I *must be* going.

Ex. 23. Revision: re-word the following sentences using *can*, *may* or *must*:

1. I don't think he did it all by himself.
2. Perhaps you're right.
3. It is possible that they forgot it in the car.
4. Is it really true?
5. I don't believe he has been meaning to do it.
6. It is impossible that he should have refused your request.
7. Evidently he has not read the book.
8. I wonder where it is that you met him.

9. I'm certain that he has heard the gong.
10. It was some special occasion, I'm sure.
11. He looks wet and muddy. I'm sure he has been fishing.
12. No doubt, she is out shopping.
13. I wonder what it is that you have brought in that box.
14. It's possible that he doesn't know we are here.
15. Is it possible that he is giving a course on the Renaissance at the University?
16. It is possible that the news is being broadcast on all the channels.
17. I'm certain they didn't take notes of the meeting.
18. Is it possible that we are out of wrapping paper?
19. It is possible he will again forget to rule a margin down the left side.
20. "I don't now see him driving his car. Is it possible that something has happened?" "Evidently his car is undergoing repairs."
21. It is just impossible for you to get this thing done so soon.
22. I wonder what it is that he is doing in there.
23. Then the firing began again. This time it was impossible for it to be more than a mile away.
24. Let's give her a call again. It is possible that she was asleep and didn't hear the telephone.
25. You have used up all the money I gave you, I suppose.

Ex. 24. Revision: translate the following sentences into English using *can*, *may* or *must* wherever possible:

1. Они должны действовать, как им сказали.
2. Я думаю, мне надо надеть другие туфли на вечеринку.
3. Я не могу уйти, не расплатившись.
4. Они должны вернуть все деньги.
5. Ты мог бы им позвонить и сказать, что не придешь.
6. Я так хотел есть, что чуть не съел всего цыпленка сразу.
7. «Мне взять зонт?» — «Да, похоже, что будет дождь».
8. Тебе удалось закончить работу?
9. Ситуация — хуже не придумаешь.
10. Ты не мог бы прийти немного позже?
11. Неужели ты сам это написал?
12. Со мной этого не может случиться.

13. Я перебрал в уме все возможные случаи, когда я мог бы с ним познакомиться.
14. Может быть, он не захотел выступить.
15. Она никогда не рассказывала о своем детстве, и на то, по-видимому, была какая-то причина.
16. Но я просто не могу идти дальше.
17. «Он может отдохнуть в моем кабинете», — сказал м-р Болт.
18. Нора отвела сына в свою комнату. Мне было слышно, как они там разговаривали.
19. «Не нужно преуменьшать опасность», — сказал он.
20. Я смогу написать им завтра.
21. Никто не смог бы сделать больше, чем сделал ты.
22. Ник был таким сыном, которым мог бы гордиться любой родитель.
23. Я думаю, что он влюбился в вас потому, что никогда, должно быть, еще не встречал никого похожего на вас.
24. Я думаю, что не буду никуда выходить сегодня. В такую погоду я, пожалуй, лучше посижу в кресле у камина.
25. Право же, ты мог бы что-нибудь сделать с этим.
26. В конце концов, нельзя не восхищаться человеком с такими высокими принципами.
27. Ты можешь делать все, что хочешь.
28. «Я не вижу, что еще я мог бы тогда сделать», — сказал он.
29. Его мать опять в больнице. Она, должно быть, серьезно больна.
30. Среди них не было никого, к кому бы я мог обратиться за помощью.
31. Я не понимаю, как ты мог вести себя так глупо.
32. Я невольно подумал, что мисс Грей выдала себя этими словами.
33. Он двигался так тихо, что не мог бы побеспокоить сон самого чуткого человека.
34. Где мои очки? Здесь их нет. Должно быть, я оставил их дома.
35. Я должен оставаться здесь весь день?
36. Он спросил, может ли он положиться на меня.
37. Он спросил, не могу ли я позаниматься с его классом на следующем уроке.
38. Когда ребенок так болен, вы, должно быть, чувствуете себя ужасно.

39. Вы должны найти его и привезти сюда со всеми его материалами.
40. «Это, наверное, совсем не похоже на ваш дом», — сказал Барт.
41. Я сказал, что он может взять мою машину.
42. Мне это совершенно безразлично.
43. Она понимала, что он должен чувствовать.
44. Он не может быть старше вас больше чем на три или четыре года.
45. Погода еще может измениться к лучшему.
46. Не может быть, чтобы она этого не знала.
47. В понедельник я еще не смогу дать вам определенный ответ.
48. Возможно, они еще не приехали.
49. Возможно, они еще ведут следствие по этому делу.
50. Возможно, они были на вечере, но я их не видел.
51. И кто это мог зажечь свет в моей комнате?
52. Отец очень сердит. Что ты опять натворил?
53. Уже совсем темно. Я, наверное, очень долго спал.
54. Он, вероятно, скоро позвонит нам.
55. Неужели он велел вам прийти сюда?
56. «Где мой ключ?» — «Ты, наверное, его потерял». — «Не может быть, чтобы я его потерял. Я, возможно, оставил его в кармане пальто».

Ex. 25. Revision: fill in the blanks with *can (be able)*, *may* or *must*:

1. "Will you know where to go?" "Yes, thank you. I ... always ask my brother."
2. "Didn't she hear our shouting?" "She says she heard nothing." "She ... have wandered a long way."
3. What ... he have meant when he said it?
4. He hesitated and said, "I ... go to South America. As a tea planter." I said, "I ... be wrong, Jason, but I don't think they grow tea in South America."
5. He ... have flown off after he dropped us. He ... not land here. Not in a plane with wheels.
6. "I'd give anything to meet that fellow." "We ... see what ... be done."
7. Cindy ... have laughed aloud. Instead, she nodded.
8. You ... hardly have been more surprised than I was.

9. The old man cupped his ear in his palm. "I think I ... be getting deaf. I ... not hear you."
10. "There was someone on the phone for you," he said. "Oh, who?" "I don't know, he didn't say. Some man." "It ... have been Mike." "I know Mike. It wasn't Mike." "Oh. Then I ... not think who it ... have been."
11. Mr Fox ... not come. He sent me to represent him.
12. I went straight from the station to the club and played billiards. It ... have been after eleven when I reached the flat.
13. Oh, you ... drink things steaming! ... you eat eggs with the shells on, too?
14. She was beginning to want to ask him in but she knew that she ... not do it yet.
15. It's a most interesting story. He ... not possibly have invented it. You ... have told him something.
16. I've other things to attend to which ... be put through immediately.
17. I admire your mother's looks. She ... have been a lovely girl.
18. The apples are very good. You ... eat them all.
19. My wife ... leave the hospital in a week's time.
20. My wife ... to leave the hospital a few days ago.
21. I'm trying to think where he ... have gone.
22. Of course it occurred to me that if he had found the watch as he said, it ... have been lying in the garden for more than a year.
23. He began absently to eat one of the buttered biscuits. He'd lose his appetite if his wife didn't hurry up. She ... be talking to Frau Schmidt.
24. A day or two later Mrs Strickland sent me a note asking if I ... go and see her that evening after dinner.
25. "I don't know why he did it." "It ... have amused him."
26. "You know, I'm a bit of a writer myself in a small way." "What are you writing? A novel?" "Oh, come off it. I ... not write a novel. No, it's a sort of history of the regiment, as a matter of fact."
27. "He's up in Barbie's room. He's decorating it with shells. He ... have brought in a ton."
28. "She's gone out. Something awful ... have happened." "How ... she have got out? The door is locked."
29. I'm going to tell him that he ... not do any building here.

30. They say the driver ... have been going fifty miles round that blind corner for the body to have been thrown and injured like it was.
31. She looked unusually pale and gloomy. I wondered what ... have upset her.
32. "... you drive a car, Mooey?" "Yes, indeed I ...," he answered.
33. You ... be very prosperous, Eustace, to own a car like that.
34. Obviously Haviland had worked late the night before, as he ... have done for several nights in a row, because he looked drawn and pale.
35. The water of the pool ... have been heated for it steamed gently in the beams of the lamps.
36. Mr Hardy takes a lot of aspirin. He ... have had at least twelve tablets during the day.
37. The man danced very well. He ... have spent hours taking lessons, Jack thought.
38. "At least I want to keep my mind occupied." "You ... get a good book and read it."
39. We ... not exaggerate the situation.
40. "I thought the English were great lovers of dogs." "We think Americans love dollars, but there ... be exceptions."

Ex. 26. Explain the meanings and forms of *have to* and *be to* in the following sentences:

1. I *had to* have someone to show me the way from the station.
2. We *were to* act as guides to the party.
3. "Guess what!" "I can't guess. You'll *have to* tell me."
4. Now will you please show me the room where I *am to* work.
5. Now I've *had to* listen to a lot of lying. And I never watch faces. I look at hands and listen very carefully to the tone and tempo of speech.
6. The children *are not to* touch anything in the room.
7. There was a special order that no one *was to* come to the station to see the battalion off.
8. But I've *been having to* give a lot of thought recently to my feelings toward you.
9. It was the first and the last ceremony I *was to* see.
10. "What do you *have to* do to earn so much money?" Barber asked.
11. He *was to* have had a music lesson in the morning but the teacher called up to cancel it.

12. I *didn't have to* turn around to know they were coming down the street.
13. He looked about him for his daughter but she *was not to be* seen.
14. I *was having to* feel my way.

Ex. 27. Turn the following affirmative sentences containing *have to* into negative and interrogative:

1. He has to light a fire.
2. They had to change their shoes.
3. I shall have to buy a new pair of gloves.
4. She has to go home early.
5. He had to give it back.
6. She'll have to come again.

Ex. 28. Translate the following sentences into English using *have to* or *be to*:

1. Барт должен был увидаться со своим шурином за ленчем на следующий день, но он не считал нужным рассказывать об этом жене.
2. Ей пришлось пить чай без сахара.
3. Я знал, что Пэт должна была прийти в клуб.
4. Я был несколько удивлен, обнаружив в зале, где я должен был выступать, так много людей.
5. Мне не нужно быть там раньше трех часов.
6. Руди пригласили на обед домой к Мэри. После обеда они должны были пойти в кино.
7. Один из гостей сел около меня. Мне не нужно было говорить, кто он.
8. Они бомбили нас весь день вчера, и мы вынуждены были оставаться в окопах.
9. «У тебя короткие волосы, и они выются». — «Я болела скарлатиной, и волосы пришлось обрезать».
10. «Я ведь никогда не говорил тебе, что учился в частной школе?» — спросил Алек. — «В этом не было необходимости. Я это знала».
11. На следующий день Франк взял меня на долгую автомобильную прогулку. А в семь часов мы должны были обежать с Гринами.
12. По радио объявили, что вечером должен выступать президент.

13. Он должен был пододвинуться поближе, чтобы услышать ее.
14. В этот час Филиппа никогда не было видно.

Ex. 29. Fill in the blanks with *have to* or *be to*:

1. At nightfall the ship put in at a small port where they ... to load three hundred bags of coffee.
2. They ... to light a fire to cook their supper.
3. He set off for the school where he ... to write examinations for entry to the University.
4. When I got home I found I had left my olive oil in front of the notice-board and I ... to return in the afternoon to collect it.
5. He made all arrangements for the marriage, which ... to take place on the day of his mother's arrival.
6. The Finnish woman who ... to work for Finch had not arrived yet.
7. She knew there would be no more vacations for her sons. But she ... (not) to say it. They knew that as well as she.
8. Eden went to the wood where he ... to meet his brother for a ride.
9. Uncle Nick's things ... to be moved out of his room so that it could be re-let.
10. For the next few weeks I ... to stay in bed. Everyone came to visit me, and brought me presents, and I ... (not) to do the cooking.
11. Early in January Maurice returned to Ireland and his brother accompanied him. He ... to remain with him till spring. He then ... to go to the Slade School of Fine Arts in London.
12. They went to inspect Finch's new house. Finch said that only the last touches ... to be added there and he ... to move into it quite soon.
13. That day, however, I had a pupil waiting for an English lesson and I ... to cut my visit short.

Ex. 30. To practise the use of *have to* and *be to*, make up situations of your own using the following patterns:

1. приходится (пришлось, придется) ...
He *has to* work here all day.
He *had to* work there all day.
He *will have to* work there all day.

2. не нужно ...

You *don't have to work* here all day.
 You *didn't have to work* there all day.
 You *won't have to work* there all day.

3. ему лучше ...

He *had better go* home at once.
 What *had he better do* with this letter?

4. мне суждено ...

This was the first time I made a journey that I *was to make* hundreds of times afterwards.

5. как мне быть? что мне делать?

What *am I to do*?

6. что со мной будет?

What *is to become* of me?

Ex. 31. Revision: fill in the blanks with *must*, *have to* or *be to* to suit the motives expressed in the following sentences:

1. "It is eight o'clock. The children... go to bed," Mr Hudson said to the nurse.
2. She ... go to bed at eight o'clock to be up in time for the first train.
3. At this boarding school the children ... go to bed at eight o'clock.
4. "I've told my husband he ... (not) smoke in the drawing-room."
 "And I ... (not) tell my husband such things; he's a born gentleman."
5. He ... stay the night with us. I won't let him drive to the country in this rain.
6. He ... stay the night with us because he has missed the last bus.
7. He ... stay the night with us and tomorrow he sets off on his tour to Europe.
8. We ... begin as early as possible or we shan't finish it today.
9. I ... start on my new job on Monday.
10. You ... take the dog away. I won't have it here any longer.
11. They ... take the dog along with them because there is no one who could look after it.
12. She ... learn to do things for herself. I refuse to help her in the future.
13. What a pity you ... go. I know it's time for you to catch your train.

14. I ... be off. I want to go to bed.
15. You ... do your chores now, and she ... do hers when she comes in.
16. My mother says that I ... (not) be out after eleven o'clock, but I ... (not) hurry home because she herself is out playing bridge.
17. My bike is under repair and I ... walk here this morning.
18. My bike was under repair and I ... collect it that afternoon.
19. My bike is under repair and I ... have collected it yesterday.
20. He told me that I ... (not) repeat what I had heard.
21. He told me that I ... (not) use words which I didn't know.
22. He told me that I ... learn by heart some twenty lines every day to know English well.

Ex. 32. Explain the meanings of *ought to*, *shall* and *should* in the following sentences:

1. I think I *ought to* let your parents know we are here.
2. You *should* have gone to the concert. Why *should* you miss the music?
3. I think I *ought to* put all my cards on the table.
4. It's late. You *should* go to bed.
5. *Oughtn't* you to be more careful?
6. "How can you know what his feelings are?" "I *ought to* know, for he's always telling me about them."
7. It was surprising that they *should* have met at all.
8. He remembered that he *should* not smoke unless invited to do so.
9. When Charles saw Ann playing tennis, he came up and said: "Are you sure you *ought to* be doing that?"
10. *Shall* I get you some fresh coffee, Ed?
11. The responsibility is entirely mine. I acted very wrongly indeed. I *ought not to* have let this relationship start.
12. "When is he going back?" "How *should* I know?"
13. Mrs Murrey will be moving into the new house next month. It *ought to* be less bleak for her.
14. You *shall* have no cause to complain of me, dear. There *shall* be no difficulty about money.
15. "Meg is in town shopping." "Who took her in?" "Renny drove her to the train. He *should* be back at any moment".
16. George did not see why he *should* not discuss the matter with his chief.

Ex. 33. Use the required form of the infinitive after *ought to* and *should*:

1. But we ought (*to have*) your brother here, to tell us exactly how far we can go.
2. Tea is between half past five and six, and it should (*to be*) ready now.
3. He couldn't see anything. He thought that he ought (*to bring*) a torch.
4. Should the baby (*to play*) with a box of matches?
5. If you're in love it ought (*to make*) you happy. You ought (*to laugh*).
6. The doctor said it was appendicitis and she ought (*to operate*) on.
7. You should (*to see*) him yesterday on horseback.
8. One day the headmaster came on Jack, who should (*to sweat*) on the sports ground, sitting comfortably in a gardener's shed reading a book and eating a large piece of cocoa-nut ice.
9. "Your father and I should (*to arrange*) everything before I came here," he said.
10. Oughtn't you (*to answer*) that letter now?
11. Where is his car? He shouldn't (*to leave*) it unattended.
12. He drove at great speed. He knew that about this hour the guests should (*to arrive*) at his house.
13. "Well, I'm very glad to know at last what it was all about." "You ought (*to tell*) before."
14. Then he should (*to laugh*), but instead he heard himself saying: "Everything you say is quite true."
15. Anything we can do to clear up this miserable affair ought (*to do*).
16. "I don't think he had the least idea of what I meant." "You should (*to be*) more explicit, my dear."

Ex. 34. Fill in the blanks in the following sentences choosing between *ought to* and *should*.

Note: Remember that although *ought to* and *should* are very close in the meaning of obligation and are often interchangeable, the former tends to express moral obligation and is not frequent in negative sentences whereas the latter is common in instructions and corrections.

1. He looked more than ever out of place; he ... have stayed at home.
2. I don't think people ... gossip like that about other people.

3. She said, "You know, I think I ... get across to the station and see what goes on."
4. I want him to do what's right. It ... (not) be necessary to persuade a man to do that.
5. My mother frowned at him and shook her head in a way that meant that he ... (not) say things like that in front of me.
6. "Strange," said the boy, "how, when people are either very old or very young, they are always wanting to do something they ... (not) do."
7. "It is very wicked of you," she said. "You ... be ashamed of yourself."
8. After she had gone I found myself wondering whether I ... do anything for her.
9. I'll see and speak to Maurice. He ... (not) behave like that.
10. I expect you to tell me the way to do it. You ... know.
11. She is a clever girl and her French ... be perfect.
12. The children were out dancing when they ... have been learning their lessons.
13. I realize now I ... (not) have said anything.
14. "I'm not very fit. I'm having trouble with my leg." "I see. Well, I think you ... go and see a doctor I know."
15. Anne was quite capable of coming down to make herself a cup of cocoa when she ... be asleep.
16. He felt very low and I thought I ... do all I could to cheer him up.

Ex. 35. Translate the following sentences into English using *ought to* and *should* wherever possible:

1. Я прошу прощения. Мне не следовало это говорить.
2. Я думаю, вам следует проявлять больше уважения к старшим.
3. Я подумал, что тебе следовало бы знать об этом.
4. Теперь я расстроил ее. Мне не нужно было этого говорить.
5. «Я сказал что-нибудь такое, чего мне не следовало говорить?» — спросил он у матери.
6. Не стоит задавать таких вопросов.
7. Ну, что же, вы были правы. Мне не так надо было сделать это.
8. Как ты думаешь, чем мне следовало бы заняться?
9. Я был с тобой более откровенен, чем следовало бы.

10. Я сказал, что ей совсем не следовало бы приходить с ним.
11. Не стоит быть столь критичным в твоём возрасте, Франк.
12. «Энн — моя сестра». — «Мне следовало бы догадаться. Вы похожи на нее».
13. Ей надо было бы раньше об этом вспомнить.

Ex. 36. Translate the following sentences into English using *shall* where ever possible:

1. Сколько мне заплатить носильщику?
2. Когда мы узнаем что-нибудь, вы непременно услышите об этом.
3. «Вы отпустите меня домой?» — «Нет. Во вторник ты отправишься пароходом в Сан-Франциско».
4. Это можно сделать и это будет сделано, если ты только поможешь мне.
5. «Тебе поиграть?» — спросила она. — «Да, пожалуйста».
6. Когда он говорит «Сделай», я отвечаю «Будет сделано».

Ex. 37. Explain in what syntactic conditions the emotional *should* is used in the following sentences and translate these sentences into Russian trying to convey the emotional colouring expressed by *should*.

Note: It is advisable to pick out those sentences where the use of the indicative forms is possible and re-word them accordingly.

1. There was no reason why I *should* not get away promptly in the afternoon.
2. Kate was frowning. "I can't understand why you *should* do this."
3. It was singular that Horn *should* ask him that question.
4. "It's very disappointing," he said, "that Hugh *should* go off like this just when I counted on him to help me."
5. Why *should* he think that?
6. I am very shocked indeed that you *should* have felt it necessary to lie to me.
7. That he *should* hear of the exposure of his favourite author with approval showed that something radical had changed his point of view.
8. He was very sorry that Philip *should* be disturbed.
9. He was one of themselves now and they didn't see why he *should* put on airs.
10. There is no reason why he *shouldn't* win two or three matches.

11. I'm sorry that you *should* have had a row with Pat about it.
12. It was much better that he *should* learn the business thoroughly, and if they had been able to wait for a year there seemed no reason why they *should* not wait another.
13. He seemed to see nothing exceptional in the idea that he *should* get up and speak at the meeting.
14. "Where is Meg?" "Where *should* she be if not in school?"
15. Why *should* you tell people the disagreeable things that are said about them?
16. He didn't know why he *should* have expected them to look different.
17. This is too terrible! To think that you *should* talk to me in this way.
18. It outraged him that the man *should* have been so foolish.

Ex. 38. Translate the following sentences into English using the emotional *should*.

Note: It is advisable to pick out those sentences where the indicative forms are possible and give two variants with them.

1. Вот я и подумал, что ведь это абсурд, что мы живем рядом и не разговариваем.
2. Как странно, что он ничего не сказал об этом.
3. Было невероятно, чтобы Джон оказался так занят, что у него всю неделю не было времени повидать ее.
4. Я не вижу оснований, почему они должны сердиться.
5. «Как его зовут?» — «А зачем я буду тебе говорить?»
6. Мне жаль, что ты так плохо обо мне думаешь.
7. Не знаю, почему он хочет увидаться с Джорджем.
8. Было странно, что в ее возрасте она была так безразлична к вечеринкам.
9. Наконец он решил вернуться домой. Возможно, что там он услышит новости о Мэри.
10. Мне очень жаль, что мой брат виноват в этом.
11. Как случилось, что ты привел его с собой? И чего это он захотел прийти сюда?
12. Он был очень доволен, что Кэт все же назвала ребенка в его честь.
13. Что могло с ним случиться? Представить себе не могу, почему он так опаздывает.
14. Забавно, что она оказалась права.

15. Странно, что она выбрала этого человека себе в мужа.
16. Меня рассердило, что он оказался таким слабовольным.
17. Ему, казалось, было лестно, что кто-то захотел прочесть кое-что из написанного им.
18. Все же Розмари не понимала, почему она должна уйти.
19. Она начала рассказывать мужу о Тедде, но вдруг остановилась и сказала: «Я просто сама не знаю, почему я надоедаю тебе этими рассказами о Тедде».

Ex. 39. To practise *ought to* and *should*, make up situations of your own using the following patterns:

1. тебе надо бы (следовало бы, нужно бы) ...
You ought to do something for him.
You ought to have done something for him.
2. стыдись ...
You ought to be ashamed of yourself.
3. уж он-то знает ...
He ought to know.
4. тебе следует (следовало бы, надо бы, нужно бы) ...
You should speak for yourself.
You should have stayed at home.
5. тебе не следовало бы (не надо бы, не нужно бы) ...
You shouldn't tell anyone about it.
You should not have interfered.
6. откуда я знаю?
How should I know?
7. зачем мне (с какой стати) ...
Why should I do it?
8. до чего дошло дело!
Oh, that it should come to this.
9. еще бы ...
"His illness caused me a lot of worry." "So I should think."

Ex. 40. Revision: translate the following sentences into English using *can*, *may*, *must*, *have to*, *be to*, *ought to*, *shall* or *should*:

1. Тебе следовало бы еще раз прочитать свое сочинение. Там, наверное, есть ошибки.
2. Неужели сейчас только шесть часов?
3. Зря ты так разговаривал с ним. Он мог обидеться.
4. Уж он-то должен это знать.
5. Мне сейчас позвонить ему?

6. У него, должно быть, есть чувство юмора. Иначе он не мог бы так выразиться.
7. Завтра день рождения твоей сестры. Я думаю, что ты должен подарить ей что-нибудь.
8. Наверное, идет сильный дождь. На улице никого нет.
9. Не может быть, чтобы он забыл о своем обещании.
10. Зря ты не послал им телеграмму. Теперь они, возможно, уже были бы здесь.
11. Простите, что я опоздал. Вам долго пришлось ждать меня?
12. Я никуда не выходил в тот вечер, так как после работы ко мне должен был зайти Джордж.
13. Ему пришлось вернуться в гостиницу, так как вылет его самолета задерживался.
14. Он знал, что ему предстояло быть на двух совещаниях на следующей неделе.
15. Она ничего не должна знать о твоих делах.
16. Она, должно быть, ничего не знает о его делах.
17. Этот экзамен я должен буду сдавать через неделю.
18. Тебе надо будет еще раз позвонить им?
19. Тебе не нужно идти сегодня в магазин, так как мы обедаем в гостях.
20. «О чем они разговаривают?» — «Возможно, спорят о сценарии».
21. Новость может напугать ее.
22. Она знала, что должна все объяснить им.
23. Тебе надо самому зарабатывать на жизнь.
24. Их дом должны были снести, и ему пришлось переехать в новый жилой район.
25. Я надеюсь, твоей жене не приходится мыть автомобиль.
26. Погода хорошая, и мы могли бы прокатиться за город.
27. Мне очень жаль, но я должен идти. Я должен встретить Бетти у кинотеатра. Уже без четверти семь! Она, должно быть, уже ждет меня. Мне придется взять такси.
28. Не мог бы ты сделать это сегодня?
29. Мне можно идти?
30. Зачем мне идти туда пешком?
31. «Уже поздно. Где же может быть Дик?» — «Мне это совершенно безразлично».
32. Тебе надо навестить брата в больнице.
33. Его можно было принять за старого человека.
34. Тебе не следует винить его за это. В этом есть и твоя вина.

35. Ты мог бы сказать нам, что происходит.
36. Возможно, они уже сделали свой выбор.
37. Я не знаю, почему она не хочет поговорить с ним сама.
38. Странно, что они включили его в команду.
39. Вам нужно найти специалиста, который мог бы взяться за это дело.
40. Он, должно быть, ничего им не сказал.
41. Возможно, они сейчас укладывают вещи. До отхода поезда остался час.

Ex. 41. Explain the meanings of *will* and *would* in the following sentences and say in which cases they may be used in a parallel way:

1. Old Lady Bland argued with him, but he *would* not listen to reason.
2. Each time we went out together he *would* show me something new, something interesting.
3. I *will* say it again and again.
4. He had a wound that *wouldn't* heal.
5. Bring him back, if he'll come.
6. All that I *would* tell them was that Uncle Nick was ill.
7. She was the sort of girl any man might be glad to bring to a dance if she *would* come.
8. I know there is a theory that a book, if it is any good, *will* always find a publisher.
9. *Will* you come round tomorrow?
10. The toilet in this room *won't* stop running.
11. When he returned I repeated my offer of food, but he *would* take nothing.
12. "What time is it?" "Half past twelve." "Well, the last bus *will* have left."
13. Often, after dinner, he *will* settle down in an armchair to read the paper.
14. *Would* you really do it for me?
15. He *would* smoke a pipe before going to bed.
16. Shut the door, *would* you?
17. "He talked of his new car the whole evening." "He *would*."

Ex. 42. Translate the following sentences into English using *will* or *would*:

1. Пожалуйста, расскажи мне, что случилось.

2. Джон попытался открыть крышку бака, но она никак не поддавалась.
3. Я бы все сделал, чтобы помочь ему.
4. Он сказал, что был бы рад, если бы я согласился приехать и погостить у него несколько дней.
5. Он попытался объяснить, но я не стал его слушать.
6. «Он не согласился со мной». — «Он такой!»
7. Сегодня воскресенье, и все магазины, естественно, закрыты.
8. Он несколько раз чиркнул зажигалкой, но она не сработала.
9. Я спросил его жену, что с ним, но она не пожелала отвечать.
10. Вечера он по большей части проводил за игрой в шахматы.
11. Я заплатил деньги, и я останусь здесь.
12. Он погасил свет, но сон к нему не шел.
13. Я, пожалуй, пойду и посмотрю телевизор, если вы не возражаете.
14. Я хотел посмотреть выставку, но меня не пустили, так как было поздно.
15. «Дядя Эдвин, — позвал мальчик. — Ты обещал мне помочь с моим игрушечным поездом. Он не работает».
16. Я предложил ей сходить к доктору, но она и слышать не хотела об этом.
17. Он часто засыпал с книжкой в руках и с очками на носу.
18. После работы он обычно дожидался нас у моста.

Ex. 43. Revision: translate the following sentences into English using *had better*, *would rather (sooner)*, *will not have or would like*:

1. Когда мы сели в машину, он сказал: «Мы могли бы прокатиться сейчас. Здесь недалеко есть одно место, которое я бы хотел тебе показать».
2. Ты должен сдерживаться. Я не позволю тебе так вести себя в моем доме.
3. Хотите еще стакан сока?
4. Я бы предпочел не говорить тебе того, что я о нем знаю.
5. Мне совсем не хотелось идти на этот вечер. Я бы предпочел остаться дома и поговорить с родителями.
6. Он предпочитал слушать других, чем говорить сам.
7. Они знают, что я не допущу этого в своей квартире.

8. «Мне бы лучше совсем не приезжать домой», — сказала она голосом, дрожащим от отчаяния.
9. Отец не допустит, чтобы ты так разговаривал со мной.
10. Пойдем-ка сразу домой, чтобы ты могла прилечь.
11. Он бы предпочел не уезжать еще.
12. Теперь я принял решение, что лучше всего сделать.
13. Она бы предпочла сначала прочесть письмо.

Ex. 44. Explain the meaning of *need* in the following sentences and translate them into Russian:

1. "Why don't you go and look at the snake?" her mother suggested. "You *needn't* go up close."
2. It's not easy to hold responsibility. I *needn't* tell you that.
3. Angela opened the door and walked in. Her daughter was still up. "You *needn't* have stayed up, waiting for me," said Angela.
4. If you don't like the cocktail, you *needn't* drink it.
5. "Do you remember what you did when you were twenty-five?" "You *need* not have reminded me of it."
6. *Need* we insist upon the date?
7. You *needn't* worry.
8. *Need* you bring your girl-friend with you?
9. She said that if he didn't like to come to her parties he *needn't* come at all.
10. I was rather afraid that he might act as though we were intimate friends, which would have been embarrassing. But I *need* not have worried.
11. *Does* he *need* to study more at home?

Ex. 45. Translate the following sentences into English using *need*:

1. То, что она сделала, так глупо, что нам незачем обсуждать это.
2. Озеро было так близко, что даже Алан, который не любил ходить пешком, согласился, что не нужно брать машину.
3. Нам не стоит варить всю картошку.
4. Нам нужно переодеться к обеду?
5. У нас еще масса времени. Мы зря спешили.
6. А нам обязательно туда идти?
7. Тебе незачем тратить на них все деньги.

8. «Я сказал твоему дяде, что поговорю с тобой». — «Ты напрасно беспокоился. Я пообещал своим родителям побыть здесь еще немного».
9. Он положил конверт на стол. «Деньги все там, — сказал он. — Можешь не пересчитывать их».
10. Ты знаешь детей. Они все ломают. Мне нет нужды говорить тебе об этом.
11. Он знал, что ему не надо никому ничего объяснять.
12. Я думаю, что нам незачем уделять ей столько внимания.
13. Тебе незачем бояться меня.
14. Нам не обязательно слушать всех ораторов.

Ex. 46. Explain the meaning of *dare* in the following sentences and translate them into Russian:

1. He felt he *dared* not reply.
2. Her face bore an expression of such ferocity that no one *dared* come near to speak with her.
3. I *dare* say you're a little tired after your walk, dear.
4. He *dared* not look into her face.
5. I *did not dare* to ask him to call off his trip.
6. She was aware that they were too intent upon their business to think that anyone was watching them, but she *dared* not move.
7. Who *dares* to jump over the stream?
8. She *did not dare* to leave the house in case he telephoned.

Ex. 47. Revision: translate the following sentences into English using *shouldn't*, *oughtn't to* or *needn't* followed by a perfect infinitive:

1. Тебе не следовало уступать ее капризам.
2. Тебе не надо было приводить своего приятеля сегодня. Я плохо себя чувствую.
3. Мне не следовало говорить им этого.
4. Ты зря заказал номер в гостинице. У нас есть свободная спальня.
5. Тебе не следовало жениться так рано.
6. Ты зря написал ему об этом. Он теперь будет беспокоиться.
7. Ты зря приехал в Лондон. Здесь его нет.
8. Ты зря купил эту машину. Она очень дорогая.
9. Ты зря приехал на машине. Здесь нет моста через реку.
0. Зря ты был с нею так груб. Она теперь плачет.

Ex. 48. Revision: translate the following sentences expressing absence of necessity into Russian using *have to* or *need*:

1. «Рассказать тебе, как все это случилось?» — «Не стоит. Я все знаю».
2. Погода сейчас теплая, и мне не надо топить камин вечером.
3. Он четко осознавал, что он хочет сказать, и ему не надо было подбирать слова.
4. Мне не надо было ничего покупать, так как мой муж не обедал дома в тот день.
5. У него сейчас каникулы. Ему не надо работать до осени.
6. Скажи моему сыну, что ему не надо работать до осени. Ему надо хорошо отдохнуть дома.
7. Она знала, что ей не надо присутствовать при их разговоре.
8. У него не было необходимости жить летом в Лондоне.

Ex. 49. Revision: fill in the blanks in the following texts with suitable modal verbs:

a) "Hallo, Tim. What have you been doing?" Mary called to the boy.

"I've been up at the station," Tim said, "watching the trains. You ... learn a lot there. You ... go up there more often. And I've got a message for you."

"For me?"

"Yes. From Mike. I saw him off back to London. He said he was called away unexpectedly and ... (not) to see you again. He also said if you were in London he'd like you to call on him but he didn't give me his address, so I ... (not) tell it to you."

"But he ... (not) have gone," Mary cried out.

"Why not?" Tim looked puzzled. "I've just seen him go."

b) "Grandad says he'll be glad when you get out of the house," the little girl said after she had been sitting still for nearly a minute.

"Does he?" said Ted.

"Yes. He says he ... (not) trust you round the corner."

"Oh?"

"What ... you do round the corner?"

"I ... do a lot of things."

"What sort of things?"

"All sorts of things."

The girl occupied herself for a short time with her own thoughts. Then she said: "Mummy says you're a cheat. What is a cheat?"

"I don't know," said Ted rather bitterly.

"But ... you be a cheat if you don't know what it is?"

"I ... (not), of course. I am not one."

"Is Grandad a cheat?"

"I shouldn't be surprised."

"... I ask him if he is a cheat?"

"I don't think you"

"Why not?"

"He ... (not) like it."

"Why not?"

"I don't know," said Ted. "I don't really know anything about cheats, Ann. And I think you ... have made a mistake about the word altogether."

c) "The house is absolutely full of gas. Whatever have you been doing?" I asked the maid, entering her bedroom.

"I have done nothing," she said, weakly.

"Oh, then, who was it?" I said, trying to open the windows. "You ... have been dead. I ... (not) think what you ... have been doing. The gas oven was on. I suppose it ... have been Flora. Was she playing in the kitchen?"

"Yes. She ... have done it. What a naughty girl, trying to kill us all."

"Do you mean," I said, "that you didn't even notice? That since seven o'clock you haven't noticed a thing?"

"I did not notice anything, no."

"You ... be an idiot," I said. "What if I had stayed out all night, you'd probably all have been dead by the morning."

Ex. 50. Revision: supply the necessary modal verbs for the following sentences, noticing carefully the Russian equivalents given in brackets:

1. He ... not and ... not believe her. (*не мог; не хотел*)
2. He sat, thinking unhappily of his talk with Jimmy. He wondered if he ... have stayed with him. He felt he ... have said something at least, to warn Jimmy against Smith. But what ... he have said? And Jimmy ... not have listened. (*надо было бы; следовало бы; мог бы; не стал бы*)

3. "By the way," I asked, "what's Bill doing now?" "How in the world ... I know?" Arthur looked pained. "I thought he ... have been bothering you for money." (*откуда мне знать; может быть*)
4. He came out of the water, smiling. "You ... have come earlier," he said. "We ... have swum together. The water is great." (*зря не пришел; могли бы*)
5. "Last night, you know, Hugh suddenly began to speak to me about what my future was going to be like." "What ... it have meant?" "How ... I know?" (*и что это могло значить; откуда мне знать*)
6. There was an old apple tree beside the path. I said, "I bet I ... climb that." "No, you ... not," said Jack. (*могу; не надо*)
7. "Well, then, ... you hold the line while I find the letter?" "I ... not, I'm in a telephone box." "Then ... I ring you back?" "I'm not on the telephone." "Then I think perhaps you ... ring me back in half an hour. By then I ... have some idea what this is all about." (*можешь ли; не могу; можно мне; тебе лучше; может быть*)
8. He knows he ... read classics. He ... change to something else. (*не нужно; мог бы*)
9. "Monday will be my last day in London," Hudson said. "I ... stay down here fairly late." (*может быть, придется*)
10. In any case, I ... not hang about outside indefinitely while the sisters finished their quarrel. They ... continue for hours, (*не мог же; может быть*)
11. It's too bad she ... not have a drink with us. We ... have learned a great deal about the theatre tonight. (*не могла; могли бы*)
12. If you help me now I ... help you later. (*может быть, смогу*)
13. "I shall wait to hear what Lily has to say about it." "You ... wait a long time." (*может быть, придется*)
14. I think you ... certainly have told us the truth, and we ... have decided what was the best thing to do. (*следовало бы; могли бы*)
15. If your mother calls, tell her I ... be a little late. (*возможно, придется*)
16. On Saturday Charles broke the news to his father. Mr March began to grumble: "You ... have chosen a more suitable time to tell me. You ... have known that hearing this would put me out of step for the day." (*следовало бы; мог бы*)

Ex. 51. Revision: translate the following sentences into English using suitable modal verbs:

1. Мне пойти и узнать, сделал ли он работу? Он должен был закончить ее вчера.
2. Тебе долго пришлось дожидаться его?
3. Зря ты пришел. Собрание отменили.
4. Он должен был все закончить вчера, но его неожиданно вызвали в Лондон.
5. Ты должен был бы сказать нам об этом, а то теперь мы не знаем, что нам делать.
6. Все устроилось. Теперь мне не надо ехать в Лондон.
7. Он, должно быть, не сумел передать им нашу записку, и они, возможно, ждут нас.
8. «Неужели он забыл заказать нам номера в гостинице?» — «Он, наверное, заказал их на ваше имя».
9. Не может быть, чтобы она сделала такую глупость.
10. Мне можно идти?
11. Вы могли бы сделать это для меня?
12. «Он должен был приехать пятичасовым поездом. Неужели он опоздал на него?» — «Откуда мне знать?»
13. Он, наверное, не сказал им об этом, и они, возможно, не придут.
14. Ты должен был нам сказать, что не сможешь выступить за команду сегодня.
15. Зачем тебе откладывать на завтра то, что ты можешь (мог бы) сделать сегодня?
16. Я должна с ним увидеться во вторник вечером.
17. Он мог бы хоть что-нибудь сказать, чтобы поддержать меня.
18. Она никак не хотела объяснить, в чем дело.
19. К сожалению, мне не пришлось поговорить с отцом. Я не застал его дома. Мне следовало бы приехать рано утром.
20. Ты мог бы мне сказать, что опоздаешь.
21. Она, должно быть, не поняла, по какой дороге ей идти, и, возможно, заблудилась.
22. Тебе ведь пришлось остаться там до конца?
23. Ты вся промокла. Зря ты не попросила кого-нибудь подвезти тебя.
24. Мне, возможно, придется поехать туда на такси. Так, наверное, будет быстрее.
25. «Я везде искал его вчера. Я хотел, чтобы он тоже выступил на собрании». — «Ты зря беспокоился. Он мог бы все испортить».

26. Вчера мне не пришлось проверить тетради своих студентов, так как мне пришлось заменять другого преподавателя.
27. Мне незачем говорить вам, почему это надо сделать сразу.
28. Ты напрасно ходил за ключом. Дверь была открыта.
29. Вчера вечером я видел его жену. Ее можно было принять за француженку.
30. Как ты думаешь, почему он так смутился?
31. Тебе следует захватить плащ. Может пойти дождь.
32. Земля сырая. Здесь, должно быть, только что шел дождь.
33. Вам незачем было приходить. Мы могли бы кончить это без вас.
34. Вечером она должна была пойти на вечеринку. Поэтому после завтрака ей пришлось вымыть голову.
35. Странно, что он ушел, не сказав нам, куда он пошел.
36. Я не вижу, почему бы вам не быть друзьями.
37. Осторожно. Вы чуть не упали.
38. Тебе не надо было звонить ей так поздно.
39. Это — несущественный пункт. Его можно было и не включать в отчет.
40. Он сказал, что должен спешить, и ушел, не дождавшись ее ответа.
41. Завтра не нужно приходить. Я буду занят.
42. Отец говорит, что я должен остаться с ним еще немного.

THE VERB

MEANS OF EXPRESSING UNREALITY

Ex. 1. Explain the use of the verb forms in the following object clauses:

1. I don't know how he *found* it out.
2. He was a little surprised that she *should not believe* him.
3. At the office he gave instructions that inquiries *should be made* about a young person called Lisette.
4. Didn't she know that you *were* married?
5. I gave orders that he *shouldn't be allowed* on the premises.
6. She wanted to go to see him off, but he had been very insistent that she *shouldn't*.
7. I thought I *should get* over it but I still feel offended.
8. I think he was determined that nothing *should interfere* with his independence of spirit.
9. They arranged that Grace *should tell* her parents that she was engaged to be married.
10. I think my sister's singing *has greatly improved*.
11. When he was told that she *had gone* to Aberdeen, he was glad that she *should look* at the shops and perhaps *visit* a cinema.
12. He had never suggested that I *should visit* them.
13. She had a feeling that something frightening *was being kept* from her.
14. Laura insisted that we *should put* the party off.
15. He was so anxious that the boy *should not go* to California.
16. I suggest that you *have* your foot seen to at once.
17. Con insisted that I *be* also present.

Ex. 2. Supply the necessary forms of the verbs in brackets in the following object clauses:

1. He suggests that I (*to try*) something of a more serious nature.
2. He only requested that he (*to allow*) to see the heads of some departments.
3. Doris requires of a man only that he (*to be*) clever.
4. Brady proposed that they (*to walk*) down to the sea wall.
5. I saw that I (*to be*) mistaken in believing that Uncle Nick (*to be*) ill.

6. They decided that Laura (*to have*) the nourishing food that had been ordered her.
7. He was annoyed that they (*to choose*) the day of his departure for the party.
8. I'm glad that you (*to drop*) in.
9. Charles insisted that we (*to keep*) secret even the most remote mention of the idea.
10. It was lunchtime. He knew that they (*to be*) safely occupied for an hour at least.
11. He was determined that his enemies (*to pay*).
12. I was a little surprised that such a little boy (*to read*) the life of Milton.
13. She soon discovered that he never (*to see*) the Statue of Liberty or any of the museums in New York.
14. She asked that her affair never (*to speak*) of.
15. Rupert was anxious that there (*to be*) no appearance of coldness on Hilda's part.
16. Propriety demanded that I (*to represent*) at the game in person.
17. I've made up my mind that Meg (*to send*) for.

Ex. 3. Translate the following into English using the appropriate verb forms in object clauses:

1. Потом он предложил прекратить дискуссию и поговорить о чем-нибудь другом.
2. Мою мать звали Лидия, и она всегда настаивала, чтобы мы называли ее этим именем.
3. После ужина он предложил пойти в кино, но она отказалась.
4. Он сердится, что я влюбился в его сестру.
5. Они все согласились, что надо что-то делать с мальчиком.
6. Отец хотел идти пешком, но мама настояла, чтобы мы поехали на машине.
7. В открытке он предлагал, чтобы они встретились в Национальной галерее.
8. Он настаивал на том, чтобы я взял отпуск.
9. Она надеялась, что сможет убраться в кухне утром.
10. Я не понимал, почему он так сердится.
11. Как только мы сели, он потребовал, чтобы свечи убрали.
12. Чарльз посоветовал, чтобы мы поели и потом пошли в театр.

13. Он попросил, чтобы мы не занимали этот вечер.
14. Я был встревожен, что он не позвонил мне.
15. Он спросил меня, вернусь ли я в Лондон через неделю.
16. Я предложил пообедать вместе.
17. Ее мать пригласила их остановиться у нее, но Энн настаивала, чтобы они пошли в гостиницу.
18. Я рад, что вы так хорошо думаете о моем сыне.
19. Он устроил, чтобы Эдвард поехал в Италию на год или на два.
20. Я дал распоряжение Эми, чтобы она взялась за эту задачу.
21. Он предпочитал, чтобы Кэт приглашала своих друзей в дом.
22. Ронни решил, что я должен познакомиться с его девушкой в этот вечер.

Ex. 4. Explain the use of the verb forms in object clauses subordinated to the principal clause with it as subject:

1. It was important that no sound *should* give warning of their approach.
2. It's absolutely essential that you *shouldn't breathe* a word.
3. It puzzled me that such a young girl *should* so insistently occupy his thoughts.
4. It seemed necessary that his friends *should be kept* away from interfering with his work.
5. It was unlikely that he *would take* any steps against his brother.
6. After lunch it was proposed that they *should* all go to the lake.
7. It was possible that her only feeling *was* one of hurt pride.
8. It's not likely that they *should exchange* addresses.
9. It was agreed that he *should be* the first to speak.
10. It was inevitable that Danny *should*, sooner or later, pass through the town.
11. It's only natural that a mother *should not wish* to be parted from her children.
12. It infuriated me that there *had been* considerable newspaper coverage concerning Mr Haskin's visit.
13. It was improbable that Bart *should buy* pictures.
14. It is advisable that she *should have* someone to look after her.
15. It was explained to me that I *was* an ungrateful child who had consistently rejected the kindness offered by my aunt and uncle.
16. It was very odd that we *should have met* in my aunt's house.

Ex. 5. Supply the necessary forms of the verbs in brackets in object clauses subordinated to the principal clause with *it* as subject:

1. He had spent the first part of the night lying rigid and telling himself how important it was that he (*to sleep*).
2. It's wonderful that they (*to give*) you a present.
3. It was arranged that his wife (*to join*) him in six months.
4. It was all wrong that someone so young (*to be*) so ill.
5. It was inevitable that the conversation with Ned (*to turn*) upon crime.
6. It's not fair that the girl (*to send*) to bed so early on a day like this.
7. She listened in silence to Mel's explanation why it was essential that he (*to remain*) at the airport.
8. It had long been decided that I (*to spend*) a fourth year at Cambridge doing psychology.
9. It was advisable that she (*to continue*) the treatment.
10. It was demanded that I (*to tell*) them all that had passed at the conference.
11. It was possible that she (*to find*) it pleasant to be in our company.
12. It was unnatural the way he (*to keep*) his feeling in check.
13. Arthur said: "It seems to me almost a pity that the church (*to forbid*) priests to marry."
14. After their talk it was urgent that she (*to see*) her husband.
15. It was amazing that this coarse man (*to be*) so worried about a dog.
16. It was arranged that I (*to pick*) up Hudson at his flat after lunch.
17. It was suggested that we (*to stay*) where we were till it was light.
18. It is obviously necessary that an investigation (*to make*).

Ex. 6. Translate the following into English using the appropriate verb forms in object clauses subordinated to the principal clause with *it* as subject:

1. Прекрасно, что она сама взялась за эту задачу.
2. В конце концов было решено, что они устроят вечеринку.
3. В этом случае весьма существенно, чтобы он не сделал ошибки.
4. Вдруг ему показалось страшно важным, чтобы они не оставили его одного.

5. Было условлено, что мы встретимся у него на квартире.
6. Было нелепо, что она так рассердилась из-за подгоревшего обеда.
7. Они просили, чтобы отец взял девочку с собой.
8. Удивительно, что делает страх с человеком.
9. Хотелось, чтобы он, следуя семейной традиции, поступил в юридическую школу.
10. Она знала, что непременно должна купить себе новое пальто.

Ex. 7. Explain the use of the verb forms in object clauses after *to wish* and translate the sentences into Russian:

1. I wish I *had* a lab of my own.
2. She almost wished she *hadn't asked* them to dinner.
3. I wish I *could drop* the whole matter.
4. I wish it *had happened* to anyone but you.
5. I wish you *had brought* your sister with you.
6. "I wish Paul *could have stayed* a few minutes," I said.
7. He wished they *would let* him enjoy his dinner in peace.
8. Oh, how I wish it *would rain*!
9. I wish you *wouldn't be* so horrid, Willy, just when I'm so miserable.

Ex. 8. Supply the necessary forms of the verbs in brackets in object clauses after *to wish*:

1. Bill, you're up to something. I wish I (*to know*) what it is.
2. Mel wished he (*to know*) earlier what Tom had just told him.
3. He wished that it all never (*to happen*) at all and that things (*to be*) as they once had been.
4. I wish I (*can*) settle down to something.
5. I wish I (*to have*) a jeep, that's all.
6. I wish I (*to be*) quite sure that she is altogether honest.
7. "I wish I (*to have*) a cigarette. That's more important to me just now," said Jack.
8. We wish to goodness the thing (*can*) be patched up.
9. I wish you (*to go*) up and (*to see*) Willy.
10. I now began to wish that I (*not to take*) Monty into my confidence.
11. I wished he (*not to ask*) that question.
12. "Have you got my letter?" "Yes. I wish you (*not to write*) it."
13. She almost wished it (*to be*) an ordinary day and that there (*to be*) no such things as holidays.

14. I wish I (*can*) go round the world.
15. I wish you (*to ask*) her a question or two about her parents.
16. At the first sight of his host Andrew almost wished he (*not to come*).

Ex. 9. Translate the following into English using the appropriate verb forms in object clauses after *wish*:

1. Как бы я хотел, чтобы твоя дочь была немножко похожа на тебя.
2. Я бы хотел, чтобы ты пришел к тому или иному решению.
3. Ему очень хотелось, чтобы этот вечер уже кончился.
4. Я иногда жалею, что ты решил написать эту книгу, Хью.
5. Мне бы хотелось, чтобы у нас был настоящий сад.
6. О Боже, как я жалею, что сделал это.
7. Я бы очень хотел, чтобы Вилли изменил свое решение и не брался за немецкий язык.
8. Он просто не знал, как утешить жену.
9. Я бы хотел, чтобы ты снова начал писать стихи.
10. Я бы очень хотел, чтобы у большего числа людей у нас на работе было твое чувство юмора, Джек.
11. Ей было жаль, что она не могла слышать, что говорилось внизу.
12. Как бы мне хотелось, чтобы он перестал писать мне.
13. Как жаль, что я не застал его дома.
14. Я пожалела, что рассказала им о себе.

Ex. 10. Explain the use of the verb forms in object clauses after *it is time* and translate the sentences into Russian:

1. Don't you think it's time you *got* a job?
2. Come along. It's time we *had* lunch.
3. It's high time we *started* putting our own house in order.
4. They were saying in the office that it was about time Walker *retired*.
5. "It's high time you *were* sacked, boy," the foreman said angrily.

Ex. 11. Translate the following into English using the appropriate verb forms in object clauses after *it is time*:

1. Пора бы нам идти.
2. Ему давно пора бы объяснить нам, что он задумал.

3. Его давно пора проучить.
4. Когда я проснулся, я почувствовал, что мне самое время вызвать доктора.
5. В самом деле, нам пора пообедать.
6. Ему было сказано на людях, что пора бы ему научиться делать так, как ему велят.
7. Тебе давно пора выбросить эту старую мебель.
8. Как ты думаешь, не пора ли нам вернуться к гостям?

Ex. 12. Explain the use of the verb forms in object clauses after expressions of fear:

1. She was afraid that he *had seen* her.
2. He was afraid that he *might be taken* for a burglar.
3. He felt apprehensive of what *might happen*.
4. She is afraid that they *may not meet* her at the station.
5. I'm afraid the news *has upset* her awfully.
6. He seemed nervous lest he *should set* his son a bad example.
7. I passed the door quickly, fearful lest the nurse who sat up all night *should hear* me.
8. I said: "You know, doctor, I'm afraid I *might tend* to be a little inquisitive sometimes."

Ex. 13. Supply the necessary forms of the verbs in brackets in object clauses after expressions of fear:

1. "It's time you went to bed, dear." "I'm afraid my husband (to call) me up from New York yet."
2. I'm afraid we (to have) bad news for you.
3. She was afraid he (to leave) without seeing her.
4. When the plane touched down he began to have apprehension lest he (to miss) her in the crowd.
5. She was overcome with fear that I (to let) her down.
6. She was overcome with fear lest I (to let) her down.
7. I'm afraid you (not to have) a pleasant journey.
8. He feared lest his landlord (to betray) him to the Germans.
9. Paula, fearful that the opening door (to strike) the little girl, pulled her aside.
10. I had a feeling of terror lest he never (to be) able to play in public again.
11. They had made a date for the following Friday night and he feared lest she (not to come).

Ex. 14. Revision: supply the necessary forms for the verbs in brackets:

1. It was agreed that he (*to start*) on his new job on Monday.
2. I'm afraid I (*not to make*) my point clear.
3. I wish you (*to have*) a serious talk with Paula.
4. Then he asked if I (*to be*) a foreigner to these parts.
5. I suggested that she (*to take*) off her coat and (*to move*) towards the fire.
6. It was surprising that she (*to make*) friends with our boys.
7. It's important that I myself (*to speak*) with your captain.
8. I feared lest I (*not to get*) back in time.
9. It outraged me that he (*to remind*) me of my duty.
10. She was disappointed that he (*not to come*) to the party.
11. Do you prefer that I (*to stay*) here as if nothing had happened?
12. I'm afraid they (*to misunderstand*) my intention.
13. It's odd how little, if at all, our days (*to vary*) here.
14. I wish I never (*to meet*) you.
15. Tom seemed very worried, and insisted that we (*to stop*) playing and (*to go*) home.
16. I'm afraid I (*not to sleep*) well.
17. It was arranged that Mr Dodd (*to have*) a room at the local pub.
18. It's about time we (*to hear*) from him.
19. I was determined that Charles (*not to do*) anything more to upset his father.
20. It's important that children (*to teach*) to know the right things from the very beginning.
21. I wish you (*to think*) of something else.
22. It surprised me that after such a journey he (*to look*) in first-class physical condition.
23. It's funny that you (*to think*) so.
24. I wish her face (*not to make*) up so heavily. She's not on the stage.
25. I thought that he (*to change*) very much.
26. It's high time Bill (*to be*) back home.
27. I felt puzzled why he (*to be*) so troubled.
28. He turned sharply to see if I (*to cry*) or something.
29. I wish you (*to be*) serious, Clare. We haven't much time before the train starts.
30. They recommended that I (*to go*) and (*to see*) him at once.
31. I wish you (*to stop*) laughing.

32. It's not at all necessary that I (*to explain*) anything to you.
33. I was afraid that Father (*to be*) upset when I broke the news to him.
34. Of course it was quite possible that Mrs Lee (*to be*) badly ill.
35. I wish you (*not to catch*) that dreadful cold.
36. He wanted to ask if Lament (*to be*) left-handed.
37. It's advisable that you (*to talk*) to the old man in a quiet relaxed tone.
38. I wished he (*to come*) to a decision.
39. It's necessary that you (*to find*) a specialist who could deal with it.
40. The officer ordered that the bridge (*to destroy*) at dawn.
41. It's surely advisable that you (*not to quarrel*) at a time like this.
42. He thought it (*to be*) quite proper that his children (*to go*) to a public school.
43. He was anxious that you (*to know*) the truth.
44. He decided that his son (*to have*) a proper education.
45. They demanded that the doctor (*to tell*) them what was the matter.
46. He had given instructions that everything possible (*to do*).
47. I do wish it (*to rain*).
48. I was ashamed that he (*to tell*) lies.
49. I did wish I (*to bring*) my camera with me.

Ex. 15. Explain the use of the verb forms in the following appositive and predicative clauses:

1. He at last came to the decision what *should be done* about the manuscript.
2. My suspicion was that he *did not know* how to do it.
3. His aunt made a peremptory demand that he *should send* her ten pounds a month.
4. He willingly accepted his father's suggestion that he *should go on* a long journey to India.
5. He soon came to the conclusion that he *had* nothing in common with his brother.
6. The publisher sent me a letter with the request that I *should write* a review of the book.
7. But the most drastic demand the new owner made was that half the workmen *be discharged* at once.

8. When one reads Goethe's "The Sorrows of Werther" today one can hardly fail to ask oneself what there was in it to cause so great a sensation. I suppose that the answer is that it exactly *suit*ed what we now call the climate of opinion.
9. My only wish was that he *should be* altogether honest.
10. His intention was that his two sons *should continue* his trade.
11. The fact is that they *were* indifferent to one another.
12. His idea was that the theatre *should serve* as a means of education for the mass of the public.

Ex. 16. Supply the necessary forms of the verbs in brackets in the following appositive and predicative clauses:

1. He had to satisfy the editor's requirements that a short story (*not to exceed*) one hundred lines.
2. The arrangement was that they (*to take*) the Fishers to a play and to supper at the Savoy afterwards.
3. I got the impression that his family (*to be*) rather indifferent to him.
4. My desire was that he (*to leave*) off his work and go on a holiday.
5. She accepted Dick's suggestion that she (*to dismiss*) her taxi and ride back with him.
6. He conceived the idea that by copying any printed matter he (*to improve*) his spelling.
7. His only request was that he (*to allow*) to visit his son.
8. She was filled with a great desire that her husband (*to see*) her new dress.
9. He handed me over to his secretary with the instruction that I (*to give*) a room for the night.
10. The difficulty was that he (*not to fit*) in with the other people there.
11. I told him of the chief's request that he (*to see*) to the matter himself.
12. The trouble was that he (*to move*) out of the house.
13. They came to the agreement that they (*to meet*) for talks twice a year.
14. The suggestion is that I (*to make*) her stay with us a little longer.
15. The fact is that Mr March (*to catch*) him in a lie.
16. The idea they arrived at was that they (*to get*) themselves

introduced to the pretty girl.

17. Bill rejected the proposal that he (*to buy*) an estate with the money.

Ex. 17. Explain the use of the verb forms in the following clauses of purpose:

1. "I like to be close to the stage," said Sandy, "so that I *can see* the actors' faces."
2. He asked Teddy to stop the car so that he and Julie *could get out*.
3. Once or twice he gave Tom considerable sums in order that he *might make* a fresh start.
4. She usually bore her head high so that men *should not see* her double chin.
5. I shall send a scout to reconnoitre so that we *can find out* what the enemy soldiers are doing.
6. George stood up lest anyone *should see* him lying there in his evening clothes.
7. She knew that Billy preferred to go and stand at the gate so that he *could be* the first to board the plane.
8. Mother is sending the children to have their refreshments first, so that we'll *have* the table to ourselves.
9. The woman, seeing the girl, moved to the other side of her son so that not even a glance *should pass* between them.

Ex. 18. Supply the necessary forms of the verbs in brackets in the following clauses of purpose:

1. She stirred on her sofa, shifting her weight so that she (*to look*) down at the playing cat.
2. He gave Stella another glance, from the corner of his eye, so that she (*not to see*) he was looking at her.
3. Then she went over to the captain and leaned over him so that she (*to speak*) into his ear.
4. She put the coat back and placed some other clothes on it so that it (*to look*) as though it had not been disturbed.
5. I like to know what new books are being published so that I (*to ask*) for them at the public library.
6. You ought to hear it from his own lips so that you (*to judge*).
7. I went to the desk and asked for my key so that I (*to go*) straight up to my room.

8. Uncle Nick's effects had to be moved out of his room so that it (*to re-let*).
9. He waded out cautiously, so that he (*not to trip*) against a coral rock.
10. He carefully took note of the furniture in the room so that he (*not to knock*) against a chair or a table in the dark and (*to make*) a noise.
11. Mrs Tinker was arranging apples on the counter so that the spots (*not to show*).
12. I had a book hidden in the barn, so that I (*to read*) without fear of being caught.
13. I took her to a theatre, so that we (*to get*) back home late enough.

Ex. 19. Translate the following into English using the appropriate verb forms in clauses of purpose:

1. Я сообщаю тебе обо всех этих вещах, чтобы мы могли понять друг друга.
2. Он велел нам сесть на заднее сиденье машины, чтобы мы могли поговорить.
3. Он притворился, что разговаривает с кем-то, чтобы слуга не подумал, что он один в комнате.
4. Девочка не закрывала окно ни днем, ни ночью, чтобы кошка могла приходить к ней в комнату, когда той вздумается.
5. Мы пошли погулять, чтобы я мог увидеть лес до того, как стемнеет.
6. Она понизила голос, чтобы ее мать не слышала нас.
7. Грейс предприняла необходимые меры, чтобы они могли сразу же пожениться.
8. Он отошел в сторону от театральной кассы, чтобы я мог поговорить с кассиром.
9. Позвони мне, когда ты будешь выезжать, чтобы я знал, когда ждать тебя.
10. Она дала мне ключ, чтобы я мог отпереть дверь.

Ex. 20. Re-word the following sentences turning the infinitive phrases into clauses of purpose:

1. The nurse stepped around *for the doctor to see* the man's wound.
2. I want to go to London *for my wife to see* the play.
3. I know he'll come home *for us to have* dinner together.

4. Shall I ring *for the maid to clear* these things away?
5. He spoke loudly and clearly *for all to hear*.
6. I'm telling you this *for you to write* home about.
7. He kept the gate closed *for the cows not to get* into the garden.
8. She left the room *for little Em to sleep* quietly.
9. She rang off *for her mother not to know* whom she had been talking to.
10. He left a book here *for me to look* over.
11. He was plucking early roses *for her to carry* back to town.
12. She told all sorts of lies *for her children not to hate* their father.

Ex. 21. Explain the use of the verb forms in the following clauses of comparison and predicative clauses introduced by *as if* and *as though*:

1. He was throwing his things into a suitcase *as if the place were* on fire.
2. She always looked *as though she had been* in the beauty parlour all afternoon.
3. Mary is always saying she believes in her friend, and at the same time she always behaves *as if he were* her enemy.
4. Our life goes on *as if nothing had happened*.
5. Father sounded *as if he would never agree* to let me go on the trip.
6. He came over to the table and stood in front of it *as though it were* a lectern.
7. He took off his hat and held it across his chest, almost *as if he were saluting* the flag.
8. Bernard sat in his chair looking *as if he were going* to be sick.
9. His head ached terribly. It felt *as though all sorts of little savage things were beating* inside it, trying to get out.
10. It seemed *as though the water drew* her irresistibly.
11. He felt *as if he were being reprimanded*.
12. After travelling some distance the leather of the seats felt *as if they might burst* into flame.
13. Sinclair was panting, *as though he had been running*.

Ex. 22. Supply the necessary forms of the verbs in brackets in the following clauses of comparison and predicative clauses introduced by *as if* and *as though*:

1. Her lips were parted *as if she (to be)* out of breath.

2. Hugh laughed awkwardly, as if he (*to say*) something indecent.
3. Then he rolled his eyes in his head, as if he (*to do*) an exercise.
4. He looked down at his feet as though he (*to be*) unconscious of the company.
5. Bateman felt as though someone (*to give*) him a violent blow.
6. She sounded as if she (*to talk*) to someone distasteful.
7. He couldn't move his legs as if they (*to be*) stuck on the floor.
8. "It sounds as though there (*to be*) three or four men down there," said my father.
9. She spoke of this and that as though she (*to make*) conversation with a stranger.
10. He looked as if he already (*to decide*) on some action.
11. He went into the house by the back door and sneaked up the stairs as though he (*to have*) something to hide.
12. It looked as though he (*to be*) filled with an overwhelming joy.
13. The sky looked as though it (*to be*) grey for months.
14. Robert's voice sounded hoarse, as though he (*to shout*) into the wind for hours.
15. Her stillness and her strange words made me feel as if I still (*to dream*).
16. Jones greeted me as though I (*to be*) an old school-friend whom he had not seen for years.
17. Her eyes were sparkling as though she (*to laugh*) at us.
18. She was breathing fast and deep, as though she (*to run*).
19. Her face was red and swollen as though she (*to choke*).
20. He looked as though he (*not to move*) since I left him the previous night.

Ex. 23. Translate the following into English using the appropriate verb forms in clauses of comparison and predicative clauses introduced by *as if* or *as though*:

1. Он сидел за столом, как если бы писал, но он не писал и не читал.
2. Он смотрел на меня так, как будто не понимал меня.
3. Собака приветствовала Фрэнка, как будто они давно не виделись.
4. Они не разговаривали, как будто они были так счастливы быть вместе, что разговоры были излишни.
5. У него был такой вид, как будто он вот-вот расплачется.

6. Она чувствовала себя очень усталой, как будто она очень долго гуляла.
7. Она продолжала оглядывать комнату, как будто искала кого-то.
8. Они разговаривали друг с другом тихими голосами, как будто они были в церкви.
9. Морис сидел не шевелясь, словно он не расслышал Джека.
10. Он застегнул пальто, как будто ему было холодно.
11. О да, у меня такое чувство, как будто я знаю тебя годы.
12. Она обычно выглядела так, словно она недавно плакала.
13. Было похоже, что переговоры продлятся еще несколько дней.

Ex. 24. Explain the use of the verb forms in the following conditional sentences:

1. He walked around the city aimlessly for the rest of the morning, looking into shop windows and thinking of the things he *would buy* if he *had* money.
2. If I *remind* you in a month from now of things you are saying tonight you'll *laugh*.
3. What *would have happened* if you *hadn't done* so well yesterday?
4. If I *were* a playwright I'd *write* a nice, old-fashioned play in which the heroine is pure and beautiful and makes a man out of her husband.
5. "If I'd *answered* back like that at your age I'd *have been* well *slapped*," said Mrs Grey.
6. I said I thought it *would be* far more fun if your brother *had come*, too.
7. I remember that if I *lit* a cigarette in here you always *opened* the window.
8. If he *knew* he *would have told* me. I'm sure he knows nothing.
9. Ronny would bring lots of gifts for Martha and say to me: "I *wouldn't be doing* this, if Martha *did not treat* me well."
10. She'll only *be miserable* if you *insist*.
11. It was so dark that he *would have lost* his way if she *had not taken* him by the hand.
12. "Do you think it's important?" "Yes, I do. If I *didn't* I *wouldn't be* here."

Ex. 25. Supply the necessary forms of the verbs in brackets in the following conditional sentences:

1. If his mother (*not to go*) out, the boy (*to turn*) off the TV set and (*to go*) to bed.
2. I (*to wait*) if I (*to be*) you.
3. She (*to fall*) if he suddenly (*not to put*) out a hand to steady her.
4. If I (*to be*) a poet I (*to write*) a poem about nettles in a wine glass.
5. If it (*to be*) not for the journalists, everything (*to be*) perfectly easy.
6. If your father (*to be*) here, he (*to give*) you a piece of his mind.
7. I'm glad that he turned this offer down. There (*to be*) no turning back if he (*to accept*) it.
8. "She is only twenty." "She (*to know*) better if she (*to be*) twenty-five?"
9. I do not know what (*to happen*) if this (*to go*) on much longer.
10. Don't you see that if things like that (*to happen*) life (*to be*) quite different?
11. You really (*to follow*) me if I (*to go*) away?
12. I believe you (*to make*) her stay if it (*to be*) not so late.
13. It (*to be*) better if you (*to take*) things coolly, as I do.

Ex. 26. Explain the use of the verb forms in the following conditional sentences referring to the future and translate them into Russian:

1. *Would you do it differently if you had to do it over again?*
2. *However, if it should be proved on him, he will have to leave my house.*
3. *It would be much more convenient if he were to move to a hotel.*
4. *I think it would be a good thing if you would come and stay at my house for a little while.*
5. *They are going to send me some records in case I should forget my lessons.*
6. *If I were to tell you of the things the girl does, you would open your eyes.*
7. *I should certainly try to deserve your confidence if you would give me another chance.*
8. *"I don't care if the whole school knows." "If that should happen, we shall have to send you home."*

9. The situation was embarrassing. If I *went* in at once it *would* be obvious that I had overheard the words that had just been spoken.

Ex. 27. Supply the necessary forms of the verbs in brackets in the following conditional sentences referring to the future:

1. I (to be) grateful if you (to keep) the news to yourself.
2. I (to be) in the drawing-room in case there (to be) a telephone call for me.
3. Many people ask themselves: "What I (to do) differently if I (to have) another chance?"
4. He wondered how he (to feel) if his former wife (to come) into the room in which he happened to be.
5. I know he is itching to tell me what happened, but I (to be) darned if I (to ask) him.
6. Philip says they (to miss) me if I (to leave) before their wedding.
7. Look here, it (to be) a bore for you if we (to have) tea somewhere?
8. In case any crisis (to arise), let me know.
9. The situation has been bad lately, but everything (to calm) down if you only (to stop) making a fuss.
10. If this (to be) our last meeting for some time, I (not to like) you to remember this talk.
11. It (to be) awkward if she (to refuse) to co-operate.
12. What his mother and father (to think) if they (to hear) of what he has done?
13. If the situation (not to change) by Saturday I (to be) in trouble.
14. I (not to be) surprised if he (to offer) an important post under the next government.

Ex. 28. Supply the necessary forms of the verbs in brackets in the following sentences of unreal condition, taking special care of modal verbs:

1. "Are you still thinking of going on that cruise?" "It (may, be) enjoyable," he said, "if one (to have) just the right person to go with."
2. It (to be) fun if Roberta (to write) a book.
3. I never tried to understand my brother. If I (to try) I (may, stop) him from going away.
4. If I (to be) you, Meg, I (not to let) myself believe this hateful gossip.

5. I (*to hate*) myself if I (*to deceive*) him.
6. I suppose you (*to think*) it butting in if I (*to come*) too.
7. He said he had no pain, and if it (*not to be*) for the doctor, he (*to get*) up and (*to go*) home.
8. She (*can, go*) to Cambridge if she (*to want*). She had been offered a scholarship.
9. You (*to be*) horrified if I (*to tell*) you what I have had to go through.
10. If he (*not to be*) absorbed in his own thoughts he (*may, take*) notice of her remark.
11. I'm glad I wasn't at home. He (*not to get*) much help if he (*to ask*) me.
12. The house looked awful. If I (*to be*) given to crying I (*may, cry*).
13. "No, I won't tell you," she said. "It (*not to be*) fair to them if it just (*to turn*) out to be gossip."
14. It (*may, be*) fatal if she (*to learn*) the truth.
15. "May I read this?" "I (*not to bother*) if I (*to be*) you."
16. If I (*to keep*) to my original plan I (*to miss*) the whole affair.
17. There is no knowing how long he (*to continue*) on the subject if his attention (*not to distract*) by a man who appeared on the deck.
18. You don't understand, Lilly. If I (*to pick*) his idea to pieces in front of you he (*to die*).
19. Alice thought it (*may, be*) nice if you (*can, join*) us.
20. It (*to look*) silly if I (*to tell*) them the truth.
21. If I (*to be*) you, I (*to try*) to rise above it.
22. If I (*to be*) there, of course, I (*to do*) something.
23. If it (*not to be*) for the children I (*to leave*) you tomorrow.
24. If I (*to be*) a painter, I (*to choose*) an entirely different subject every time.
25. Well, I certainly (*to put*) a stop to it if I (*to know*) in time.
26. I (*to wire*) to you if you (*can, do*) anything.

Ex. 29. Turn the following pairs of sentences into a sentence of unreal condition, like in the example below:

E.g. Don't refuse her present. It will upset her dreadfully. → If you *were* to refuse her present it *would* upset her dreadfully.

1. Don't ask me. I can't tell you.
2. You haven't got to the city yet because you are not travelling alone.

3. He was not captain of the team because he was very unpopular.
4. He was not a handsome man. He was not tall enough.
5. She did not reply. That's why I couldn't hear her.
6. She didn't enjoy the game because she discovered that her opponent disliked losing.
7. I'm not going to make my suggestion. He may think I'm prying into his affairs.
8. As nobody told him anything about this affair he was not involved in it.
9. Luckily he is not going to be invited to the party. He says he doesn't know what to wear on such occasions.
10. We enjoy the spring so much because of the winter.
11. Though I feel certain that nothing is going to happen to him I shall stay in my office the whole day.
12. Darling, please show Harry the garden. Won't it be very nice?
13. It's not likely that John will turn his back to my sister but I wonder what effect it will have on her nerves.

Ex. 30. Finish off the following conditional sentences:

1. The cake wouldn't have got burnt if ...
2. You wouldn't have got into trouble if ...
3. Your dress would look nicer if ...
4. She would have married him if ...
5. I would have come earlier if ...
6. He would have got wet through if ...
7. She would fix the door knob herself if ...
8. He would drive straight home if ...
9. I would take her to the party if ...
10. It would be better for all of us if ...
11. If it hadn't been for the rain ...
12. If it were not for the coming wedding ...
13. If it hadn't been for their neighbour ...
14. If it hadn't been for his advice ...
15. If it hadn't been for his departure ...
16. If it were not for his family ...
17. If it were not for his scholarship ...
18. If it hadn't been for the announcement on the radio ...
19. If it were not for my sprained ankle ...
20. If it were not for the message that he received ...

21. If your mother were to ask you about me
22. If I had known you were here
23. If he should turn down your offer
24. If you would not interfere
25. If the play had not been so long
26. If we could afford it
27. If the car had not broken down
28. If I were you
29. If you should leave unexpectedly
30. If it hadn't been raining
31. If the job were to be offered to me
32. If my son were not making progress in his English

Ex. 31. Translate the following conditional sentences into English:

1. Я бы никогда не подумал, что это возможно, если бы я не увидел этого своими глазами.
2. Я бы не стал делать этого на твоём месте.
3. В случае, если тебе придется неожиданно уехать, пришли мне записку.
4. Пьеса понравилась бы мне больше, если бы она не была такой длинной.
5. Если бы не его болезнь, семья переехала бы в город.
6. Если бы он пришел вовремя, этого могло бы не случиться.
7. Если бы пошел дождь, я бы промокла до костей, так как на мне было очень легкое платье.
8. Куда бы ты пошел, если бы не было дождя?
9. Посиди с ним, и, если он вдруг попросит чего-нибудь, скажи мне.
10. Если бы я сказал что-нибудь подобное твоей тетушке, она сочла бы меня сумасшедшим.
11. Я буду у себя дома весь вечер на случай, если ты передумаешь.
12. Возможно, он чувствовал и вел бы себя иначе, если бы обстоятельства были иными.
13. Если бы ты не был так занят, мы могли бы пойти куда-нибудь пообедать.
14. Если бы я задержался еще на один момент, я не знаю, что я мог бы наговорить.
15. Если бы у нас не было багажа, мы могли бы дойти до станции пешком.

Ex. 32. Revision: supply the necessary forms of the verbs in brackets in the following adverbial clauses:

1. If I (*to realize*) it was to be like this, I (*not to come*).
2. Now she acted as if she (*not to care*).
3. They drove with the windows closed so that they (*not to catch*) cold.
4. If he (*not to tell*) us that himself I never (*to believe*) that.
5. He walked out of the house jingling the keys in his pocket as though they (*to be*) coins.
6. I was waiting until you came so that we (*to eat*) together.
7. He talked quite naturally, without malice, as though he (*not to relate*) his war experiences, but his visits to foreign universities.
8. Even if I (*to see*) her at the party I (*can, do*) nothing for you.
9. She sent a message to some friends asking them to look in so that she (*not to be*) alone with Ed in the evening.
10. Don't you think it (*to be*) very much for the better if you and I both (*to keep*) quiet?
11. If anyone (*to ask*) me what his specific gift was, I (*not to know*) how to answer.
12. She said she (*to be*) pleased if my mother (*to allow*) me to spend the rest of the month with them.
13. The wind blew warmly as if it (*to sweep*) across Africa.
14. The boy hurried his meal so that he (*to go*) out to play.
15. Mary is staying with me. I think it (*to be*) a good thing if you (*to come*) and (*to see*) her.
16. If we ever (*to happen*) to meet again I (*to act*) as if this letter never (*to write*).

Ex. 33. Revision: translate the following into English using the appropriate verb forms in adverbial clauses:

1. Если вдруг возникнет какая-нибудь трудность, позвони мне тотчас же.
2. Он улыбался, как будто не веря тому, что я говорю.
3. Запри дверь, чтобы нам никто не мешал.
4. Девочка сидела тихо, как будто смотрела телевизор.
5. Для нас было бы лучше, если бы мы никогда не встретились.
6. Он говорил о книге, как если бы он ее читал.
7. Я оставил ему записку на столе, чтобы он ее увидел, как только вернется.

8. Он не сказал ни слова, как будто он не слышал, что мы разговаривали о нем.
9. Если бы не ты, я не знаю, что бы я сделал.
10. Повесь объявление повыше, чтобы всем было видно.
11. Если бы не дедушка, мальчик был бы очень несчастлив дома.
12. Она записала название книги, чтобы я мог спросить ее в библиотеке.
13. Он сказал то, что другие тоже могли бы сказать, будь они более откровенны.
14. Пол в комнате был такой грязный, как будто его не подметали несколько дней.
15. Он был бы более счастливым человеком, если бы он остался в своей деревне.
16. Он улыбнулся и похлопал ее по плечу, как маленького ребенка.
17. Он чувствовал, что если бы он отказался от этого предложения, отец рассердился бы на него.
18. Мы успели бы на последний автобус, если бы ушли из театра на пять минут раньше.
19. Она даже намекнула, что, если бы они встретились десять лет назад, когда им было по двадцать лет, все могло бы сложиться иначе.

Ex. 34. Point out in the following sentences the words that imply the unreal condition which makes the realization of the action impossible:

1. I don't know what we'd do without you.
2. He's been so quick. I *wouldn't have done* half of it in this time.
3. Ten years ago, Maurice *wouldn't have spoken* like this.
4. But for that accident the thought of you *would never have crossed* his mind.
5. She was glad that her statement was truthful. This curious man, she felt, *would have recognized* a polite evasion.
6. It *would have been* most valuable to have his first-hand account of the excavation.
7. I haven't really signed the contract, you know. I *wouldn't do* a thing like that without telling you.
8. He's never been up against any of the first-rate players and it *would be* wonderful practice for him to play in the spring tournament.

9. Even for her I *wouldn't do it*.
10. He was certain she *wouldn't have gone* without leaving her address.
11. We often ran when walking *would have done* as well.
12. Charles *would not have thought* of coming that night, but for me.
13. Her husband agreed to hiring a grand piano though, he said, an upright piano *would have done*.
14. She wished she were a poet. She *would pour* out her heart in a poem.

Ex. 35. Turn the words implying an unreal condition into an *if*-clause, like in the example below:

E.g. I should prefer you to put it in your own words. → I should prefer it if you put it in your own words.

1. He did not answer her. She would not have heard him.
2. I'd ask you to have dinner with me, but *unfortunately I have a previous engagement*.
3. Why didn't you tell me? It would have been only fair to give me a chance of judging for myself.
4. Jack would have left them, but he saw Maurice beckoning him to come over.
5. He knew his father was not among the audience. He would not have known what music to play for him.
6. You really should get a cat, Hilda. Think how happy it would be here!
7. "I wonder if Morgan has written to Peter." "We'd have seen the letter."
8. She would have liked to be an adventuress, but somehow she hadn't managed it.
9. A few years ago, in a storm like this, an airport would have been closed completely.
10. I tried to explain that but for me the children might have been lost.

Ex. 36. Supply the necessary forms of the verbs in brackets to express an unreal action depending on an implied unreal condition:

1. In the old days it (not to be) so simple to travel so far.
2. "Why didn't you persuade your brother to go also?" she asked.
"It (not to be) better for him?"

3. I never (*to give*) him a second thought but for what I knew about him.
4. He was feeling at ease and it (*to be*) pleasant to stay a little longer.
5. She was a competent girl, I thought; she (*to make*) an admirable nurse.
6. Ordinarily, Jack (*to escape*) from the party.
7. She knows I (*to do*) anything for her.
8. "But the door is locked." "I expect we (*can, open*) it." "Oh, I (*not to do*) that. Bill (*to be*) furious."
9. I (*can, produce*) easily a translation but I felt for several reasons it (*to be*) wiser not to.
10. Tom was an ironical chap. He (*not to bare*) his soul to the press.
11. He says he (*to die*) without me.
12. I had to find a suitable house to live in. David was inefficient about such things, and (*to live*) anywhere.
13. He's a man I (*to hate*) to think ill of me.
14. I think that the news (*to worry*) him too much.
15. Nothing but bad news (*to bring*) her on a night like this.

Ex. 37. Translate the following into English using the appropriate verb forms to express an unreal action depending on an implied unreal condition:

1. Я не винил его. Я бы сделал то же самое.
2. Это вещи, которые ребенку было бы трудно понять.
3. Я не думаю, чтобы Дорис сделала это.
4. «Посмотри-ка на эту сцену, — сказала она. — Где еще в мире ты увидел бы что-нибудь подобное?»
5. Мне это было бы безразлично.
6. «Видишь ли, мне было любопытно». — «Мне бы тоже было любопытно».
7. «Я не хочу идти туда». — «Почему? Я бы ни за что не пропустил этот матч».
8. Я думаю, что было бы разумно подождать до вечера.
9. Я бы никогда не подумал, что ты так быстро научишься водить машину.
10. Он бы еще многое рассказал, но он устал.

Ex. 38. Supply the necessary forms of the verbs in brackets to make the following sentences sound polite:

1. I (*to think*) they knew it by now.

2. "I (*not to like*) to go as far as that," he replied.
3. You (*to care*) to sit down?
4. I (*to say*) he is a perfectly nice boy.
5. "Dick will be so glad to see you." "I (*to think*) I was the last person Dick would wish to see."
6. "You have a song. Sing it." "No, I (*can, not*) in front of all these people." "Why not? Come on, let's get the guitar. You (*can, think*) it over on the way."
7. I (*to say*) he is now powerless to disapprove anything.
8. I (*to think*) that natural.
9. "How long will it take you to finish it off?" "I (*to say*) about an hour."
10. You (*to say*) it was impossible to talk him into it?
11. It's no use asking me. I (*can, not, tell*) you anything.
12. I (*to say*) that he is no fool.

Ex. 39. Find an adequate translation in Russian for the following traditional expressions:

1. "Was it you I saw there?" "What should I do there? However, *be that as it may*, I never was there."
2. "*Far be it from me*," he said, "to interfere with your arrangements."
3. *Suffice it to say* that his idea lacked originality.
4. My aunt believes she is doing good to the village, *as it were*.
5. "I like your young boy, Dinny," said her grandmother. "*Be yours a happy marriage*."
6. The actress, *as it were*, did not suit the role.
7. *As luck would have it*, I got a ten-pound check from my father that morning.
8. *Come what may*, he decided to sell the house.
9. They were busy packing and, *as it were*, took no notice of me.
10. I have written few pages that I feel I could not improve, but I could do no better, *as it were*.

Ex. 40. Revision: supply the necessary forms expressing unreality for the verbs given in brackets:

1. Oh, if only you (*to be*) as you used to be.
2. I wish you (*to turn*) the radio down.
3. It's desirable that the issue (*to settle*) as soon as possible.

4. He asked me to stay with him in the country so that he (*to read*) his novel to me when it was finished.
5. She arranged that the next morning the boy (*to come*) to the house where she had taken a room so that they (*to spend*) the day together.
6. He feared that after twenty years he (*to find*) his sister a rather disillusioned woman.
7. His mother knew very well who the man was, but wanted to act as though she (*to have*) no idea of it.
8. He got his sister to make herself scarce for a few hours so that his new friend (*not to know*) that he did not live alone.
9. When the boys learned of Peter's diary it was inevitable that they also (*to set*) writing diaries of their own.
10. He insisted that people in plays (*to talk*) as they talked in real life.
11. I wish I (*to see*) more of them before the war.
12. Now if I (*to get*) Helen sacked, this of course (*to mean*) telling everybody what she did.
13. "I'm afraid I can't stay," I said. "If I (*to stay*) I (*to have*) to tell things that they (*not to like*) and that (*to spoil*) their fun."
14. It was agreed that Paul (*to meet*) his mother at the station so that he (*to show*) her his apartment.
15. I (*not to tell*) you anything even if I (*can, remember*) the facts.
16. It (*to help*) if you (*to let*) me know what you saw.
17. I know I've broken your life. And we (*may, be*) so happy.
18. He was afraid that he (*to forget*) the name and asked me to put it down for him.
19. There was a wonderful concert at the Victoria Hall we (*can, go*) to. But now we are late for anything.
20. He was not well off and he went about in dread lest he (*to dismiss*).
21. In the old days she (*to argue*), but now she only nodded sadly.
22. I wish I (*to have*) a lot of money. I (*not to live*) another day in London.
23. Of course, I told myself, he (*may, detain*) but surely in that case he (*to telephone*) to me.
24. When he rang up home, his wife was not in. Normally it (*not to upset*) him but today he needed her advice badly.
25. In my reply to Miss Evans I suggested that she (*to arrive*) at my office on Monday.
26. Edward proposed that he (*to fetch*) Bateman at five so that they (*to drive*) out together to Jackson's house.

27. It (to make) small difference to the universe if I never (to exist).
28. There were moments when she wished she never (to come) away.
29. As Paula had spent the whole day with them, he insisted that she (to go) for a walk in the park.
30. The Colonel proposed that they (to give) a dinner party to the new comers.
31. He has given instructions that all the papers (to send) up immediately.
32. Somehow I felt guilty as though there (to be) something I (may, do) for Renny that I hadn't.
33. What the guests wore I (can, not, describe) even if I (to be) present.
34. His fellow-student's suggestion was that they (to ride) over to Strasbourg to spend two or three nights with friends of his.
35. It's time we (to have) a break. I wish I (can, have) a cup of tea.
36. If you (to change) your mind and (to stay) here I'll take you on a boat trip on Sunday.
37. If it (not to be) for Jim the party (to be) more fun.
38. He spoke very softly as if he (to be) afraid of being overheard.
39. When he entered the room they changed the subject of their conversation whatever it (to be).
40. If Ed (to learn) about it he will probably never speak to me again.
41. If it (not to be) for his mother he (not to live) on a barren slope like this another day.
42. It's high time you (to go) and (to leave) me in peace.
43. I never (may, meet) him but for the chance of his getting drunk one evening in my college.
44. If only he (not to interfere)!
45. My patient expressed the request that she (to operate) on by you, Doctor Stone.
46. The arrangement was that he (to fix) his car in my absence.

Ex. 41. Revision: translate the following into English using the appropriate means of expressing unreality:

1. Было решено, что дети пойдут в зоопарк сразу после завтрака.
2. Я бы хотел, чтобы ты поменьше курил.
3. Он потребовал, чтобы с ним немедленно расплатились.

4. Жаль, что я не сказала правды.
5. Необходимо, чтобы ты взял отпуск на месяц.
6. Немного найдется людей, которые отнеслись бы так спокойно ко всему этому.
7. Я пошел к себе в комнату, чтобы меня никто не беспокоил час или два.
8. Теперь он бы не сделал такой ошибки.
9. Как бы я хотел, чтобы этот семестр уже закончился.
10. В первую минуту он испугался, что Фред сядет с ним рядом и продолжит разговор.
11. Если бы кто-нибудь поверил мне!
12. Я бы считал его способным на это.
13. «Ты сделаешь это?» — «Я бы предпочел, чтобы ты сделал это».
14. Кто-то предложил послать за доктором.
15. Нам пора приняться за работу.
16. Мы боялись, как бы он не заболел.
17. О ней всегда говорили так, в третьем лице, как будто ее там не было.
18. Он знал, что, если бы его мать села рядом с ним и прикоснулась к его руке, все бы моментально стало хорошо.
19. Ты бы не понял, как мне было трудно, даже если бы я тебе рассказал.
20. Он оставил распоряжение, чтобы нас повезли показать город.
21. О, если бы она тогда только знала, куда написать ему!
22. Если бы не его работа в библиотеке Британского музея, он никогда не нашел бы этой книги.
23. Он запер бумагу в стол, чтобы ее никто не увидел.
24. Если бы с ним не было Мег, он бы спросил их об отце.
25. Мне следовало бы сказать вам давным-давно, как много вы всегда значили для меня.
26. Если бы я когда-нибудь встретила его снова, я бы знала, что делать.
27. «Если бы родители не взяли меня с собой, я бы не простил им этого», — сказал мне мальчик.
28. Как жаль, что я не могу рассказать тебе об этом.
29. Он боялся, что произведет плохое впечатление.
30. А я-то думал, что ты будешь рад увидеть своего старого друга.
31. И вдруг он почувствовал себя бессильным, словно его кости вдруг стали мягкими.

32. Мое предложение было, чтобы он приехал и погостил у меня несколько дней, чтобы осмотреться перед тем, как он найдет какой-нибудь подходящий дом.
33. Как жаль, что ты не видел письма. Оно бы тебе все объяснило.
34. Я настаиваю, чтобы мы остались здесь.
35. Его отец решил, что он должен изучать юриспруденцию.
36. Пора бы вам его будить.
37. Они влюбились друг в друга и поженились бы тотчас же, если бы она была свободна.
38. Людям со слабым сердцем рекомендуется принимать эти пилюли два раза в день.
39. Как жаль, что я не знала, что тебе нужна эта книга. Я бы могла купить ее в Лондоне.
40. Будь осторожен с ключом. Если ты вдруг потеряешь его, мы никогда не откроем сейф.
41. Мне предложили написать рецензию на эту книгу.
42. У моего мужа было намерение, чтобы мы поселились в Брайтоне.
43. Я спрятала газету под диванную подушку, чтобы Макс не увидел ее.
44. Если бы не его улыбка, я ничего не заподозрила бы.

Ex. 42. Discuss the two points expressing view using as many various forms of unreality as possible and say what would have happened if things had gone another way:

One Day — Two Points of View

Kathy: Mum is knocking loudly on my bedroom door. "Kathy, get up! It's seven o'clock." Why does Mum always sound so bad-tempered and unfriendly? I'll just stay in bed another five minutes. "Kathy, it's a quarter past seven. You'll be late for school. Hurry up." Oh dear, I've overslept, as usual. I'd better get up now. I hate Monday mornings. Where's my school blouse? There it is - but it's dirty. Mum has forgotten to wash it. I haven't time for any breakfast. If I run all the way I'll catch the bus to school. Mum is waiting in the kitchen. I wish she wouldn't worry about me. I'm not a little girl anymore. "Do have a piece of toast," Mum says. "I'm not hungry, Mum." I run out of the house and slam the

front door. The first lesson is awful. It's a geography test and I can't do it. The teacher tells the whole class that I'm lazy and that I could do much better. School dinner is awful, too. I hope there's something nice for tea. I feel very hungry. I get home at half past four and Mum is getting the tea ready. "What's for tea?" Mum says that it's fish and chips. Honestly, Mum knows that I don't like fish. Then, Mum starts to ask me stupid questions, "Did you have a nice day at school, dear?" I say that it was O.K. Mum notices I'm not eating much. "I do wish you would eat something, Kathy. You didn't have any breakfast, either." Mum is always nagging me about something.

Roger, my brother, reaches in front of me for the sugar-bowl and I spill my cup of tea all over the carpet. It's Roger's fault but Mum loses her temper with me. "Kathy, you are clumsy. That's gone all over my new carpet. Run and fetch a cloth." It's really not fair. I jump up and shout, "You are always nagging me. You're never nice to me. Leave me alone." Then I run upstairs to my bedroom and play my records very loudly.

Her mother: The alarm clock rings. It's a quarter past six. I get up, put on my dressing-gown and go down to the kitchen. Then I start cooking breakfast. Father always likes bacon and eggs. Father shouts, "I can't find my black socks or my blue pullover." I help Father find his socks and then I make the bed. It's seven o'clock — time to wake Kathy. There's no reply when I knock on her door. She came home very late last night and now she's tired. I make some coffee and toast for Kathy's breakfast. Then I get dressed. At a quarter past seven I have to call her again. She's a lazy girl. She's certainly not going out tonight. Kathy comes downstairs. She looks untidy and bad-tempered. I wish Kathy would have some breakfast. Growing girls need to eat. However, Kathy says she isn't hungry and she runs out of the house before I can say anything else. I throw away the cold toast and coffee and wash up. Then I catch a bus to work. I arrive at the office ten minutes late, and my boss is in a bad mood all day. After work I do some quick shopping in the supermarket. Kathy is always fussy about her food but there's no time to look for something special. I get home and make the tea. Kathy comes in from school. She looks miserable. I do wish she would talk to me more so I ask her about school. "Did you have a nice day at school,

dear?" Kathy doesn't say much and she doesn't eat her tea. I feel very anxious. "I do wish you would eat something, Kathy. You didn't have any breakfast, either." Then Kathy spills her tea all over my new carpet. She doesn't apologize. This makes me very angry and I lose my temper. Kathy is very upset and says that I'm always nagging her. She runs out of the room. Perhaps Kathy is right. I do nag her too much.

THE VERB

VERBALS

Ex. 1. Choose between the infinitive and the *ing*-form to use it as subject in the following sentences:

1. I did it because ... on living in the country would have been too much of a problem. (*to go*)
2. There was no ... how his father would react to the news. (*to tell*)
3. You know, her ... cleverer than her husband was half the trouble. (*to be*)
4. Not .. home, in fact, seemed lately to become the pattern of his life. (*to go*)
5. I belonged to neither groups, and ... was to take sides. (*to speak*)
6. There is no ... how long he would have continued on the subject if his attention had not been distracted by a man who appeared on the deck. (*to know*)
7. ... her upset would have been an understatement, she was beside herself with anger. (*to call*)
8. There was no ... the sound. (*to mistake*)
9. We were in the offices, and ... to his room meant going right through the place. (*to get*)
10. Just ... silent together like that helps. (*to be*)
11. Just ... my trouble would have been in bad taste. (*to mention*)
12. Let us admit that ... with us is the thing that we cannot do without. (*to read*)
13. ... away for a weekend demanded a degree of will and organization. (*to get*)
14. She felt exhilarated, there was no ... it. (*to deny*)
15. Though it was fine, ... outside at a small table, eating, was not a tempting prospect. (*to sit*)

Ex. 2. Point out the words indicating the doer of the actions expressed by the infinitives and *ing*-forms used as subject in the following sentences:

1. Your *coming* has done him good.
2. *To understand* all is to forgive all.
3. For a woman, *being needed* is everything in life.

4. I have no idea what we ordered, but *ordering* gave me time to work out my next move.
5. *Not having* a newspaper in his hands made the long ride much more boring.
6. For Tom *to win* was going to be a difficult thing.
7. *Losing* his twin sister at the age of fourteen probably affected him for life.
8. *To know* him was one of the two greatest gifts of my life.
9. *Not telling* my sister about it hurts me.
10. *Keeping* off the subject proved too great a strain for Winifred herself.
11. *Making* a literary reputation has never been easy.
12. *Seeing* him makes me glad I left the army.

Ex. 3. Choose between the infinitive and the *ing*-form to use it as predicative in the following sentences.

Note: Point out the instances when the particle *to* can be omitted before the infinitive.

1. "My job is ... everyone alike, and be courteous, even when passengers are not," said the stewardess. (*to treat*)
2. But the difficulty was ... an excuse for absence from home. (*to find*)
3. The place was cheerful and he felt relaxed. It was like ... warm in bed. (*to be*)
4. My idea was ... a fuller explanation of what they plan to discuss. (*to demand*)
5. All you can do is (*to obey*)
6. His request meant ... further than I was prepared to go. (*to go*)
7. The only thing to do was ... who she was. (*to explain*)
8. He didn't know what to talk to him about. It was like ... an unknown brother. (*to meet*)
9. All he wanted to do was ... and (*to sit, to dream*)
10. To love John was like ... alive. (*to burn*)
11. The first objective was ... ourselves a suitable house to live in. (*to find*)
12. "To say that you are a fool is ... it very mildly," said Douglas. (*to put*)
13. All I wanted to do was ... the formalities short. (*to cut*)
14. The loss of his job meant ... poor again. (*to be*)

15. The best thing for you to do is ... the thought of her out of your mind. (*to put*)
16. One of the first things he did was ... his brother. (*to telephone*)

Ex. 4. Point out the words indicating the doer of the action expressed by the infinitives and the *ing*-forms used as predicatives in the following sentences:

1. The last thing I want is for him *to think* I'm deceiving him.
2. The really important thing was *saving* the children.
3. Unable to understand the text, he did the next best thing which was *to learn* it by heart.
4. To cross the stream in the place meant *walking* knee-deep in the water.
5. She thought that the straightforward method was *to write* a couple of lines to the man himself.
6. To discuss the international situation with them was like someone *playing* the piano only with the family to listen to him.
7. All he wanted at this moment was for everyone *to disperse* quietly.
8. The only service you can do him is *to keep* quiet.
9. All he wanted was for me *to get* out of his sight.
10. My job is *to please* my guests.
11. The least I can do is *give* them a chance.
12. All they wanted to do was *get* down to business.

Ex. 5. Choose between the infinitive and the *ing*-form as part of a compound verbal predicate in the following sentences:

1. I seem ... my life saying good-bye. (*to spend*)
2. I left the clothes lying wherever they happened (*to fall*)
3. She waited while Johnson went round ... hands with everybody. (*to shake*)
4. When they chanced ... she always gave him a friendly smile. (*to meet*)
5. As I stood ... on the corner of the street, Gerald Sutton came by. (*to wait*)
6. Caro sat ... the side of her glass. (*to stroke*)
7. I happened ... into her in the library. (*to run*)
8. Then a cricket ball came ... through the window and rolled underneath the piano. (*to smash*)
9. The print seemed ... before his eyes. (*to blur*)

10. I find plenty to do. I have a very nice neighbour. We go ... and ... together. (*to fish, to sail*)
11. Tom never seemed ... his mother to know what he had been doing. (*to want*)
12. I woke abruptly from sleep and sat up (*to listen*)
13. Martha was out ... her friend. (*to meet*)
14. He doesn't seem ... what love means. (*to know*)
15. Dick considered her suggestion and appeared ... it acceptable. (*to find*)
16. Her office turned out ... in one of the back streets. (*to be*)
17. So I sat ... at the diary, as at a blank space in a crossword puzzle. (*to stare*)
18. Jimmy proved ... a good teacher. (*to be*)
19. "So what?" she eyed me curiously. There seemed ... a faint foreign accent in her voice. (*to be*)
20. I sat ... from time to time that he would just go away. (*to wish*)

Ex. 6. Use the required form of the infinitive in its function of part of a compound verbal predicate:

1. He seemed ... all the friendliness he had shown at our previous meeting. (*to lose*)
2. "I happen ... her lawyer and she telephoned to me," I said to the man. (*to be*)
3. It became clear that Charles was still idle. He seemed ... scarcely any law. (*to read*)
4. The cat seems ... missing for about three weeks. (*to be*)
5. He appeared ... that they had had the first serious difference of opinion in the whole of their married life. (*to forget*)
6. "Dr Salt, what do you think you're doing?" "People seem ... me that for days," said Dr Salt mildly. (*to ask*)
7. Not going home, in fact, seemed lately ... the pattern of his life. (*to become*)
8. My mother thought that his hobbies would get him nowhere. In this she turned out ... wrong. (*to be*)
9. It seemed ... in the room. The floor, the chairs, the desk were covered in drifts of white. It was torn paper. (*to snow*)
10. She leant far over the banister and strained her ears. All the family seemed ... at once. (*to talk*)
11. The general seemed ... a great deal. (*to age*)

12. Charles met me the first day I came to London, and our friendship seemed ... a long time. (*to establish*)
13. He did not even seem ... what the fuss was about. (*to understand*)
14. In front of one window there was a small table and Harry was sitting at it, peering at a pile of papers which he seemed ... or (*to copy, to translate*)
15. When I arrived there I didn't see the dog. Not much else seemed (*to change*)
16. Then I caught sight of her on the far side of the square. She seemed ... good-bye to someone. (*to say*)

Ex. 7. Translate the following into English using infinitives as part of a compound verbal predicate:

1. Это оказалось правдой. (*to turn out*)
2. Он, кажется, получил все, что хотел. (*to seem*)
3. «Где мисс Стоун?» — «Она, кажется, работает в справочном отделе библиотеки». (*to seem*)
4. Казалось, что у него нет дружеских отношений ни с кем в отделе. (*to appear*)
5. Боб взглянул на мать, чтобы понять, как она реагирует на разговор. Но она, казалось, не слушала. (*to seem*)
6. Его сведения оказались правильными. (*to turn out*)
7. Казалось, что она пишет или рисует. (*to seem*)
8. Казалось, что сплетни эти не были восприняты моими братьями всерьез. (*to seem*)
9. Он, кажется, мой единственный друг. (*to seem*)
10. Мой отец слушал серьезно или, по крайней мере, создавалось впечатление, что он слушал. (*to appear*)
11. У нас, кажется, уже был этот разговор раньше. (*to seem*)
12. Похоже, никто из вас не знает, как вести себя прилично. (*to seem*)
13. Казалось, что его удивил этот слух. (*to seem*)
14. Было такое впечатление, что он не слышал, что она сказала. (*to appear*)
15. Я не знал этого парня, но он, кажется, всем тогда нравился. (*to seem*)
16. Случилось так, что он был приглашен на обед к Роджеру. (*to happen*)
17. Так случилось, что я первый узнал об этом. (*to happen*)

18. Энн познакомилась со своим молодым человеком на танцах, и позже они много развлекались вместе, потому что он оказался хорошим парнем. (*to prove*)

Ex. 8. Translate the following into English using *ing*-forms as part of a compound verbal predicate:

1. Он ездил верхом каждый день.
2. Она сидела, уставившись прямо перед собой.
3. Он вернулся с очень расстроенным видом.
4. Вокруг сидело несколько человек, они ели сэндвичи и курили.
5. Я сказала мужу, что мне хочется пойти потанцевать.
6. Она долго лежала и плакала.
7. В то утро мальчик отправился кататься на лодке один.
8. Я ничего не сказал, и мальчик ушел, насвистывая.
9. Мы стояли и ждали, когда откроются двери.
10. В то утро я пошел купаться.
11. Она ушла в магазин.
12. При первом же порыве ветра шляпа ее мужа полетела по воздуху.
13. Они сидели и разговаривали о планах на будущее.

Ex. 9. Choose between the infinitive and the *ing*-form as a second action accompanying the action of the predicate verb:

1. I returned to my room one afternoon ... Rex waiting for me. (*to find*)
2. That evening they sat on the back porch, ... the twilight filter down through the leaves of the trees. (*to watch*)
3. I looked at her for a minute, not (*to understand*)
4. Michael went home ... that his little son was taken ill. (*to hear*)
5. And so I spent three years ... an immense amount of very dull stuff, not one-tenth of which I ever used. (*to learn*)
6. She was approaching slowly, ... her feet. (*to drag*)
7. He arrived on the door step ... Peter fumbling with the lock, and they entered together. (*to find*)
8. I spent the rest of the day ... whether I was annoyed or not. (*to wonder*)
9. They went off, ... us to face the situation. (*to leave*)

10. ... to Sam talking of his sister, I thought of Ellen alone in her flat in the same town. (*to listen*)
11. I came home one evening ... him sitting on the stairs outside the front door of the flat. (*to discover*)
12. He must have had a jolly time at lunch ... there ignored. (*to sit*)
13. My father was out and returned ... me in a condition of feverish anxiety. (*to find*)
14. Next morning, ... me in the hall, she told me that she was too tired to go out. (*to meet*)
15. He relapsed into sullenness, ... that he was too busy. (*to say*)
16. Sam spent some of his money ... her a present for her looking after his mother. (*to buy*)
17. ... out of the house, Cliff practically walked into me. (*to come*)
18. The French teacher sat at her desk ... papers when Rudy led his father into the classroom. (*to correct*)
19. The snow turned into a cold rain. He awakened many times ... it falling on his face. (*to feel*)
20. They had difficulty ... new clothes for her. (*to find*)
21. We sat down out there, not quite ... what to do next. (*to know*)
22. As she talked to me, she took me by the arm, ... towards the door. (*to walk*)
23. She reached her house that night ... her manager waiting for her. (*to find*)
24. I spent hours ... the pros and cons of either course of action. (*to balance*)
25. We wouldn't have much trouble ... it. (*to prove*)

Ex. 10. Translate the following into English using *ing*-forms to express second actions accompanying the action of the predicate verb:

1. Я посидел там немного, просто наблюдая людей.
2. Они оба остановились, прислушиваясь к голосам на лестнице.
3. О, Берт, я никогда не думала, что буду заканчивать свою жизнь, заворачивая какие-то старинные предметы в оберточную бумагу.
4. Бернард был еще в Шотландии, где он гостил у родственников.
5. Джек покачал головой, выражая свое несогласие.
6. Я лежал в постели и думал об этом весь день.

7. Какой-то человек вышел из дома. Он нес гитару.
8. Динни наверху. Она читает моему сыну.
9. Минуту мы стояли не двигаясь, не в состоянии понять, что происходит.
10. Он смотрел на подарок, не веря своим глазам.
11. Он сидел у камина, пытаясь читать вечернюю газету.
12. Он стоял на верхней площадке лестницы и наблюдал, как его жена разбирает письма.
13. Он ходил по дому, тихо улыбаясь.
14. Он был в классе один и проверял тетради.
15. Ты был бы счастлив, живя со мною в деревне.

Ex. 11. Translate the following into English using *ing*-forms to denote a second action after *to spend (to waste) time, to have a good (hard, etc.) time* and *to have difficulty (trouble)*:

1. Она провела весенние каникулы, катаясь на лыжах с родителями.
2. Она без труда найдет для тебя работу в Голливуде.
3. Когда я пришла домой, я целый час убирала комнату.
4. Она обычно проводила утро, загорая на пляже.
5. Большую часть своего времени они проводили, читая или слушая музыку.
6. Им трудно жилось в Дублине.
7. Мне было трудно вспомнить имя этого человека.
8. Мы с трудом нашли такси ночью.
9. Не теряя ни минуты, он поехал в Лондон.
10. Мы очень весело потанцевали.
11. Она с трудом заставила ребенка съесть завтрак.
12. Я потерял два часа, ожидая тебя на станции.
13. Ей было скучно присматривать за теткой.
14. Я не хочу надоедать тебе своими рассказами весь вечер.
15. В молодости я потерял очень много времени, читая книги, которые не принесли мне большой пользы.
16. Все свое свободное время я читал и писал.

Ex. 12. Choose between the infinitive and the *ing*-form as direct object to the predicate verb:

1. I wished ... quite fair. (to be)
2. I expected ... him in the drawing-room but he wasn't there. (to find)

3. I enjoyed ... to her talk of Viennese society in the days of her youth. (*to listen*)
4. Reggie promised ... in. (*to look*)
5. I wanted ... him up. (*to cheer*)
6. Jerry was enjoying himself and did not want ... away. I suggested... him and ... him meet us at the station. (*to come, to leave, to let*)
7. Everything you've planned ... is sensible. (*to do*)
8. Riley offered ... into town and ... some coffee. (*to drive, to get*)
9. He longs ... down and ... a quiet country life. (*to settle, to live*)
10. Kate avoided ... John alone. (*to see*)
11. You keep ... things in Latin and you know I can't understand. (*to say*)
12. He proceeded ... this by his own story. (*to illustrate*)
13. Her eyes were full and bright. She did not pretend ... her nervousness. (*to hide*)
14. Jack asked the stewardess for some stationery and, when it came, set about ... a letter to his son. (*to compose*)
15. Renny was often dead right, more often than I cared (*to remember*)
16. He sat there sullenly and refused (*to answer*)
17. I didn't mind ... about them a bit. (*to think*)
18. He had just finished ... up a suitcase. (*to strap*)
19. He did not hesitate ... such methods. (*to employ*)
20. We arranged (*to meet*)
21. He stopped ... and went into the bathroom to turn the water on for the bath. (*to whistle*)
22. His sister-in-law certainly needed ... after. (*to look*)
23. As I grew ... him I began ... him. (*to know, to like*)
24. We can't afford ... you. (*to waste*)
25. I can't help ... Sophy. (*to like*)
26. Arthur had managed ... it his way. (*to do*)
27. I couldn't resist ... such a lovely hat. (*to buy*)
28. She says she can't imagine not ... his key in the lock. (*to hear*)
29. I hadn't understood why, the previous summer, he had given up Roger. (*to attempt, to see*)
30. I notice that you took the trouble ... your picture into all the papers. (*to get*)
31. I have been meaning ... you about it. (*to ask*)
32. Then he condescended ... himself. (*to explain*)

33. He denied ... anything about the missing document. (*to know*)
34. Last week you mentioned ... us a different reading book. We're nearly finished ... this one. (*to get, to read*)
35. You certainly mustn't miss ... this wonderful film. (*to see*)
36. Mary tended ... upset by her failures. (*to be*)
37. Tears filled her eyes and ran down her cheeks. She did not trouble ... them away. (*to wipe*)
38. He is considering ... a book about his war experience. (*to write*)
39. She put off ... the news to her father. (*to break*)
40. Looking back on it, I think it would have been better, for all concerned, if we had never attempted (*to interfere*)
41. He got out of bed and prepared (*to shave*)
42. I wondered if you felt like ... out for a dance? (*to come*)
43. He had made up his mind ... in Dick. (*to confide*)
44. I considered ... the ceiling blue. (*to paint*)
45. He asked... the cheque, and it was produced. (*to see*)
46. She couldn't go on ... alone in that great house. (*to live*)
47. I've got a fifty-percent chance of doing what I set out (*to do*)

Ex. 13. Choose between the infinitive and the *ing*-form as direct object after verbs that admit of both forms:

1. She tried ... an interest in my work. (*to take*)
2. To learn to write I tried ... words or the order in which they were set. (*to alter*)
3. Why didn't you try ... yourself a job? (*to find*)
4. She tried ..., but her fingers were numb. (*to knit*)
5. Margaret and I were upset and the others went on ... us up. (*to try, to cheer*)
6. The article went on ... that Miss MacLean was born in Dublin and still had relations living there. (*to say*)
7. He went on ... about his children. (*to talk*)
8. He proposed ... to the theatre that night, but Elisa said she was tired. (*to go*)
9. I propose ... a boat with the money. (*to buy*)
10. In the following pages I propose ... the story of Goethe's life. (*to tell*)
11. One of them proposed ... out later on to watch the children dancing. (*to go*)
12. I must remember ... the others not to mention it to Willy. (*to tell*)

13. Yes, I remember ... the letter on the mantelpiece. (*to see*)
14. I remember ... for a drive by a kind lady who wanted to show me round. (*to take*)
15. I must remember ... through my pockets. (*to look*)
16. I remember ... to hear endless incidents from my mother's childhood. (*to have*)
17. I must remember not ..., he thought, and must lose some weight. I look like a fat grocer. (*to slouch*)
18. The general never forgot ... his boys out for a drive one Sunday day in June. (*to take*)
19. Don't forget ... the door when you decide to go to bed. (*to lock*)
20. I now regretted not ... with her, but it was too late to run after her. (*to go*)
21. I regret ... you but you ought to know the facts. (*to disappoint*)
22. I think he was beginning ... it. (*to doubt*)
23. She could not begin (*to unpack*)
24. Harriet cleared her throat and began ... her pockets for cigarettes. (*to search*)
25. He began ... the draft of a new plan that afternoon, just to see how it looks. (*to write*)
26. Without waiting for his reply she began ... the plums. (*to gather*)
27. Meanwhile he never ceased ... at his art. (*to work*)
28. I have now eaten turtle soup so often that I have ceased ... upon it as a luxury. (*to look*)
29. Margaret continued ... his wife in hospital. (*to visit*)
30. He continued ... the tune. (*to hum*)
31. I liked ... with the dog. (*to play*)
32. I liked ... lodgings of my own, where I could be by myself. (*to have*)
33. He liked ... up late into the night smoking his pipe and drinking a glass of whiskey. (*to sit*)
34. She asked him whether he hated ... as much as she did. (*to fly*)
35. I hated ... of her wishes being forced in any way. (*to think*)
36. She hates ... for television. (*to work*)
37. I hate ... it, but I think I can understand her Daddy. (*to admit*)
38. Outside, the church bells started (*to ring*)
39. He started ... back to the hotel. (*to walk*)
40. It's started (*to rain*)

Ex. 14. Translate the following into English using infinitives or *ing*-forms as direct object:

1. Она стала плакать. (*to begin*)
2. Я захотел что-нибудь узнать о нем. (*to want*)
3. Он совсем проснулся и хотел почитать, но единственной книгой в комнате была Библия. (*to feel like*)
4. Поль не нуждается в защите. (*to need*)
5. Он любил находиться в обществе своих родственников. (*to like*)
6. Он непрерывно поглядывал на часы и, выпив чай, сказал, что должен возвращаться. (*to keep*)
7. Теперь я начинал понимать кое-что. (*to begin*)
8. Вскоре я перестал быть полезным им. (*to cease*)
9. Дэн не мог удержаться от того, чтобы не показать свою работу. (*to resist*)
10. Даже в затемненной комнате я не мог не видеть, что лицо миссис Джоунз распухло от слез. (*cannot help*)
11. Все то январское утро телефон настойчиво звонил в моем кабинете. (*to keep*)
12. Я предложил найти доктора и привести его к Эду. (*to propose*)
13. Я не думаю, чтобы он упоминал о том, что навещал их. (*to mention*)
14. Они забыли пригласить меня. (*to forget*)
15. Я никогда не забуду, как я гостил в вашем доме в Кенте. (*to forget*)
16. Я пытаюсь читать. (*to try*)
17. Мне не хотелось оставлять его одного в горе, и я предложил отвезти его к себе домой. (*to want, to offer*)
18. Я отложил письмо к нему на завтра. (*to put off*)
19. Я не мог вынести, чтобы ко мне относились так холодно. (*to endure*)
20. Она не возражала против того, чтобы быть одной в коттедже. (*to mind*)
21. Я всерьез принялся писать короткие рассказы. (*to set about*)
22. Он был рад, что она позаботилась написать ему. (*to take the trouble*)
23. Ты помнишь, как ты привез виноградный сок в этот дом в то утро? (*to remember*)

24. Ты не забыл послать деньги в Лидс? (*to remember*)
25. Я решил не беспокоить Роджера этим делом. (*to decide*)
26. О, я думаю, вам понравится жить здесь, когда наступит лето. (*to enjoy*)
27. Он пробовал выращивать там картошку. (*to try*)
28. Я знал, что он старается накопить немного денег. (*to try*)
29. Мы не будем просить, чтобы вы взяли нас с собой. (*to ask*)
30. Я устал притворяться, что я пишу или читаю. (*to pretend*)
31. Мне не хотелось шутить. (*to feel like*)
32. Я отказываюсь взять на себя ответственность за твои действия. (*to refuse*)
33. Он старался избежать встречи с кем-нибудь, кого он знал. (*to avoid*)
34. Несмотря на дождь, мы продолжали ждать. (*to go on*)
35. В эти дни он не мог позволить себе опаздывать. (*cannot afford*)
36. Хью прочитал в одной американской газете рецензию на эту книгу и предложил купить ее для их библиотеки. (*to suggest*)
37. Когда я вернулся в дом, я не забыл стереть с лица дождь. (*to remember*)
38. Я помню, что как-то говорил тебе об этом, Льюис. (*to remember*)
39. Возможно, что Молли пожалела, что она так много болтала. (*to regret*)
40. Она все больше и больше боялась, что останется одна с детьми. (*to dread*)
41. Остальные, без суеты, согласились принять участие. (*to agree*)
42. Ее друзья обещали присылать ей работу. (*to promise*)
43. Она села у камина и приготовилась рассказывать свои новости. (*to prepare*)
44. Он продолжал упорно звонить в гостиницу, спрашивая, нет ли для него каких-либо сообщений. (*to keep*)
45. Вы хотите взглянуть на него? (*to care*)
46. Он не удостоил их ответом. (*to trouble*)
47. Утром он начал переносить вещи в комнату вниз. (*to start*)

Ex. 15. Use the required form of the infinitive or the *ing*-form in their function of direct object:

1. He enjoyed (*to need*)

2. Willy began ... softly. (*to whistle*)
3. In my experience most people mind ... at. (*to laugh*)
4. I don't suppose your wife wants ... with me now. (*to bother*)
5. I knew that Charles had regretted ... me. (*to invite*)
6. He pretended ... when his mother came into his room to look at him. (*to sleep*)
7. She didn't like ... with. (*to differ*)
8. He pretended not ... as if the compliment were purely formal. (*to hear*)
9. He prefers ... by the name of John Brown. (*to know*)
10. I don't like ... with. (*to interfere*)
11. I set about ... all the names from the diary. (*to erase*)
12. Bob asked ... to a room where he could wash and change his clothes. (*to show*)
13. I disliked ... Harry. (*to call*)
14. We stopped in front of the dance hall and pretended ... inside. (*to look*)
15. Maurice sat on the bench, with the picture on his knee, as though he would not risk ... from it. (*to part*)
16. I didn't want ... his feelings. (*to hurt*)
17. He said it was too late, and in any case he didn't like ... off. (*to see*)

Ex. 16. Choose between the infinitive and the *ing*-form to use it as direct object to an adjective:

1. Dick was clearly anxious ..., and I was rather hurt ... Clare apparently equally keen ... so. (*to go, to find, to do*)
2. Words have weight, sound and appearance; it is only by considering these that you can write a sentence that is good ... at and good ... to. (*to look, to listen*)
3. I was busy ... to figure out whether he had told me the truth. (*to try*)
4. His brother's emotion was not easy (*to discern*)
5. His proposition was worth (*to consider*)
6. Everyone in this room is competent ... an opinion. (*to express*)
7. The picture is definitely worth (*to buy*)
8. You see, a lot of us are prone ... it. (*to forget*)
9. The girl was very wise ... their advice. (*to take*)
10. He was busy ... on the new play. (*to work*)

11. I was fascinated ... the two of them together. (*to watch*)
12. Charles was slow ... what Mr March was feeling. (*to see*)
13. The little girl was busy ... out pages from the telephone directory. (*to tear*).
14. It must be admitted that this writer is not hard (*to imitate*)

Ex. 17. Translate the following into English using infinitives or *ing*-forms as direct objects to adjectives:

1. Работу все еще было трудно найти, и мне не очень везло первые несколько дней. (*hard*)
2. Ее нижняя губа задрожала, как будто она готова была рыдаться. (*ready*)
3. Ее улыбка быстро пропала. «Твой приход — чистое безумие». (*crazy*)
4. Мама была занята приготовлением обеда на кухне. (*busy*)
5. Он попрощался со мной за руку: «Мне жаль, что приходится уходить». (*sorry*)
6. Некоторое время я был очень доволен, что мог побыть один. (*content*)
7. Песню стоило записать на магнитофон. (*worth*)
8. Он быстро сообразил, что случилось. (*quick*)
9. За их спором было трудно следить. (*hard*)
10. Рано или поздно вы обязательно услышите об этом. (*certain*)
11. Он жил на те скромные деньги, которые его отец сумел отложить. (*able*)
12. Об этой новости стоило написать его отцу. (*worth*)
13. Он был очень доволен, что застал брата дома. (*delighted*)
14. В такой день что-нибудь неизбежно должно было случиться. (*sure*)
15. Я не был достаточно заинтересован в том, чтобы продолжать спор. (*interested*)
16. Вам повезло, что вы живете в таком красивом месте. (*lucky*)
17. Его жена была в Лондоне. Она занималась тем, что подыскивала новое жилье. (*busy*)
18. Вероятно, я этого не сделаю. (*likely*)
19. Таких результатов невозможно достичь. (*impossible*)
20. Я удивился, когда мне позвонил Чарльз. (*surprised*)
21. Я глубоко уважал ее и гордился знакомством с нею. (*proud*)
22. Я был волен уходить и приходить, когда хотел. (*free*)

23. Ожидалось, что его самолет вылетит в час. (*due*)
24. Я очень огорчился, найдя его таким больным. (*distressed*)
25. Этого человека легко было понять. (*easy*)
26. Я видел, что ему очень не хочется уходить. (*reluctant*)
27. Он был теперь полон решимости остаться там. (*determined*)
28. Дорис не так легко было принять это предложение. (*easy*)
29. Когда я прибыл, он был занят стрижкой газона. (*busy*)
30. Его коллекцию марок стоило посмотреть. (*worth*)

Ex. 18. Translate the following into English using *wh*-phrases:

1. Теперь он не знал, как провести день.
2. Я больше не знаю, кому верить.
3. Мы сидели несколько минут молча. Мы не знали, о чем разговаривать.
4. Я не знал, благодарить его снова или нет.
5. Он снял очки и тщетно искал, чем бы их протереть.
6. Я не мог решить, где его искать.
7. Он, казалось, не был уверен, по какой дороге идти.
8. Он научился ладить с такими людьми.
9. Осень не подходящее для путешествий время года.
10. У него осталось мало времени для сна.
11. Филипп не знал, уходить ему или оставаться.
12. Там было слишком много ножей, вилок и ложек, и он не знал, что с ними делать.
13. «Мужчины — странные существа, и нужно знать, как с ними обращаться», — сказала мне Энн.
14. Я просто не знал, что мне делать с братом.

Ex. 19. Supply the necessary prepositions for the *ing*-forms used as prepositional objects of verbs:

1. Jones insisted ... shaking hands.
2. I take all the blame ... not seeing further than my nose.
3. She glanced up ... marking a pile of papers, and said: "Hello, Hugh."
4. Unfortunately I haven't succeeded ... making much impression on you.
5. He made a point ... never sounding disappointed.
6. His mission had very little to do ... winning the war.
7. He had never had much difficulty ... getting jobs. The trouble had always been ... keeping them.

8. She thanked him ... taking her out.
9. He did not object ... seeing Francis.
10. If he persists ... marrying the girl, it will mean absolute ruin for him.
11. She took ... wearing jeans.
12. When asked what his father did in life, the boy answered, "My father works ... keeping the world ... having another war."
13. I shall look forward ... seeing your book.
14. I thought ... taking a trip up the Scandinavian coast.
15. Jack hesitated, then decided ... talking.
16. I told him that we were about to be turned out of our flat ... not paying the rent.
17. I hated him ... laughing with the others.
18. So when she compromised ... letting me talk her ... having at least some grape juice, I let it go at that.
19. He went back ... reading his paper.
20. Quite late, when he was on the point ... going upstairs, the door bell rang.
21. He put the note under a saucer on the table to keep it ... blowing away.

Ex. 20. Point out the doer of the action expressed by the *ing*-form used as prepositional object to a verb in the following sentences:

1. She had not succeeded in *making* her sister talk.
2. I do not blame him for *worrying*.
3. She felt sure that nothing good would result from Milly's *playing* around with Tom.
4. I like to think of this old house still *being* of use.
5. Beryl insisted on *being married* in London.
6. The doctor ordered wine and insisted on her *sharing* his bottle with him.
7. The critics accused him of *writing* down to the public.
8. Did she seem to object in any way to your *visiting* the house?

Ex. 21. Use the required form of the *ing*-form in its function of prepositional object to a verb in the following sentences:

1. He was just going to speak, when I caught sight of Ellen ... past us. (*to walk*)
2. I wondered if I ought to apologize for ... the letter. (*to write*)

3. I hate to think of you ... about. (*to order*)
4. My mother had always insisted on ... the weakest possible electric light bulbs. (*to use*)
5. I hated to think of her wishes ... in any way. (*to force*)
6. Now he often asked for tea at home and insisted on it ... correctly. (*to make*)
7. Meļ was still not sure why he had called up, but he felt better for ... so. (*to do*)
8. He muttered something about ... such a doll in a shop. (*to see*)
9. I've never heard of his ... with that family. (*to connect*)
10. Casie could never forgive her younger sister for ... from home and ... an affluent husband. (*to escape, to marry*)
11. I thought myself a fool for not ... it months before. (*to guess*)

Ex. 22. Translate the following into English using *ing*-forms as prepositional objects to verbs:

1. Он не возражал против того, чтобы там находились другие люди. (*to object*)
2. Я не виню тебя за то, что тебе так хочется уехать из города в такую погоду. (*to blame*)
3. Я не имел никакого отношения к тому, что он принял это решение. (*to have nothing to do*)
4. Тогда я начал подозревать, что он дразнит меня. (*to suspect*)
5. Нам было нетрудно хорошо относиться друг к другу. (*to have no difficulty*)
6. Он настоял на том, чтобы она научилась этой сложной игре. (*to insist*)
7. Ничего не могло помешать ему вернуться в Лондон. (*to prevent*)
8. Он извинился, что задержал меня. (*to apologize*)
9. Мне не удалось заставить Энн говорить. (*to succeed*)
10. Отец часто обвинял меня в том, что я отношусь к дому как к отелю. (*to accuse*)
11. Я сам не был уверен, что я чувствую в связи с тем, что Джек возвращается домой. (*to feel*)
12. Я сказал ему о том, что Фил хочет пойти с нами. (*to tell*)
13. У отеля она настояла на том, чтобы заплатить за такси. (*to insist*)
14. Дэн уговорил Белла остаться с ним завтракать. (*to talk*)
15. Доктор начал с того, что пощупал его пульс. (*to begin*)
16. На секунду я испугался, что он задумал подать в отставку. (*to think*)

17. Он настоял на том, чтобы Анну немедленно пригласили сюда.
(to insist)
18. Я не одобряю его за то, что он вообще влез в это дело. (to disapprove)
19. Я спросил его, как ему нравится быть врачом. (to feel about)
20. Как ты объяснил, что ты разбил машину? (to account)
21. Он упрекал себя за то, что не попытался поговорить с ней.
(to reproach)

Ex. 23. Supply the necessary prepositions for the *ing*-forms used as prepositional objects to adjectives in the following sentences:

1. The man of letters is accustomed ... writing.
2. I became aware of the specific benefit I was capable ... getting from travel.
3. Mrs Attley was very skilful ... directing the table talk away from her daughter.
4. Some people were nice ... turning me down.
5. I'm sick ... doing things for you.
6. You seem upset ... losing Jones.
7. She was set ... helping him.
8. I don't say I'm proud ... cheating him out of 300 dollars.
9. Your colleagues are good ... keeping a secret, aren't they?
10. He is usually fairly careful ... making his statements.
11. He is quite excited ... being among us again.
12. It was five minutes later than my usual bedtime and I felt guilty ... being still up.
13. She was quick ... finding out things.
14. Dolly seemed relieved ... not having to make a scene.
15. I tried to be as nice as possible ... refusing.
16. You seem very fond ... saying things behind my back.
17. But he was slow ... replying.
18. He selected a dingy little place where he felt sure ... not meeting any acquaintances.

Ex. 24. Point out the words indicating the doer of the action expressed by the *ing*-form used as prepositional object to an adjective in the following sentences:

1. He is incapable of *telling* a lie.
2. You remember how shocked he was at Meg *leaving* her husband.
3. My husband will be furious at me for *seeing* you.

4. After all, I'm fairly used to *keeping* my mouth shut.
5. He was jealous of his friend for *winning* Ann.
6. Eden said, "I'm sorry about the car *being* cold."
7. After half an hour he began to feel tired of *looking* at copies of agreements and bills.
8. He was impatient with me for *being* so stubborn.
9. It turned out that Maurice was wrong about there *being* no tourists in the hotel.
10. He suddenly became conscious of someone *standing* beside his desk.

Ex. 25. Use the required *ing*-form in its function of prepositional object to an adjective in the following sentences:

1. From the age of four, I had been used to ... with ideas. (*to live*)
2. I was not used to ... by a sensitive and nervous host. (*to entertain*)
3. How proud I was of ... the code. (*to invent*)
4. I was tired of always ... charity clothes. (*to wear*)
5. In the morning she was ashamed of herself for ... so rude the night before. (*to be*)
6. He's merely used to ... what he wants to know. (*to tell*)
7. He was grateful to Finch for ... him to come. (*to persuade*)
8. But they are used to ... with real men. (*to deal*)
9. She wasn't fond of (*to interview*)
10. At the time I was very keen on ... an independent income. (*to get*)

Ex. 26. Translate the following into English using *ing*-forms as prepositional objects to adjectives:

1. Ты явно умеешь держать язык за зубами. (*good*)
2. Я гордился тем, что оказался полезным ему. (*proud*)
3. Я знал, что он не способен принимать решения. (*capable*)
4. Доктор привык выслушивать самых разных людей. (*used*)
5. Мне жаль, что я причинил вам так много беспокойства. (*sorry*)
6. Я больше, чем ты, заинтересован в том, чтобы найти ее. (*interested*)
7. Я уверен, что ты вполне способен справиться с ситуацией. (*capable*)
8. Мне надоело делать то, что мне дается с трудом. (*tired*)

9. Я удивился, что он вообще женился. (*surprised*)
10. Я был немного разочарован тем, что не встретил Чарльза. (*disappointed*)
11. Она была благодарна ему за то, что он понял, что ей не хочется говорить о себе. (*grateful*)
12. Он был раздражен на нее за то, что она втянула его в эту ссору. (*annoyed*)
13. Он любил смеяться над теми, кто был робок. (*fond*)

Ex. 27. Choose between the infinitive and the *ing*-form to use it as object to a verb in sentences with a formal *it* as subject or object:

1. It came as a shock to me ... that he had left his wife. (*to realize*)
2. I laughed. It made me feel good ... that someone else felt the same way about it as I did. (*to know*)
3. It didn't serve any purpose ... why Marion had decided to be friends with me. (*to analyse*)
4. No one has any influence over him when it comes to ... his actions. (*to decide*)
5. It is against the law in the country ... a revolver. (*to carry*)
6. When it came to ... you talk about the war, I felt like a child. (*to hear*)
7. It amazed me ... that Pat not only understood his arguments but shared them. (*to feel*)
8. On the expedition it matters a lot ... young. (*to be*)
9. Our hostess made it a point never ... wives with their husbands. (*to ask*)
10. When it comes down to ... children do something against their will it pays ... rationally with them. (*to make, to argue*)

Ex. 28. Translate the following into English using infinitives or *ing* forms as objects to verbs in sentences with a formal *it* as subject:

1. Он очень устал, и ему потребовалось сделать усилие, чтобы выйти из машины. (*to take*)
2. Я не думаю, что ему доставляло удовольствие ссориться. (*to amuse*)
3. Сколько бы ей потребовалось времени, чтобы найти другую квартиру? (*to take*)

4. Когда мне было пора уходить, она попросила меня позвонить ей в тот же вечер. (*to be time*)
5. Мне было приятно думать, что он ничего не знает о моих планах. (*to please*)
6. Ветер был таким сильным, что ему понадобились четыре спички, чтобы зажечь сигарету. (*to take*)
7. Мэри раздражало, когда она слышала, как Вилли употребляет немецкое слово или фразу. (*to irritate*)
8. То, что Пэт опоздала, было неважно. (*to matter*)
9. Потребовалось немного времени, чтобы на кухне стало тепло. (*to take*)
10. Спустя некоторое время она сказала, что теперь его очередь объяснить, что он хочет делать. (*to be one's turn*)
11. Мне никогда не приходило в голову сравнивать эти две книги. (*to occur*)
12. Я получила большое удовольствие, читая это письмо. (*to delight*)
13. Ему было мучительно видеть, как ее тело сотрясается от рыданий. (*to torture*)
14. Может быть, вам было бы интересно посмотреть, что за человек этот Аллен. (*to be of interest*)
15. Мне доставило удовольствие писать эссе о его романах. (*to give pleasure*)
16. Меня привлекают поездки по незнакомым местам. (*to fascinate*)
17. Когда дело дошло до приготовления обеда, она расплакалась. (*to come down*)
18. Им не приходило в голову, сколько смелости ей потребовалось, чтобы задать этот вопрос. (*to take*)

Ex. 29. Choose between the infinitive and the *ing*-form as object to an adjective in sentences with a formal *it* as subject. Remember that the infinitive in this function is neutral in style whereas the *ing*-form is highly colloquial and often emotionally coloured:

1. It is not necessary, Steve, ... everything that comes to your mind. (*to say*)
2. Wouldn't it be prudent ... with the problem before it got talked about? (*to deal*)
3. It was impossible not ... a touch of pity for him. (*to feel*)
4. It was hard ... his age. (*to judge*)

5. It's absolutely monstrous ... Charles for a brother! (to have)
6. It is hard ... the difference between the two pictures. (to tell)
7. It was difficult ... on the beach. (to walk)
8. Well, it's nasty ... this mess up. (to clear)
9. The weather was shocking: it rained every day, and it was impossible even ... for boring walks. (to go)
10. I dare say it would have been more reasonable ... this proposal. (to decline)
11. It's slightly embarrassing ... under suspicion, isn't it? (to be)
12. It isn't easy ... all this. (to explain)
13. It seemed to me a little ungracious ... the invitation of that sort. (to decline)
14. Oh, dear, it's very difficult ... a good wife. (to be)
15. It will be great ... you with us for the summer. (to have)

Ex. 30. Translate the following into English using infinitives and ing-forms in their function of object to an adjective in sentences with a formal *it* as subject. Be careful, when necessary, to indicate in the proper way the doer of the action expressed by the verbals:

1. Ведь можно придерживаться разных взглядов по одному и тому же вопросу. (possible)
2. Приятно находиться вне помещения в такую погоду. (nice)
3. Было просто великолепно, что Барт был с нами. (wonderful)
4. В такой дождь трудно достать такси. (tough)
5. По-видимому, на этот домик стоило посмотреть. (worth)
6. Было довольно мило с его стороны поспешить домой, чтобы тут же без промедления рассказать ей все. (sweet)
7. Будет очень мило, если у моего сына будет приятель для игр его возраста. (nice)
8. В жаркий день очень приятно окунуться в холодную воду. (delightful)
9. С твоей стороны было мило сделать это так быстро. (nice)
10. Неестественно, чтобы молодой человек проводил все свои вечера дома. (natural)
11. Необходимо решить сегодня, приглашать ли его. (necessary)
12. Крайне досадно, что он исчез подобным образом. (annoying)
13. Было очень неприятно причинять боль старому человеку. (hateful)
14. Тогда я подумал, что будет глупо с моей стороны не извлечь из этого никакой пользы, если это возможно. (silly)

15. Не было ничего необычного в том, что праздничный обед закончился подобным образом. (*unusual*)
16. Если у вас есть дети, иногда имеет смысл состоять в школьном комитете. (*worth*)

Ex. 31. Translate the following into English using infinitives as objects to adjectives in sentences with a formal *it* as object:

1. Мне было трудно сосредоточиться все утро. (*to find — difficult*)
2. Тебе будет нелегко забыть этот случай. (*to find — hard*)
3. Мы считали, что ей лучше всего уехать и пожить немного в Лондоне. (*to think — best*)
4. Он решил, что очень хорошо спать в своей собственной кровати. (*to find — good*)
5. Он счел странным, что Том пришел. (*to think — odd*)
6. Ты хочешь, чтобы я помогла тебе уехать от нас, не так ли? (*to make — easy*)
7. Я счел возможным задать еще один вопрос. (*to think — possible*)
8. Он не счел необходимым сказать ему об этом. (*to think — necessary*)
9. Шум не позволил мне услышать, о чем они говорили. (*to make — impossible*)
10. Они все почувствовали, что со стороны Эни было неразумно уйти, не сказав ни слова. (*to feel — unreasonable*)
11. Я счел странным, что ты не захотел выпить со мной чаю. (*to think — odd*)
12. Заботливость тетки дала ей возможность привыкнуть к новому образу жизни. (*to make — possible*)
13. Я почувствовал, что было несколько неразумно продолжать разговор на ту же тему. (*to feel — unwise*)
14. Он не счел необходимым принимать какие-либо меры предосторожности. (*to feel — necessary*)
15. Мне было трудно забыть наш разговор. (*to find — hard*)
16. Я решил, что с ним нельзя быть откровенным. (*to find — impossible*)
17. Считете ли вы это удобным, если я зайду к вам в понедельник? (*to find — convenient*)
18. Мне трудно его понять. (*to find — hard*)
19. Грант счел за лучшее все отрицать. (*to think — best*)

20. Настроение Хью не позволило мне обратиться к нему с просьбой. (*to make — impossible*)

Ex. 32. Choose between the infinitive and the *ing*-form as subjective predicative:

1. He was left ... a couple of hours. (*to sleep*)
2. When the car was heard ... the people fled anywhere to avoid the police. (*to approach*)
3. He was understood ... the new teacher. (*to be*)
4. Her brother was reported ... alive in Europe. (*to be*)
5. I don't see how anyone can be expected ... a case like this. (*to tackle*)
6. His book was found ... a fine piece of writing. (*to be*)
7. In your story he is shown ... a lot for other people. (*to do*)
8. I was made ... at the gate. (*to stand*)
9. She may have found the note because she was seen ... through the book. (*to look*)
10. He has never been known ... his temper at rehearsals. (*to lose*)
11. I think you'd like to know, sir, that the train has been heard (*to whistle*)
12. People can feel satisfaction if they are made ... they are doing a useful service. (*to feel*)
13. When they were getting into the car he was heard ... good luck to the girl. (*to wish*)
14. From the hill a man could be seen ... half a mile away. (*to run*)
15. He was instructed ... for a special grant. (*to apply*)
16. It was a two-storey grey building with a porch that no one was meant ... on. (*to sit*)
17. The strong currents were thought ... bathing dangerous. (*to make*)
18. She was found ... herself by the fire. (*to warm*)
19. He was forced ... out of his present job. (*to get*)
20. She was understood as ... any interviews. (*to refuse*)
21. Renny was heard ... gaily in his room. (*to whistle*)
22. The game was intended ... time until about nine o'clock. (*to kill*)
23. She was heard ... the light on. (*to turn*)
24. He has been known ... his temper occasionally. (*to show*)
25. Meg was called upon ... her opinion. (*to express*)
26. Two constables were left ... his arrival. (*to await*)
27. He was found ... a well-read man. (*to be*)

28. His clothes were left ... wherever they happened to fall. (*to lie*)
29. "You were seen ... the ring." "I took it but I didn't steal it." (*to take*)
30. The car belonged to the firm, and I wasn't supposed ... it for my own pleasure. (*to use*)
31. The invitation was treated as ... a good sign. (*to be*)
32. He is in hospital. And his condition is reported as ... serious. (*to be*)

Ex. 33. Use the required form of the infinitive in its function of subjective predicative:

1. Monty was rumoured ... his wife. (*to divorce*)
2. People were asked ... which of the four courses they preferred. (*to indicate*)
3. "Do you know who made up the story?" "No, but it's said ... someone in the office." (*to be*)
4. We were alleged ... our official knowledge to make some money. (*to use*)
5. They went off, and I was left ... the situation. (*to face*)
6. They were understood (*to quarrel*)
7. "Have you seen anything of Roberta lately?" "She is supposed ... a book." (*to write*)
8. His death was supposed ... by the fire. (*to cause*)
9. No one seemed to know her whereabouts. She was thought ... with friends in the country. (*to stay*)
10. She was not expected ..., but she did. (*to reply*)

Ex. 34. Translate the following into English using infinitives or *ing*-forms as subjective predicatives:

1. Слышали, как посетитель в разговоре с моим отцом упомянул какой-то несчастный случай. (*to hear*)
2. Ему посоветовали не рассказывать им о своей жизни. (*to advise*)
3. Девочке велели разлить в чашки чай. (*to tell*)
4. Слышали, как несколько минут тому назад они спорили на террасе. (*to hear*)
5. «Я имел обыкновение украдкой уходить из дома вечером, — сказал он, — когда предполагалось, что я занимаюсь, в церковь, чтобы поиграть на органе». (*to suppose*)
6. Полагают, что он глубоко привязан к семье. (*to believe*)

7. Было известно, что он пишет книгу о войне. (*to know*)
8. Через окно можно было видеть, что водитель ждет у машины. (*to see*)
9. На этот раз меня попросили зайти к нему домой. (*to ask*)
10. Говорили, что он изменил свое решение. (*to report*)
11. Когда я позвонил в дверь, было слышно, как в холле лает собака. (*to hear*)
12. Было известно, что он никогда не отказывался принять пациента в любое время. (*to know*)
13. Ему разрешили оставить у них свою фамилию и адрес. (*to allow*)
14. Симон и Дик остались разговаривать в гостиной. (*to leave*)
15. Ей дали понять, что она должна выехать из этой квартиры. (*to make*)
16. Кое-кто полагал, что у него есть связи с лондонским отделением фирмы. (*to believe*)
17. Нас оставили посмотреть фильм. (*to leave*)
18. Его не видно целую неделю. Говорят, что он в отпуске. (*to say*)
19. Ему велели прийти сюда к мистеру Эбботу. (*to tell*)
20. Фокса нашли ожидающим нас на террасе. (*to find*)
21. Билла провели в гостиную и оставили там рассматривать картины. (*to leave*)
22. От нас не требуют, чтобы мы сказали, что для него хорошо, а что нет. (*to require*)
23. Его присутствие было неожиданным, потому что говорили, что он путешествует на Востоке. (*to say*)
24. Я подумал, что спички не оставляют лежать в саду просто так. (*to leave*)
25. Я был болен в то время, и миссис Барнаби оставили ухаживать за мной. (*to leave*)
26. Считалось, что она ушла от мужа. (*to believe*)

Ex. 35. Supply where necessary the particle *to* before the infinitive used as objective predicative:

1. He was making every effort to induce his father ... change his mind.
2. But I got him ... talk.
3. Nevertheless, on those mornings he could not bring himself ... read the political correspondents' gossip columns.

4. I knew that he would never encourage his daughter ... marry a fortune.
5. As he answered her question, I noticed her ... look surprised.
6. I could feel the blood ... leave my face in a rush.
7. Understand once and for all, I won't have you ... say this sort of thing.
8. The doctor had expressly forbidden him ... talk.
9. He did not hear the car ... arrive.
10. He had never known his uncle ... express any sort of feeling.
11. I wasn't prepared to let him ... go out alone.
12. He was not only giving them the chance, he was pressing them ... do so.
13. I shall try to make the thing ... work.
14. They watched Esther ... return after a time.
15. He drew out a stiff, plain pocket-book I had often seen him ... use in meetings and began to write down numbers.

Ex. 36. Choose between the infinitive and the *ing*-form as objective predicative:

1. My will was weakened. I wanted someone ... on. (*to lean*)
2. We stood for a while watching a man ... an Alsatian puppy. (*to train*)
3. I can imagine people not ... him. (*to like*)
4. Although he was very tired he made himself ... up and ... into the bedroom. (*to stand, to move*)
5. He ordered a bottle of beer and some cheese ... up to his room. (*to send*)
6. There was a lot of noise all around now, and amongst it you could hear a plane ... unusually low. (*to fly*)
7. I heard Arthur ... a slight noise which may have been a sigh or a chuckle. (*to make*)
8. "Why do you always have him ... around?" "He likes it." (*to hang*)
9. I don't like girls It takes away the fragrance of youth. (*to smoke*)
10. After supper Willy switched on the wireless and John left him ... round the drawing-room to the sound of Mozart's piano concerto in C minor. (*to dance*)
11. We left him ... the afternoon with his family. (*to spend*)
12. I can't imagine you ... anything but what you are. (*to be*)

13. I saw Mother ... at me. (*to look*)
14. I saw Mother ... at me and ... away. (*to look, to turn*)
15. Adeline found her husband ... in the middle of the room waiting for her. (*to stand*)
16. He found you ... pretty liberal about your children. (*to be*)
17. Now I was over-confident. I expected things ... my way. (*to go*)
18. He guessed her age ... about eighteen. (*to be*)
19. I caught her ... at me. (*to look*)
20. James proved himself ... a man of his word. (*to be*)
21. We left the others ... outside the house. (*to chat*)
22. I left him ... with the issue by himself. (*to deal*)
23. He explained his behaviour as ... to make up their quarrel. (*to try*)
24. If you go on talking like this you'll have me (*to cry*)
25. I found myself ... almost entirely on the grapes which the cook found it hard to spoil. (*to live*)
26. They always treated her as ... superior in every way. (*to be*)
27. "I've got a pupil ... at ten o'clock." "Can't you put him off?" (*to come*)
28. They watched me ... away, wiping my nose on my arm. (*to walk*)
29. He was content just to watch her (*to think*)
30. I watched him ... down the path toward the other men. (*to hurry*)
31. I watched him ... the hall. (*to leave*)
32. It was the only word I heard him ... that day. (*to say*)
33. He knew that for the moment they must not hear him ... in the night. (*to sob*)
34. Who was the man I saw you ... with yesterday? (*to chat*)
35. The whole village turned out to see them (*to leave*)
36. I saw him ... up, ... to another man and ... out. (*to get, to whisper, to stroll*)
37. Through the car window I saw Rose and Dick ... together. (*to walk*)
38. I stood there watching him ... down the street and ... round the corner. (*to walk, to turn*)
39. I didn't expect her ... specially concerned. (*to be*)
40. Everyone thought you ... away. (*to be*)
41. They did not want there ... any occasion when their presence might embarrass anyone. (*to be*)

Ex. 37. Choose the best suited way to denote the doer of the action expressed by the *ing*-form in its function of objective predicative:

1. I remember ... coming about Mary's arrival. (*the telegram*)
2. I thought that he was going to suggest ... assisting at another sitting. (*I*)
3. They noticed ... dancing with Ann. (*their cousin*)
4. He could imagine ... waiting for him. (*she*)
5. I found ... enjoying the talk. (*I*)
6. I hope you don't mind ... coming. (*I*)
7. We never had ... staying in this hotel. (*a writer*)
8. Do you think he wants to stop ... marrying? (*I*)
9. Just as habit kills love I should have thought habit would prevent ... arising. (*it*)
10. I can't see ... making much of a soldier. (*my nephew*)
11. The circumstances were grave enough to require ... remaining here. (*he*)
12. I remember ... going over to the US to marry there. (*your daughter*)
13. He hoped to delay ... going until he had come to some decision. (*I*)
14. As he set the carton down on the table he remembered ... saying: "You got here very fast. Thanks a lot." (*Mr Fox*)
15. I could not prevent ... deviating towards him. (*my glance*)
16. Mary thought, "You're jealous. You resent ... coming." (*I*)

Ex. 38. Use the required form of the infinitive or the *ing*-form in their function of objective predicative:

1. He had persuaded me ... with him to Vienna for a few days. (*to go*)
2. If he finds it necessary, the district attorney may require an inquest (*to hold*)
3. We did not suspect him ... to the place before. (*to be*)
4. Do you expect me ... it? (*to explain*)
5. I took this ... true. (*to be*)
6. I took the article ... by my brother. (*to write*)
7. I suspected him ... his mind. (*to change*)
8. He wished his position on the Board ... from the beginning. (*to establish*)
9. "Where were you?" "Did you expect me ... for you all this time?" (*to wait*)

10. When he arrived he found me ... Tom Jones. (*to read*)
11. He felt the money ... from his grasp. (*to take*)
12. I heard her more than once ... by her mother that she might play with me if she wished. (*to tell*)
13. I left him ... that he had talked them into it. (*to think*)
14. I don't want that man to see me ... up the stairs. (*to help*)
15. In London she bought a lipstick. I remember her ... the various shades on the back of her hand. (*to try*)
16. He was surprised to hear such words ... by an officer. (*to utter*)
17. Standing on the porch, she watched the luggage ... into the house. (*to carry*)

Ex. 39. Translate the following into English using infinitives or *ing*-forms as objective predicatives:

1. Он наблюдал, как люди торопились к поездам. (*to watch*)
2. Он зажег себе сигару и постарался расслабиться, как вдруг он услышал, что открывается входная дверь. (*to hear*)
3. Мне известно, что он приезжал к ним несколько раз в этом году. (*to know*)
4. Я считаю эту новость очень важной. (*to regard*)
5. Он нашел, что братья были очень знающими деловыми людьми. (*to find*)
6. Он нашел Фокса разговаривающим в кухне. (*to find*)
7. Я признателен моему отцу за то, что он прислал мне свою машину. (*to appreciate*)
8. Я оставил их, чтобы они все обговорили. (*to leave*)
9. Когда я уходил, они разговаривали о политике. (*to leave*)
10. Джон не мог заставить себя вернуться в Лондон. (*to bring oneself*)
11. Было легко представить себе сидящую молча Кэт. (*to imagine*)
12. Позже она услышала, как вверх по лестнице носили багаж. (*to hear*)
13. Я чувствовал, что пора позвать доктора. Я велел Дэну позвонить от моего имени. (*to get*)
14. «А где были монтеры?» — «Они меня ждали на крыльце». (*to get*)
15. Я помню, как он вслух читал свои стихи. (*to remember*)
16. Его жена была в душе. Он слышал, как течет вода. (*to hear*)

17. Он поднялся на холм и увидел, что машина ждет. (*to see*)
18. Я застал Кэт, когда она ела ранний ленч, перед тем как идти встречать Энн. (*to find*)
19. Он заставил меня пообещать навестить его. (*to make*)
20. Он заставил меня рассказать ему истории о моей семье. (*to get*)
21. Он не мог заставить себя прочесть рукопись. (*to bring oneself*)
22. Насколько я знаю, он никогда не терял вещи. (*to know*)
23. Затем он увидел, как Морис вошел в бар. (*to see*)
24. Он видел, что я рассматриваю фотографию. (*to see*)
25. Она попросила меня встретить ее на автобусной остановке. (*to ask*)
26. Твое письмо вынудило меня написать, что я чувствую. (*to force*)
27. Я посмотрел, как уехал второй автомобиль, и медленно пошел обратно в прохладный дом. (*to watch*)
28. Я увидел, что подходит мой автобус, и пошел, чтобы успеть сесть на него. (*to see*)
29. Именно я предложил, чтобы ты приехал сюда. (*to suggest*)
30. Джек удивился, почувствовав, что у него дрожат руки. (*to feel*)
31. Я ожидал, что отец встретит меня на станции. (*to expect*)
32. Она извинилась, что заставила нас ждать так долго. (*to keep*)
33. На следующий день я увидел его в пивной за кружкой пива читающим газету. (*to see*)
34. Я видел, как Терри дошел до угла. (*to see*)
35. Он видел, как Джон наливал себе чашку кофе. (*to see*)
36. Он видел, как Джон налил себе чашку кофе. (*to see*)
37. Артур увидел, что мы собираемся уходить. (*to see*)
38. Я не люблю, когда люди приходят в аэропорт провожать меня. (*to like*)
39. Джек нажал кнопку звонка и услышал, как он зазвонил. (*to hear*)
40. Из своего угла я слышал, как жена Фила объясняла, почему ее сын не получил стипендии. (*to hear*)
41. Наконец я услышал, как внизу подъехала его машина. (*to hear*)
42. Он слышал свое дыхание. (*to hear*)

43. Я слышал, как с шумом закрылась дверь, и обрадовался, что они ушли. (*to hear*)
44. Я услышал шаги в саду, которые приближались со стороны бассейна. (*to hear*)
45. Он сделал все возможное, чтобы заставить сына переменить свое решение. (*to make*)
46. Я проследил, чтобы она ушла, и затем вышел на улицу. (*to watch*)

Ex. 40. Supply the necessary prepositions for the following constructions in which the objective predicatives are expressed by infinitives and *ing*-forms:

1. We looked at the stamps while we waited ... Hudson to turn up.
2. He shouted ... them to come inshore when they ventured out too far into the sea.
3. They were trying to arrange ... the Prime Minister to interview him.
4. I sat up till one o'clock waiting ... Ted to ring up again, but he never did.
5. He took me to the party where he planned ... me to make a good impression.
6. The sentry looked ... the dark figure running desperately through the forest and took aim.
7. All four of us were waiting ... the point to come.
8. Every time I sat on the edge of his bed, to listen ... him talking or reading to me, I had to fight back my tears.
9. I'm absolutely relying ... you to tell me frankly.
10. He motioned ... the waiter to put the tray down.
11. Margaret listened ... her ski boots crunching in the packed snow as she walked up the hill.
12. It was not until a Saturday afternoon in May that Meg could arrange ... me to meet her elder sister.

Ex. 41. Translate the following into English using infinitives and *ing*-forms as prepositional objective predicatives:

1. Он ждал, когда я изложу свое дело. (*to wait*)
2. Я полагаюсь на то, что ты не будешь болтать. (*to rely*)
3. Она стояла, слушая, как Розмари ссорится со своим братом. (*to listen*)

4. Я слышал, как он кричал нам, чтобы мы остановились. (*to cry*)
5. Я остался в коридоре, дожидаясь, когда подойдет Чарльз. (*to wait*)
6. Спустя полчаса мне страстно захотелось, чтобы дети вернулись. (*to long*)
7. Пошли им, пожалуйста, телеграмму, чтобы они прислали мои вещи. (*to wire*)
8. Я вернулся к машине, где сел, ожидая, когда вернется Джордж. (*to wait*)
9. Я посмотрел на Джона, пьющего пиво, но он, казалось, не замечал меня. (*to look*)
10. Он кивнул Эндрю и жестом пригласил его сесть. (*to motion*)
11. Я посмотрел на свою мать, которая счастливо смеялась на шутки Тома. (*to look*)
12. Он ждал, когда она объяснит, почему она это сделала. (*to wait*)
13. Слушая, как Сэм рассказывает о своей сестре, я думал об Эллен. (*to listen*)
14. Я посмотрел на подъезжающий автобус и попрощался со своим спутником. (*to look*)
15. Мой дядя даже намекнул, что он, может быть, договорится, чтобы я провел день на ферме. (*to arrange*)

Ex. 42. Specify the kind of adverbial modifier that the infinitives express in the following sentences:

1. He took the advantage of this confusion *to escape* and ran up the stairs to the studio.
2. *To hear* him, one would think he was as poor as a church mouse.
3. He had no great difficulties at the time with his parents *to look* after him.
4. Jack moved a little, so as *to be* able to see beyond the group of young men.
5. These women have nothing to do but *talk*.
6. He rarely went out except *to take part* in the social life of the town.
7. We had to move in with my mother, with no place else *to live* in.
8. *To avoid* my mother's questions, I went up to my room.
9. The electrician had nothing to do but *attend* to his switches.

10. "I must be getting old," she said, *"to be talking* like that."
11. I brought my stamp-album for you *to have* a look at.
12. That night I couldn't help but *notice* how unhappy she was.
13. He built a fire and put a tin pot of water on *to boil*.
14. Soon you will have to stand on your own feet without your mother or me *to fuss* over you.
15. He took the picture down from the easel only *to put* it back against the wall.
16. You ought to know better than *to ask* questions like that.
17. You had only to look round *to find* a man to do the job.
18. He put his suitcase down and put his two hands to his face as if *to cool* it.
19. I've got more important things to do than *argue* with you.
20. How can she be content with you there *to nag* all the time?
21. Jack thought that a man who wrote music as well as that should know better than *to talk* like that.
22. He sneaked out of the house through the back door *so as not to explain* anything.
23. But I did not come here in order *to gain* anything.
24. With nothing else of interest *to do*, I decided to go travelling.
25. He ran his hand through his hair as though *to tidy* it.

Ex. 43. Specify what kind of adverbial modifier the *ing*-forms function:

1. I bumped into a man. Without *looking* up I apologized and proceeded on my way.
2. That morning my father said to me: "In *sending* you to this school, Henry, I'm making a sacrifice. I can't really afford it."
3. The girl hesitated, as though not quite *knowing* what to do.
4. A week later I returned from school and found the house empty, my mother *being* at the shops.
5. At about seven, he strolled about the garden, as if *looking* for something.
6. It must be swell to get anything you want just by *asking*, I thought.
7. The musicians had vanished without his *having seen* them go.
8. She was not entirely sure why it was so awful, even more awful than Hugh's *knowing* that she had returned without *telling* him.
9. On *returning* home from school I noticed a small jade statuette on our living-room shelf.

10. The cigarette burned down to my fingers and I threw it over the banister without *putting* it out.
11. The Cannings were taking an active part in the play. Penelope *contriving* new costumes at the lowest possible expense, Leo *building* a permanent set.
12. We strolled back to the camp, it *being* then about twenty minutes to six.
13. He had not, since *leaving*, written to her.
14. I took my temperature and, upon *finding* it was a hundred point four, went back to bed again.
15. I was to walk over to my grandmother's before *going* on home.
16. I showed my boredom by *refusing* to find any interest in the view.
17. That *being understood*, the conference was over.
18. They began to mount the path, Joseph *lighting* the way.
19. After *checking* into his room, he left the inn and arrived at the airport in time to go on duty.
20. She had many little things to do besides *sitting* idly in her house while *waiting* to be taken out by her boarder.
21. He hardly looked at her while *talking*.
22. "But the country is much better for you than *working* in the hot city all summer," said Mrs Cowan.
23. He had scarcely ever drunk tea at all until *knowing* Gwen.
24. When *laughing* she half closed her eyes and a dimple danced on her cheek.
25. Clare looked at him steadily before *answering*.
26. I couldn't stay in that place any more, not after *living* with them.
27. Though *knowing* what was there, he took the paper out and walked to the window to read.

Ex. 44. Supply the required conjunctions or prepositions for the *ing*-forms used as adverbial modifiers:

1. He sat alone with his head propped in his hands ... listening to music.
2. He hesitated ... seeing him, then strode on to meet him.
3. Again she told, and this time in detail, all she had been through with her daughter ... leaving home.
4. I never thought they would have left ... notifying me.
5. You can't escape it ... running away.

6. He hoped to get his boots ... anyone's seeing him.
7. I turned the car round ... stopping and came straight back.
8. I make the journey twice a day and usually pass the time ... falling into a light trance.
9. He poured milk into a jug from a carton in the refrigerator, then drank some milk himself ... putting the carton back.
10. ... swimming we lolled around on the beach and lay in the sun.
11. ... arriving in the apartment, I found out they were planning a little party for me.
12. They walked to the house ... speaking.
13. I left the dining-room ... paying my check, and went out into the lounge.
14. I thought that the telegram would be better ... trying to explain the situation over the 'phone.
15. It was his habit ... settling down at a table to layout at once his cigarette case and lighter.
16. He felt he could very well do ... seeing his parents-in-law again.
17. ... going to his chief's office, he looked through the messages on his desk.

Ex. 45. Translate the following into English using infinitives and *ing*-forms as adverbial modifiers to a verb:

1. Ожидая, когда официант вернется со льдом, Джек зажег сигарету.
2. Жена фермера приходила каждый день, чтобы убирать комнаты и готовить еду.
3. Она задумчиво посмотрела на меня, словно всерьез воспринимая то, что я сказал.
4. Он позвал Лолу назад, как будто для того, чтобы извиниться за что-то.
5. Он отказался привести себя в порядок перед тем, как идти пить чай.
6. Фил сунул деньги в карман, не сосчитав их.
7. Он начал с того, что вымел в коттедже.
8. Не дожидаясь его ответа, она стала собирать чашки.
9. Он ополоснул лицо и голову ледяной водой, словно для того чтобы охладить лихорадку.
10. Он утонул во время купания.
11. Прежде чем ответить, он зажег сигарету.
12. Посмотрев пьесу по телевидению, я сказал, что иду спать.

13. Он вернулся в отель и лег, даже не сняв ботинок.
14. Она не хотела оставаться наедине с мужем, чтобы не обсуждать с ним дел.
15. Эби не брился с самого прибытия в Париж.
16. Несколько минут мы шли, не говоря ни слова.
17. Затем он отвернулся, чтобы поговорить с кем-то внутри дома. При этом он убрал руку с двери.
18. Она повернулась, словно собираясь уходить.
19. Он встал, словно для того чтобы подойти к гостям.
20. По прибытии я был рад обнаружить, что я всех там знаю.
21. Он двигался очень медленно, как будто плыл.
22. Он делал все возможное, чтобы подружиться с нами.
23. Не дожидаясь разрешения, он зажег свет.
24. После купания мы выпили пива и поели сандвичей.
25. Он надеялся, что Филипп пришел, чтобы все объяснить.
26. Он секунду колебался, прежде чем пересечь мост.
27. Он слушал, не прерывая меня, кивая и иногда улыбаясь.

Ex. 46. Translate the following into English using infinitives as adverbial modifiers to an adjective:

1. Я был слишком возбужден, чтобы есть.
2. Мой сын был достаточно взрослым, чтобы заметить мое настроение.
3. Будь добр, закрой дверь.
4. Я сказал, что я слишком занят, чтобы разговаривать, и положил трубку.
5. Он был слишком ленив, чтобы относиться к своей профессии серьезно.
6. Всегда легко найти основание для того, чтобы ничего не делать.
7. Он так устал, что был не в состоянии раздеться.
8. Я был слишком робок, чтобы заговорить с девушкой или даже рассмотреть ее как следует.
9. Я уверен, что ты слишком молод, чтобы помнить.
10. В то время он недостаточно хорошо себя чувствовал, чтобы путешествовать.
11. Свет был недостаточно сильным, чтобы я мог видеть выражение его лица.
12. Майкл был слишком раздражен, чтобы ответить сразу же.
13. Было слишком темно, чтобы он мог видеть мое лицо.

Ex. 47. Choose between the infinitive and the *ing*-form as an attribute.

1. He had errands ... first. (*to do*)
2. There was a shrivelled potato ... on the ground. I picked it up. (*to lie*)
3. Alec was not at all an easy man ... presents to. (*to give*)
4. You remember I told you I'd something ... you? (*to tell*)
5. I wondered if he was trying to break some news ... me. (*to affect*)
6. I expect there'll be a lot ... up with. (*to put*)
7. They were used to having a ... man to spend a night or two at their inn. (*to travel*)
8. He took a last look at his calmly ... friend. (*to sleep*)
9. I guessed that I had disadvantages (*to overcome*)
10. John had nothing more ... him. (*to show*)
11. It's very good for them to have an older man with plenty of experience ... to for advice. (*to come*)
12. When I reached the bridge there was a swan ... downstream on the wide river. (*to drift*)
13. He's been used to comfort and to having someone ... after him. (*to look*)
14. The slowly ... circle of light from the torch revealed a short flight of steps. (*to move*)
15. I met your friend Ann Simon ... by Lewis. (*to escort*)
16. George was a tempting person ... about. (*to gossip*)
17. There was little in the forest ... to the romantic. (*to appeal*)
18. Mr Brady, there is someone ... to look after you. (*to come*)
19. He gave her an ... look. (*to admire*)
20. I just want something ..., something ... myself busy. (*to do, to keep*)
21. On the other hand, it would be a quite interesting game (*to try*)
22. The lights in the house were out, but a ... moon gleamed against one window. (*to rise*)
23. They reached a hotel ... Central Park. (*to overlook*)
24. The proper place ... at the house from was the lawn. (*to look*)
25. I particularly wanted to see John for a minute but there were patients ... to see him. (*to wait*)
26. She was much given to ... fits. (*to cry*)
27. Jack hurried past the customs, and out on the wet tarmac toward the ... plane. (*to wait*)

28. There was nothing (to do)
29. Freddy rose and raised an arm in a ... way. (to welcome)
30. Alayne was the first to hear the ... car. (to approach)
31. He raised himself to a ... position, supporting himself with one hand. (to sit)
32. She was a startling woman ... at. (to look)

Ex. 48. Translate the following into English using infinitives and *ing*-forms as attributes:

1. У меня есть кое-что, что я должен тебе показать.
2. В вагоне был только один старик, который читал газету.
3. Ему предстояло трудное дело, с которым ему надо было справиться.
4. У нее был брат, с которым всегда можно было играть, ссориться и которым можно было хвастать перед другими девочками.
5. Он был человеком, которому не так легко было помочь.
6. Дик налетел на молодую женщину, выходящую из зеленого магазина.
7. Посмотри, вон автобус останавливается.
8. Поль должен был о многом позаботиться.
9. О Стив, мне нужно обсудить с тобой кое-что очень важное.
10. У меня масса бумаг, которые он должен подписать.
11. Я встретил Сиду, который возвращался из города.
12. Это была столовая, и за столом трое людей пили чай.
13. Я принес тебе бланки, которые надо заполнить.
14. Он получил телеграмму, в которой сообщалось, что у его тетки случился удар.
15. Терраса была заполнена женщинами, которые пили чай.
16. На столе его ждало письмо.
17. Дрожащими пальцами я пристегнул часы на запястье.
18. На это дерево было легко влезть.
19. Они попрощались и сели в ожидавшую машину.
20. Я полагаю, что это такой вопрос, на который трудно дать ответ.
21. Он закрыл глаза и задремал в быстро мчавшейся машине.
22. Как раз тогда он слышал бегущие шаги.
23. Через десять минут он спустился вниз в холл, но не нашел свободного места.
24. Женщина посмотрела на спящего ребенка.

Ex. 49. Choose between the infinitive and the *ing*-form as an attribute of appositive meaning.

Note: Using an *ing*-form, remember to supply it with the preposition of.

1. He had to make an effort ... his voice. (*to control*)
2. Mel resisted the temptation ... and ... the search himself. (*to take over, to direct*)
3. He liked to practise his English but he did not have much opportunity ... so during the voyage. (*to do*)
4. I had no chance ... on his opinion. (*to check*)
5. I don't recognize their claim (*to interfere*)
6. Bill set about the problem ... a home for the Connolleys with zeal and method. (*to find*)
7. He seemed in the best of tempers at the prospect ... the evening away from his family. (*to spend*)
8. Talking to them I enjoyed the sense ..., ... part of a community. (*to belong, to be*)
9. Ordinarily, the process ... clothes irked me. (*to buy*)
10. He had a gift now and then ... nice things. (*to say*)
11. I dreaded the task ... him away. (*to take*)
12. I was spared the trouble ... because Bessie seemed in too great a hurry to listen to explanations. (*to answer*)
13. He had the great misfortune ... by his father. (*to see*)
14. He established us in groups of three with no chance (*to transfer*)
15. He would sit up straight in his bed with his feet tucked under him so that you had the impression ... by a rajah. (*to receive*)
16. His stamps mean a lot to him. He won't miss this chance ... to them cheaply. (*to add*)
17. He had taken the precaution ... that I was the landlady's cousin. (*to mention*)
18. Sheila was gay, and had set herself the task ... me to take an interest in painting. (*to teach*)
19. The pebbles gave a general impression ... either white or mauve. (*to be*)
20. Can you see any way ... the risk? (*to avoid*)
21. But after a while they asked permission ... him out and lay him in the sun. (*to carry*)
22. You are getting into a bad habit ... to yourself. (*to talk*)
23. Tom and Dave were both in the highest spirits, and had clearly no intention ... from me. (*to part*)

24. He was aware that his refusal ... now made the thing look graver than it was. (*to explain*)
25. John spoke well and enjoyed the chance (*to show off*)
26. He showed a disinclination ... my friend. (*to meet*)
27. It would give me the opportunity ... the full facts before you. (*to put*)
28. He sat by Roger's side, like one who is above the necessity (*to talk*)
29. If he drove to town, he knew he would have a chance ... out what was going on. (*to find*)
30. The joy ... home counteracted all the disadvantages. (*to be*)
31. After this, he often took the opportunity ... sneering things to me. (*to say*)
32. He had the satisfaction ... that he had done a good job. (*to know*)
33. I was torn between the fear ... a nice woman's feelings and the fear ... in the way. (*to hurt, to be*)
34. Also there was always the possibility ... into Ann herself. (*I, to run*)
35. I didn't have the opportunity ... him my brother's message. (*to give*)
36. "You've no right ... her that," I said. (*to ask*)
37. We wished to express our desire ... with our families at the earliest possible moment. (*to re-unite*)
38. He was oblivious of everything in his effort ... what he wanted. (*to get*)
39. He gulped a cup of coffee in the hope ... his stomach. (*to pacify*)
40. The thought even ... to him makes me feel giddy. (*to write*)
41. I felt in myself, too, the desire ... the whole thing out of my mind. (*to get*)
42. I didn't want to run the risk ... Tom coming back from work. (*to meet*)
43. The idea ... out made her shudder. (*to go*)
44. He felt a holiday desire ... the occasion. (*to mark*)
45. The cat will be all right. I'm sure. There is no need ... about the cat. (*to worry*)
46. In fact, I had little hope ... her. (*to trace*)
47. When I asked him what first gave him the idea ... a painter, he was unable or unwilling to tell me. (*to be*)
48. He was frightened at the thought ... home. (*to leave*)

49. I did not make an attempt ..., but suddenly the music took me in charge. (*to listen*)

Ex. 50. Translate the following into English using infinitives and *ing*-forms as attributes of appositive meaning:

1. Я не мог противостоять соблазну подразнить Тома. (*temptation*)
2. Через неделю он получил приказ немедленно отправиться в Порт. (*order*)
3. Конечно, у меня было то преимущество, что я очень хорошо знал этого человека. (*advantage*)
4. Приглашение посетить его так и не пришло. (*invitation*)
5. Какой смысл оставаться у них дольше? (*point*)
6. Когда он говорил, создавалось впечатление, что он нервничает и неловко себя чувствует. (*impression*)
7. Я получил разрешение взять эту книгу, чтобы выучить стихотворение. (*permission*)
8. У него была привычка засиживаться до поздней ночи. (*habit*)
9. В колледже у меня выработалась привычка вести дневник. (*habit*)
10. В феврале он уехал на восток с намерением продать свое дело и поселиться в Нью-Йорке. (*intention*)
11. Я испытывал удовлетворение, видя, что Бетти чувствую себя все более неловко. (*satisfaction*)
12. Но я всегда испытывал страх, что сделаю что-нибудь не то. (*fear*)
13. Он перестал притворяться, что упаковывается. (*pretence*)
14. В тот день не было никакой возможности пойти погулять. (*possibility*)
15. И, конечно, у тебя есть право сказать «нет» любому из них. (*right*)
16. У меня вообще нет никакого права спрашивать тебя. (*right*)
17. У матери не было никакого желания идти на кухню. (*desire*)
18. Он видел ее инстинктивное желание положить каждую вещь на отведенное ей место. (*desire*)
19. Утром шел дождь, и она отказалась от всякой надежды попасть в бассейн. (*hope*)
20. Нет никакой надежды устроить с ним интервью до его отплытия. (*hope*)

21. Он отказался от идеи позвонить по телефону. (*idea*)
22. Мысль о расставании никогда не приходила нам в голову. (*idea*)
23. Я был в отчаянии от мысли, что могу потерять работу. (*thought*)
24. Я просто не могу вынести мысли, что не буду видеть тебя каждый день. (*thought*)
25. Ее решение найти работу было вполне твердым. (*decision*)
26. Поль не сделал никакой попытки поговорить. (*attempt*)
27. Я думаю, ей не понравилась бы любая попытка с моей стороны возобновить знакомство. (*attempt*)
28. Я сделал большое усилие, чтобы оставаться спокойным. (*effort*)
29. Она видела, что я смотрю на нее, но не сделала никакого усилия, чтобы встать. (*effort*)
30. У него был дар видеть вещи, как они есть. (*gift*)
31. Я поставил перед собой задачу попытаться найти их. (*task*)
32. Я не знаю никакого приличного способа отклонить их приглашение. (*way*)
33. О, я обычно нахожу способы развлекать себя, когда я остаюсь дома один. (*way*)
34. Вы упустили возможность сделать его счастливым. (*chance*)
35. У них редко бывала возможность помочь отцу в работе. (*chance*)
36. У меня не часто бывает возможность пойти куда-нибудь вечером. (*chance*)
37. Я рад, что получил эту возможность увидеть вас. (*chance*)
38. У них не было возможности побыть одним. (*opportunity*)
39. Я воспользовался случаем изложить Эни мои взгляды на существующее положение. (*opportunity*)
40. Я рад, что имею возможность разговаривать с вами, доктор. (*opportunity*)

Ex. 51. Supply prepositions other than *of* for the *ing*-forms used as attributes in the following sentences:

1. She had great difficulty ... not showing her feelings.
2. She looked upon life as an opportunity ... writing novels.
3. "There doesn't seem to be much point ... my coming down if he's not well," said Lou.
4. There isn't much sense ... my going through all the reasons why a young man of twenty-two, without any money, should not marry.

5. Blair raised no objection ... going back to London.
6. She has a wonderful talent ... getting the best out of people.
7. The girl took a biscuit in her tiny hand and made a feeble attempt ... gnawing it.
8. Mel saw their social life as a means ... fulfilling his professional ambitions.
9. There could be no doubt ... there being something on between her and Hugh.
10. For one reason or another there was difficulty ... finding an evening when we were both free.
11. She had a pleasant gift ... keeping the conversation general.
12. I'm a great believer ... being prepared.
13. She cherished her delight ... calling a woman of title by her Christian name.
14. I repeat, that was one of my reasons ... giving you this news today.

Ex. 52. Translate the following into English using *ing*-forms as attributes of appositive meaning to nouns requiring other prepositions than *of*:

1. Я с трудом открыл дверь из-за массы газет и писем, лежавших на полу. (*difficulty*)
2. У него никогда не было затруднений с тем, чтобы найти работу или получить субсидию на научные исследования. (*difficulty*)
3. Не было никакого смысла сидеть в комнате целый день. (*sense*)
4. У меня есть основания желать сохранить этот дом. (*reason*)
5. Я знал, что моей хозяйки не будет дома до позднего вечера, поэтому не имело смысла идти домой. (*point*)
6. Вал не имел особых возражений против того, чтобы его видели с Элен. (*objection*)
7. Ему хотелось скрыть смущение, которое он чувствовал, когда произносил речь. (*embarrassment*)
8. Устроить это интервью будет нетрудно. (*difficulty*)
9. Он старался скрыть свое удовольствие, когда ему предложили работу. (*pleasure*)
10. У меня была одна ясная причина не делать этого. (*reason*)
11. Это была одна из причин, почему я привел тебя сегодня сюда. (*reason*)

Ex. 53. Point out the doer of the actions expressed by the *ing*-forms used as attributes:

1. She could think of no way of *explaining* it.
2. Cedric had explained to me the reason for Jack's *taking* a scientific degree.
3. There ought to be no danger of anything *happening*.
4. It is asserted that the idea of *marrying* her never entered his head.
5. I didn't like the idea of Herbert *being thrown* into contact with a lot of rough boys.
6. There was the sound of the piano *being played*.
7. The curtness of the message, the fact of its *being written* at all, meant trouble.
8. It was never anything but a question of his *staying* at home or my *going* with him.
9. If there is a chance of *saving* them it's your duty to try.
10. An urgent sense of *being late* caught me up.

Ex. 54. Translate the following into English using *ing*-forms as attributes of appositive meaning. Be careful to choose the best suited way of indicating the doer of the actions if necessary:

1. Есть у кого-нибудь возражения против того, чтобы я повидался с ним? (*objection*)
2. Я не мог вынести мысли, что она так несчастлива и так далеко. (*thought*)
3. Хотя она всегда была лучшей ученицей в своем классе, не было и речи о том, что она пойдет в колледж. (*question*)
4. Его план включал необходимость для Барта оставаться в Европе в качестве управляющего. (*necessity*)
5. Было мало шансов, что он останется жить после операции. (*chance*)
6. Даже теперь мысль о том, что он когда-то разговаривал с ней, странно трогала его. (*thought*)
7. Как ты думаешь, у нас есть шанс, что нам поверят? (*chance*)
8. Его чуткий слух уловил звук приближающейся моторной лодки. (*sound*)
9. Существует реальная опасность, что эпидемия широко распространится. (*danger*)
10. Мне очень неприятна мысль, что ты там совсем одна. (*idea*)

11. На минуту наступила тишина, нарушаемая только звуком воды, текущей из крана. (*sound*)
12. У него не было никакой возможности получить стипендию в Оксфордском университете. (*chance*)

Ex. 55. Finish off the following sentences using infinitive phrases:

1. They realize that they have not the power to ...
2. She hasn't the guts to ...
3. I never thought you'd have the courage to ...
4. She has the insolence to ...
5. She did not have the heart to ...
6. Do you know what he had the nerve to ...
7. He was very tired and not sure that he could find the energy even to ...
8. I never had the skill to ...
9. They ought to have the wit and strength to ...
10. He lacked the courage to ...
11. His father was too much of a businessman to ...
12. I doubt whether he had enough money to ...
13. I have the power to ...
14. Tears streamed down her cheeks, and she did not have the wit to ...

Ex. 56. Choose between the infinitive and the *ing*-form as an attribute to a noun in sentences with a formal *it* functioning as subject or object:

1. "We make it a rule," he explained, "... no information concerning our clients." (*to give*)
2. I made it my business ... him everything. (*to teach*)
3. Oh, what's the use ... over what he said? (*to go*)
4. I told Ann that it was a mistake ... the invitation. (*to decline*)
5. It's no use ... around moaning. (*to sit*)
6. She found it a relief ... it up with me. (*to make*)
7. He said he knew it had been no good ... her about it. (*to ask*)
8. I feel that it's my duty ... at his side. (*to be*)
9. It's no use ... and ... to things if she is ill. (*she, to get up, to see*)
10. You'll find it a great change ... in New York. (*to live*)
11. He was strong and healthy and it was a pleasure ... from street to street delivering letters. (*he, to walk*)
12. I make it a principle ... with people like you. (*to work*)

13. I made it a rule ... both routes, coming down and going up. (*to use*)
14. I'll be going abroad soon. So it's no use ... or (*you, to write, to telephone*)
15. It was our custom ... for some few minutes after the lights were out. (*to talk*)
16. It's the dream of my life ... for a film star. (*to take*)
17. I don't think it a very good idea ... him of it. (*to remind*)
18. But it was no use ... as if I didn't care. (*to sound*)
19. I felt it my duty ... the argument. (*to end*)
20. It was a very unfortunate remark (*he, to make*)
21. But when we do understand each other it's no use ... we don't. (*to pretend*)

Ex. 57. Revision: supply infinitives or *ing*-forms for the following sentences:

1. It was quite late when they saw Trasker ... up the other side of the street. They saw him ... in front of his house, ... up at it and ... his cigarette away. (*to come, to pause, to look, to throw*)
2. ... the truth, he felt disgusted with himself. (*to tell*)
3. Even when my mother was alive it was considered ... a great extravagance ... to a hotel for dinner. (*to be, to go*)
4. Meg was not much surprised in the morning ... that her uncle was too unwell ..., though he hoped ... his work in the afternoon. (*to learn, to appear, to resume*)
5. He knew that he ought to feel ashamed ... on ... his father's money when he made no effort ... himself, but it did not seem ... and he just went on (*to keep, to take, to support, to matter, to sketch*)
6. I love you so much that I still can't stop my heart ... fast when I see you ... something as ordinary as ... the table. (*to beat, to do, to lay*)
7. ... on the deck Father surveyed the passengers ... up the gangway. (*to stand, to come*)
8. He insisted upon her ... a maid ... in three afternoons a week ... with the cleaning and ironing. (*to have, to come, to help*)
9. He thought of ... out and ... a note to his wife ... that he had been called away. (*to go, to leave, to say*)
10. ... frank, it is a great shock to me. (*to be*)

11. Smith got into the car and slammed the door. Barber watched him ... sharply away from the kerb, ... a taxi-driver behind him ... on his brakes ... him. (*to pull, to make, to jam, to avoid, to butt*)
12. Barbara sat beside him She heard him ... and put out a sisterly hand ... his hair. "It's terribly cold," she said. "I wonder if it would be any good ... on the gas boiler." (*to read, to sigh, to touch, to try, to turn*)
13. In the darkness I heard footsteps ... toward me. Quickly I began ... a cigarette, for the thought of someone ... into me filled me with alarm. (*to come, to light, to bang*)
14. He talked about the difficulty of ... history readable without ... it into fiction. (*to make, to turn*)
15. Michael drove very slowly towards the ... troops. (*to approach*)
16. He had trouble ... his way and several times came close to (*to find, to lose*)
17. He wanted Francis ... about it, yet he also wanted ... him. (*to know, to avoid, to tell*)
18. "Write her a letter then." "Why ... that, when she's upstairs?" (*to do*)
19. I was worried, but found it difficult ... what ... for him. (*to know, to do*)
20. When I refused ... she sulked, but then she began ... that she would enjoy ... alone for a change. (*to stay, to think, to be*)
21. "Why not ... a gentleman and ... thank you for the offer?" she said. (*to be, to say*)
22. "It's no good ... a fool of myself," she said, ... her eyes. "The only thing is ... what is the best thing" (*to make, to dry, to decide, to do*)
23. Casie spent most of her life ... her ailing mother. (*to tend*)
24. She turned to the window and threw it open. "Why ... that?" he said sharply. "You'll catch cold in that dress." (*to do*)
25. His impulse was ... from the room, but he restrained himself. (*to rush*)
26. She had trouble ... her suitcase. (*to find*)
27. I tried ... and in order not ... the bitterness in my heart I did my best ... the conversation ... on one topic and another. (*to eat, to show, to keep, to go*)
28. The young Russian was supposed ... a life of Peter the Great, and ... over to England for the purpose of ... the documents ...

- to the Tsar's residence in this country as a ship carpenter. (*to write, to come, to study, to relate*)
29. Con's family were, in fact, in the process of ... tea when we arrived, but were obviously too accustomed to Con's eccentricities ... disturbed by his ... in a stranger. (*to have, to be, to bring*)
 30. It's simply no good ... Dick ... reasonable. (*to expect, to be*)
 31. He accepted with his usual indifference my refusal ... to Cambridge. (*to go*)
 32. He was too selfish ... anyone a good turn. (*to do*)
 33. If I went ... for a house myself, my enthusiasm would die before I found the right spot. (*to search*)
 34. I found myself ... very worried by ... what ... cigarettes might do to me. So I gave up ..., not (*to become, to read, to smoke, to read, to smoke*)
 35. In the harbour there was a barge ... gracefully not far away and smaller boats ... around it. (*to move, to fuss*)
 36. A car was glimpsed ... slowly up the drive. "That's our little friend Tom ...," said Chris. (*to come, to arrive*)
 37. I sat down in the sun on the steps of the old church, ... until it was four o'clock before ... back to the office. (*to wait, to go*)
 38. What about ... to the pictures with me one evening? (*to come*)
 39. He laughed so uproariously that the people ... near us looked round, and some of them began ... too. (*to sit, to laugh*)
 40. But it is enough ... us ... not ... any personal dealings with you. (*to make, to prefer, to have*)
 41. He kept ... me ... an interest in his work. (*to try, to induce, to take*)
 42. That's preposterous! A man not ... what he had on! (*to know*)

Ex. 58. Revision: supply infinitive or *ing*-form complexes for the following sentences.

Note: Find, if necessary, the right way of introducing the complex into the sentence.

1. There was obviously no hope ... quiet until he knew how they had found him. (*the man — to be*)
2. There was nothing more annoying to Freddy than the sight ... mistakes. (*his students — to make*)
3. He didn't like the idea ... him like that. (*people — to see*)
4. He had the expression on his face (*a man — to wait, a bomb — to go off*)

5. There is no chance ... away with it. (*he — to get*)
6. What had driven him from the house was the sound (*his child — to cry*)
7. He thought it was wrong ... away, and ... his mother to look after his children. (*he — to go, to leave*)
8. I don't even know the man. I've heard ... about him from time to time, but that's all. (*you — to talk*)
9. You know one can't expect ... easy in war time. (*things — to be*)
10. I continued to work there on the subjects which were necessary ... into Cambridge. (*I — to get*)
11. The Cabinet decided to advise ... an independent commission. (*the Governor — to appoint*)
12. I made ... up and ... and (*he — to get, to wash, to dress*)
13. She lay listening to the sound ... down the stairs. (*Mary's steps — to retreat*)
14. He stood there letting ... by. (*the seconds — to tick*)
15. I thought it would be useful ... what I could about my father's intentions. (*I — to find out*)

Ex. 59. Revision: supply infinitives and *ing*-forms in the following texts:

a) Saturday. It was the day on which he had promised ... his landlady. (*to pay*) He had expected something ... up all through the week. (*to turn*) Yet he had found no work. All he could do now was ... her that he could not pay the bill. (*to tell*) But he hadn't the courage ... the woman. (*to face*) It was the middle of June. The night was warm. He made up his mind ... out. (*to stay*) ... down the Embankment, he kept ... to himself that he had always tried ... what he thought best, but everything had gone wrong. (*to walk, to say, to do*) He was ashamed of ... so many lies to his friends. (*to tell*) It had been absurd ... his pride ... him from ... for assistance. (*to let, to prevent, to ask*) Now his lies made it impossible for him ... to anyone for help. (*to turn*) But it was no good ... about it. (*to think*)

b) When my sister Anne was six years old, I saved her from (*to kidnap*) At the end of the war there were rumours about strange men who lured little children into quiet places with promises of toys and sweets, persuaded them into ... about their parents and if the parents turned out ... of no further interest to them, they usually left the children ... their way home in tears. (*to talk, to be, to find*) So my parents spent a great deal of time ... Anne about ... to strange men. (*to warn, to talk*).

One day, Anne went out ... in the street after tea and could not be found an hour later. (*to play*) We looked through the ... streets, but no one had seen her. (*to surround*) My father went off in the car ... for her, and I decided ... in the park. (*to look, to search*) Some boys there told me that they had seen a small girl in a blue dress ... a cricket match, and someone else said that she had been seen ... off with a man who was pushing a bicycle. (*to watch, to walk*) The chances were against this child ... my sister, but I walked off in the direction in which they had been seen ... (*to be, to walk*) This brought me to a back alley. I called Anne's name, and was surprised ... her voice ... back. (*to hear, to call*) I found a hole in the hedge, and as I scrambled through she came ... towards me. (*to run*) I was in time ... a youth ... over the fence. (*to see, to climb*) He grinned and waved at me and said, "Can't stop" and dropped on the other side.

Anne and I walked home; she was not in the least excited about her exploit. She had walked into the park with two girl-friends, ... for butterflies, had watched a cricket match, and had then got into conversation with "a nice man", who told her he knew where she could catch butterflies. (*to look*) He took her into the alley, ... her stories as they walked along. (*to tell*)

I warned her about ... to strange men but she insisted on this man ... "quite nice". (*to talk, to be*) I agreed that this was probably so, but made her ... that, in future, she would never again accept an invitation ... for butterflies. (*to promise, to look*)

c) When the maid had gone, and I was almost alone, I sat down on the kitchen chair and started ... (*to cry*) I sat there ... and ... and ... how ... myself. (*to shake, to gasp, to wonder, to stop*) My little daughter Flora came ... what I was doing. (*to see*) I attempted ... myself together. (*to pull*) I got up and thought of ... myself a cup of coffee. (*to make*) I put the milk in the pan. Then I went to the fridge ... the milk-bottle back, and I did not look where I was going, for I fell over one of Flora's bricks. (*to put*) I dropped the bottle and it broke and splintered all over the floor. At the sight of it I started ... again. (*to cry*) Flora came ... towards me and threw her arms about my knees. (*to stumble*)

"It's all right, Flora," I kept ... as I unclasped her hands, and started ... up the lumps of glass. (*to repeat, to pick*) I persuaded her ... down while I tried ... the milk with the floor cloth. (*to sit, to wipe*) I was damp with milk and tears. Flora clung to me, ...

(to sob) When I cleaned the floor, I picked her up and went to the bathroom ... myself. (to wash) I tried ... of some way of ... the afternoon and decided ... to the launderette with all the things that I never bother ... in the machine at home, like bedspreads and dressing-gowns. (to think, to spend, to go, to wash) Flora insisted on my ... her along with me. (to take)

In the launderette a girl I knew stopped for a moment ... (to chat) She said something about the washing at home ... her so tired, and two and ninepence ... an awful lot of money. (to make, to be) I listened and agreed but I also realized that she was apologizing to me for ... there at all, as the launderette was not to her a place of duty, but a place of lazy, extravagant luxury which she could not afford ... (to be, to visit) She was embarrassed as though I had caught her ... her hair done at an expensive hairdresser's, or ... cream cakes alone in a tea shop. (to have, to eat)

Ex. 60. Find various signs of adjectivization with the participles used as predicatives in the following sentences:

1. Freddy felt very *relieved*.
2. Finch looked suddenly *detached*, *lost* in his own thoughts.
3. I was greatly *annoyed* with Monica for interfering.
4. I could not get *used* to things changing like this.
5. Jim got too *depressed* to listen to their talk.
6. I was quite *prepared* for a disagreeable surprise.
7. Well, I must say you're not very *fitted* for accountancy.
8. I looked at him as if I were *surprised* to see him there.
9. I did not feel *inclined* for guessing-games.
10. You bet I'm burning myself out. I've been doing it for so many years now and who cares? At this moment I feel quite *played out*.
11. She was not so *convinced* as she tried to sound.
12. It was their last reception before Easter and the house was even more *crowded* than usual.

Ex. 61. State the functions of the participles in the following sentences:

1. The doll lay *deserted* on the porch.
2. I had heard these topics *argued* between the scientists for years.
3. Dogs have often been seen *killed* on the road.

4. Rex assured her that the blind man was quite peaceful if *left* undisturbed.
5. Friendship *restored*, we walked along together.
6. By the look of it the watch must have lain *buried* in the sand for quite a few days.
7. Seeing our afternoon *broken*, Margaret and I were cross.
8. But what if he had his money *stolen*?
9. With an effort I took up the diary again and turned the closely *written* pages.
10. The plant has withered because it was left *exposed* to the sun.
11. She sat down on a *fallen* tree to do the Times cross-word puzzle.
12. As I was busy finishing the article, I got the new fellow *sent* instead of me.
13. The probability is that there won't be anything *left* to wait for.
14. He sat straight in his bed with his feet *tucked* under him.
15. It was only a couple of pages, *typed* in triple spacing on one of the large-letter machines, as though specially *designed* for long-sighted elderly men.
16. He felt a curious relief at the delay and at the fact that whether *sent* or not the letter was written.
17. He knew they were both men *trained* to discretion.
18. Bernard found himself *compelled* to read and give his opinion on one or two books.
19. *Seated* at his desk, Mel put his head in his hands.
20. The dog was found *tied* to a tree.
21. The pebbles gave a general impression of being either white or mauve, but *looked* at closely they exhibited almost every intermediate colour and also varied considerably in size and shape.
22. When *challenged*, he denied it.
23. But this friend of yours looks odd to me and he gets himself *talked* about.
24. This *done*, Margot travelled back to fetch the boy.
25. He made undergraduates, newly *arrived* in London, feel that they were important.
26. It was clear to him that she would go back on the whole thing if *given* half a chance.
27. All things *considered*, there was nothing to be done now.
28. If *done* prematurely, your move might provoke opposition.

29. I had never heard a bribe *hinted* at anywhere near these people, much less *offered*.
 30. The two guards listened, their faces *turned* to the rifle-slit.

Ex. 62. Translate the following into English using participles as objective predicatives:

1. Мне пришлось прождать два часа в больнице, чтобы запломбировать зуб. (*to have*)
2. Я слышал, как в связи с этим упоминалось его имя. (*to hear*)
3. Она с шумом задвинула ящик стола. (*to slam*)
4. Я оставил жену вполне обеспеченной. (*to leave*)
5. Все эти годы я хранил их письма под замком. (*to keep*)
6. Он был полон решимости заставить уважать себя. (*to make*)
7. Я не мог допустить, чтобы моего единственного сына исключили из колледжа. (*to have*)
8. Когда они подошли к дому, они увидели оставленный перед ним «бьюик». (*to see*)
9. Ты мог бы добиться, чтобы его уволили. (*to get*)
10. Ему было досадно, когда он услышал, что имя его жены упоминается в разговоре незнакомым человеком. (*to hear*)
11. Было тяжело видеть его побежденным. (*to see*)
12. Я полагаю, что у твоей матери цыплят пересчитывали каждый вечер. (*to have*)
13. «О чем ты хочешь меня предупредить?» — «О том, что ты окажешься в положении человека, о котором все говорят». (*to find oneself*)
14. Он сказал ей, что нельзя заполнить бланк без предварительного заявления. (*to have*)
15. Если бы он сделал это, он мог бы оказаться отрезанным от своей семьи. (*to find oneself*)
16. Я знал, что могу ему помочь, только если буду держать язык за зубами. (*to keep*)
17. В нашем доме невозможно добиться, чтобы что-нибудь было сделано. (*to get*)
18. Они хотели, чтобы комитет созвали в понедельник. (*to want*)

Ex. 63. Supply the appropriate conjunctions for the participles used as adverbial modifiers in the following sentences:

1. He had never been known to refuse to see a patient at any hour, or to fail to make a house call ... sent for.

2. The furniture was to be stored in Quebec ... sent for.
3. She has the heart of a tigress ... roused.
4. A re-check, ... decided on, would take most of half an hour.
5. ... told to go, Maxwell hesitated at the door.
6. ... released, he told me of his trouble.
7. He remembered that he should not smoke ... invited to do so.
8. "I suppose you understand you would have to go to Canada ... engaged," he went on.
9. Lamont bowed to him ... introduced.
10. So I went back to Kathy's place ... directed.
11. She stopped in the doorway ... surprised to see me sitting there.
12. ... ordered two weeks ago, the books haven't been delivered yet.
13. ... starved for exercise, he usually began to scrape the sidewalks with a shovel.
14. ... bored with a book, I find it difficult to leave it unfinished.

Ex. 64. Translate the following into English using participles as attributes:

1. Мэри села на упавший ствол дерева.
2. Оркестр на экране телевизора в гостиной исполнял музыку Моцарта.
3. Дети играли в разрушенном коттедже.
4. Там было шесть коробок, туго завернутых в старые газеты.
5. Она подошла к письменному столу и вынула запечатанный конверт.
6. Женщина вышла из магазина и пошла к машине, оставленной на стоянке чуть ниже по улице.
7. Вернувшись в комнату, она позвонила по телефону.
8. Упавшие листья спокойно лежали в пруду.
9. Оставшись один, я огляделся.
10. Застигнутые врасплох, они не знали, что сказать.
11. У меня были свои собственные определенные взгляды на мое будущее.
12. В коробке было несколько негативов, свернутых в тугой виток.

Ex. 65. Revision: choose the appropriate verbal in the function of objective predicative:

1. I don't want to see anyone ... (to hurt)
2. Roger gave such a boisterous laugh that I saw other people ... towards our table. (to glance)

3. Jeff smiled, slowly letting the door (to close)
4. Diana had the table ... on. (to lay)
5. The sight of the man made him ... his mind. (to change)
6. One man had got himself ... in the accident. (to kill)
7. Light was coming through in the corner room, and he could hear a piano (to play)
8. Everyone talked a little louder than natural in an instinctive desire to make the party (to go)
9. There are people who would like to see him ... a fair chance. (to give)
10. I did not expect the issue ... the tragic form it did. (to take)
11. The picture always left me ... sad. (to feel)
12. I have often heard it (to say)
13. The judge did not like witnesses ... jokes. (to make)
14. I came to tell you ... him while there's time. (to find)
15. I'll have someone ... on to keep a watch on the house. (to put)
16. Even his mother could not stop him ... that. (to do)
17. She could not bring herself ... that she feared she might lose him. (to say)
18. He had to force himself ... his uncle. (to visit)
19. I want a telegram ... at once. (to send)
20. She then explained why she had asked me ... on that night. (to call)
21. It was easy to imagine Kate ... silent. (to sit)
22. Next morning he got his cheque (to cash)
23. Suddenly they saw him ... his temper and were uncomfortable. (to lose)
24. In fact I found myself ... that I would have to do something about it immediately. (to think)
25. Then I saw Rose ... out on Roger's arm, an impressive smiling couple. (to walk)
26. Two events induced Basil ... to London. (to return)
27. Edward soon made his views (to know)
28. For once I saw Ann ... out. (to put)
29. Maybe I can get Jack ... it. (to write)
30. "I won't have anything ... against her," he said unexpectedly. (to say)

Ex. 66. Revision: choose the appropriate verbal as an attribute:

1. She looked at a ... photograph of Jimmy. (to frame)
2. John busied himself with the complex problems of a ... city. (to grow)

3. There were infrequent visitors and her books ... her occupied.
(to keep)
4. In the room there were four men ... over their coffee. (to chat)
5. In the theatre there was always a seat ... for him. (to reserve)
6. Late at night he received a telegram from his father ... him to come home at once. (to ask)
7. The Cotton Cooperative ... by his father to protect the cotton growers in the area, was expanded to include tobacco. (to found)
8. In the drawer he kept the envelopes ... his children's letters.
(to contain)
9. He decided not to plant the fields because of the labour shortage ... by the war. (to create)
10. He outlined his plan ... the votes of the two men. (to obtain)
11. I found myself in the ... room. (to darken)
12. He accepted the invitation ... the matter. (to discuss)
13. People usually accept the emotions ... to the concept of home.
(to attach)
14. The meeting of the Council ... by Jim Corbin two days later was a particularly stormy one. (to call)
15. He received permission ... up the unkempt grassy lawn. (to clean)
16. She wondered every day at that folly, already ... into the past.
(to recede)
17. They were reluctant to fill out the small forms ... the expenses they had made. (to describe)
18. I helped him in handling problems ... by other departments.
(to create)
19. I made one ... remark after another in an effort ... friendly.
(to joke, to be)
20. I know I won't be able to think of a single intelligent thing ... in reply. (to say)
21. I smiled with relief when I saw it was my brother ... on the grass. (to lie)
22. In the telephone I heard the ... announcement of the time. (to record)
23. Every two weeks we are paid with machine-processed checks ... out of stiff paper. (to manufacture)
24. He left a note ... he was sorry. (to say)
25. He made a few ... jokes. (to tease)

26. He was afraid that his company might lose the order to the ... company. (*to compete*)
27. I'm making no plans ... my present job. (*to leave*)
28. I worked long on the program ... to me and prepared a very good and witty demonstration of eighteen colour slides. (*to allot*)
29. His ambition ... a speech was nothing more than a shallow, middle-class vanity. (*to make*)
30. She poured some ... water into the coffee pot. (*to boil*)
31. I found myself outside with an ... head. (*to ache*)

Ex. 67. Revision: supply the appropriate verbals:

1. They stared at each other, Dan still ... with his tea cup and Willy ... out in the chair. (*to stand, to stretch*)
2. While ... for a flight, and without ever ... the terminal, a visitor could have his hair ..., suit ... and shoes (*to wait, to leave, to cut, to press, to shine*)
3. The snow never stopped ... that afternoon. It was dreadful ... outdoors. (*to fall, to be*)
4. Then we strolled round the place ... preparations ... up the tent. (*to watch, to make, to set*)
5. The door did not open. She left off ..., and, ... down at the top of the stairs, buried her face in her hands. (*to ring, to sit*)
6. The thought came ... into his mind. (*to flash*)
7. ... them in so short a time would have been next to impossible. (*to find*)
8. She took up the egg-cup and held it to the light ... if it might be tarnished a little. Then she set about ... the egg. (*to see, to chip*)
9. I spent some time with Tom ... maps of the country. (*to study*)
10. He was accustomed to ... through the morning noises of the neighbourhood. (*to sleep*)
11. The confusion that followed would be impossible (*to describe*)
12. He was beyond ... about what was going to happen to him. (*to care*)
13. She could not help ... into her conversation the names of the people she knew. (*to bring*)
14. The state I'm in I'm liable ... out (*to burst, to cry*)

15. It is true that ... is ... and (to understand, to pity, to forgive)
16. I sat ... at him. (to gaze)
17. "I cannot see what my ... three times has to do with my books," she said. (to divorce)
18. He walked down the street, not ... where ... or what (to know, to turn, to do)
19. At the top of the third flight she paused for breath, and ... on to the banisters, stood (to hold, to listen)
20. Bob glanced away from his mother so as not ... the tears in her eyes. (to see)
21. The girl was only four but it delighted us ... with her. (to talk)
22. I had seen too many examples of the process not ... it now. (to recognize)
23. ... gradually his small fortune, he preferred ... on the generosity of others rather than (to waste, to live, to work)
24. She tried ... on ... with me, but I finally managed ... her out of it. (to insist, to come, to talk)
25. I've seen many a man ... through ... extravagant habits. (to ruin, to have)
26. She woke at half past ten in the morning ... her husband (to find, to go)
27. They said that Roger had been known ... her between five and seven in the evening, on the dates ... down. (to visit, to set)
28. When Hugh came in he found the painter ... the ... touches to a picture of a beggar-man. The beggar himself was standing on a ... platform in a corner of the studio. He was an old man, with a face like ... parchment. (to put, to finish, to raise, to wrinkle)
29. There were several ships ... in the harbour. (to anchor)
30. Since then I've made a point of ... with the largest sack ... for ... linen and ... it to the brim with books ... every possible occasion and every mood. (to travel, to make, to carry, to soil, to fill, to suit)
31. He went out through the window so as not ... the front door (to leave, to unfasten)
32. My uncle had a workshop with a lathe and various other tools for carpentry or metal-work. He kept ... me ... an interest in it; it was the joy of his life and he wanted ... me ... it. He made me ... while he worked at it. (to try, to induce, to take, to see, to share, to stand, to watch)

33. He felt drowsy all the way in the train, ... a couple of newspapers and then ... out of the window at the ... scene. (*to read, to look, to change*)
34. The thing ... was ... the police. (*to do, to call*)
35. She opened the door just in time ... Tom ... round the corner. (*to see, to disappear*)
36. Not ... your letters, I haven't the faintest idea what you're talking about. (*to read*)
37. He took the first opportunity ... for his rudeness. (*to apologize*)
38. I'm too old ... my ways. (*to change*)
39. I couldn't resist ... my money or ... it ... my friends. (*to show, to spend, to treat*)
40. He sat for hours by the river as the trains ran ... across the bridge. (*to shriek*)
41. It might be worth (*to try*)
42. After some thinking he decided how he would go about ... the information. (*to obtain*)
43. He was sitting with his hands ... round his knee, ... at the water. (*to clasp, to stare*)
44. The buildings were kept ... and in repair by a group of workmen. (*to paint*)

Ex. 68. Revision: translate the following into English using verbals as objective and subjective predicatives:

1. Издали виден был грузовик, поднимающийся в гору.
2. Я часто видел, как это делается.
3. Меня не пригласили пойти с ними.
4. Очень важно, чтобы это было сделано быстро.
5. Интересно, почему она не хотела, чтобы я с ними познакомился.
6. Считалось, что они прожили очень счастливую жизнь.
7. Он приказал оседлать ему лошадь и поехал в деревню.
8. Я наблюдал из окна, как Диана разговаривала с соседкой.
9. Она заставила меня переодеться к обеду.
10. Он не хотел, чтобы я соглашался.
11. Я слышал, как говорили, что Лиз могла бы стать замечательной пианисткой.
12. Сколько времени, ты полагаешь, я буду здесь стоять?
13. Видели, как она вошла в лес.

14. Мы оставили детей играть на полу.
15. Мальчиков поймали, когда они крали вишню.
16. Мы оставили детей смотреть телевизор.
17. Мне не нравится, когда девушки курят.
18. Я не допущу, чтобы ты так разговаривал со мной.
19. Она улыбнулась, когда услышала, что ее описывают как женщину среднего возраста.
20. Мне велели приготовить чай.
21. Его рассказ продолжал смешить людей.
22. Она застала всю семью в сборе.
23. Они очень давно делали эту работу и не могли себе представить, что кто-то не знает об этом.
24. Он хотел, чтобы проложили дорогу к деревне.
25. Я позволила ему сводить меня в театр.
26. Она не желает, чтобы ее местонахождение стало известным.

Ex. 69. Revision: translate the following into English using infinitive *for*- and *of*-phrases:

1. Мне было трудно их убедить.
2. Болезнь помешала ему воспользоваться этой возможностью.
3. Было бы лучше, если бы ему ничего не говорили.
4. Его присутствие позволило мне избежать ссоры.
5. Люси видела, что я был очень озабочен тем, чтобы она произвела хорошее впечатление.
6. Оказалось, что прекратить все эти слухи не так-то просто.
7. Он искал спокойное место, где бы его семья могла отдохнуть.
8. Никто из нас ничего не мог бы сделать в этой ситуации.
9. Это был удобный для нее случай поговорить с ним наедине.
10. Я попросил разрешения, чтобы Том пожил у нас еще неделю.
11. Странно, что он написал такую статью.
12. Для меня большая честь познакомиться с таким человеком, как Джон Бейли.
13. Ему доставит удовольствие все подготовить к их приезду.
14. Им было бы жаль потратить столько усилий зря.
15. Очень предусмотрительно с вашей стороны, что вы пришли сегодня.
16. Мы все ждали, когда придет письмо.

17. Просто удивительно, как это Дэн нашел вас.
18. Мне очень хотелось, чтобы он скорее приступил к работе.
19. Для меня было облегчением уехать из дома.
20. Им было бы удобно не втягивать его в это дело.
21. Ему стоило большого усилия позвонить ей.
22. Очень мило с его стороны, что он интересуется моими делами.
23. Я плотно закрыл дверь, чтобы нам никто не мешал.
24. Он жестом показал, чтобы я вышел.

Ex. 70. Revision: translate the following into English using *ing*-complexes:

1. Он жаловался на то, что у него в комнате очень холодно.
2. Он часто говорил о том, что ему необходимо найти хорошо оплачиваемую работу, но ничего для этого не делал.
3. В письме упоминалось, что миссис Брейн заболела.
4. Она позвала на помощь. Но у нее не было никакой надежды, что помощь придет.
5. Ей не нравилась мысль о том, что ее сын будет жить в одной комнате с каким-нибудь грубым мальчишкой.
6. Он рассказал ей, что для их сына есть возможность получить работу лучше.
7. Она терзалась мыслью о том, что за ее ребенком присматривают какие-то чужие люди.
8. Когда он объявил о дне своего отплытия, она не могла сдерживать радости.
9. Джулия убрала сигарету так, что он этого не заметил.
10. Твой отец настаивает на том, чтобы ты получил образование в Оксфорде.
11. Он обещал написать ей письмо, и она с нетерпением ждала, когда получит его.

Ex. 71. Revision: translate the following into English using absolute constructions with verbals:

1. Я увидел, что он сидел у окна и одна его рука лежала полусжатой на столе.
2. Это единственный дом там, и во всей округе некому выслеживать его.
3. Она глубоко дышала, губы ее были приоткрыты, щеки разругивались.

4. Она плакала, не таясь и не сводя с него глаз.
5. С Мери в качестве учительницы он очень быстро научился говорить на хорошем английском языке.
6. Я не могу спать, когда не выключено радио.
7. На третьем этаже загорелось окно: кто-то работал допоздна.
8. Я ушел от них поздно вечером с чувством облегчения от груза забот.
9. Он лежал на спине с закрытыми глазами.
10. Джулия от нечего делать посещала лекции.
11. Она увидела Пэт сидящей на полу среди фотографий, разбросанных вокруг нее.

Ex. 72. Revision: translate the following into English using the proper forms of verbals:

1. Написав на конверте адрес, она выбросила открытку в корзину для бумаг.
2. Это была любовная связь, которая, как полагали, продолжалась так давно, что о ней перестали говорить.
3. Так случилось, что они обедали у Доли в тот день.
4. Очень мило с его стороны, что он предложил это.
5. Кажется, он не написал никаких новых пьес.
6. Уплатив шоферу, он взглянул на жену, которая стояла в дверях освещенная заходящим солнцем.
7. Чувство времени — это одна из вещей, которым я, кажется, научился у Джимми.
8. Было похоже, что он получал удовольствие от нашей компании.
9. Говорили, что она еще не приняла никакого решения.
10. Ходят слухи, что ей посоветовали не выходить замуж за Теда.
11. Известно, что он был трижды ранен во время войны.
12. У меня появилось ощущение, что за мной наблюдают.
13. Я не помню, чтобы я когда-либо была около их дома.
14. Крису как-то не хотелось, чтобы над ним смеялись.
15. Так как он никогда раньше не занимал денег, он нашел целый ряд людей, которые были готовы одолжить ему небольшие суммы.
16. Я терпеть не мог, когда мне желали удачи.

NOUNS

Ex. 1. Explain the formation and pronunciation of the plural form of the italicized nouns:

As we sailed up the River Hudson towards the *cities* of New York and Brooklyn, we experienced a sensation which is, I think, common to all *travellers* who come to the end of their voyage. Many *people* have tried to analyse this emotion, and I have read many such *analyses* but none have ever really satisfied me.

The *buildings* stood out against the skyline like enormous *boxes of matches* stuck on end. The *houses* and *churches* were completely dwarfed by them. As we went up the river, we examined it all with our *glasses*. It seemed as if each building brushed the *skies*.

There were a lot of *ships* in the river mouth. They were bringing *cargoes* from all over the world — cargoes of meat and *potatoes* and *mangoes*, of *machines* and *toys* and many other *things*. They carried *silks* from China and *teas* from India as well. They flew the *colours* of almost every seafaring nation on the globe.

Armies of customs-officials, port-authorities and others, came on board. The *passengers* were paraded before the port doctor. He was a huge fat man. The first class passengers filed before him as solemn as *oxen*. Most of the third class passengers stood waiting their turn as quiet as *mice*, though some were as noisy as a flock of *geese*. They carried their *savings* in knotted *handkerchiefs*, and the rest of their *belongings* in *bundles*. Many seemed to have completely lost their *bearings* in their new and strange *surroundings* and seemed as bewildered as *sheep*, while their *wives* and *children* stared around like startled *deer*.

There seemed to be varying *criteria* for the treatment of passengers by the immigration authorities, according to the class in which they travelled. Those of the third were examined for *lice* and other *vermin*, regardless of their *feelings*. And if a single louse was found, the individual was taken to Ellis Island, where there were plenty of delousing *apparatuses*. Our American *brethren* do nothing by *halves*, and do not care *sixpence* for anybody's *opinions* of their *methods*.

We landed with every manifestation of high *spirits* and the customs people examined our *effects*. The *hangers-on* stared at us as though we were curious *phenomena*.

On the day we landed, the news got around that an armistice had been signed, and New York was beside itself with joy. Nobody then guessed how many world *crises* would follow in the *years* to come; and what small consolation there would be for the *men* who had performed their *duties* like *heroes* in "a war to end war".

Ex. 2. Choose between a singular or a plural verb to use it in the following sentences:

1. We were at the head of the valley and below us we saw an old house. "This is where my family (*to live*)," he said.
2. Con's family (*to be*) in the process of having tea when we arrived.
3. All the family (*to be*) gathered to see the dog.
4. My family who (*to be*) occupied each with their particular guest did not notice anything.
5. Monty's family (*to be*) of about the same social status as my own.
6. When the family (*to be*) alone she often read to them before going to bed.
7. Do you know what the family (*to get*) into their heads about this business?
8. The police (*to know*) about him for years.
9. Everybody says the Swiss police (*to be*) great at finding people.
10. The police (*to be*) not fools. That man did not believe a word of what I said.
11. The police (*to call*) and a sergeant and a constable arrived.
12. The public (*not to think*) so.
13. The public (*to request*) not to leave litter in these woods.
14. As Alan appeared, the crew had quit their loading and (*to be*) assembled along the rail.
15. There (*to be*) two fish in his basket.
16. That evening the net was so heavy that he could hardly draw it into the boat. "Surely I have caught all the fish that (*to swim*)," he said to himself and laughed.
17. When he came the baseball team (*to practise*) on the school field.
18. The team (*to have*) baths at the moment and then (*to come*) back here for tea.
19. The team (*to play*) tomorrow morning.
20. The summons (*to be*) already overdue.

21. My trousers now (*to clean*).
22. Do you know what the news (*to be*)?
23. The ashes (*to be*) still hot.
24. The job is unpaid, but a number of persons (*to be*) willing to undertake it.
25. There (*to be*) important information in the letter.
26. The clergy (*to be*) generally dressed in black.
27. The Government (*to discuss*) the matter for a long time but they have shown no signs of reaching agreement.
28. The Government (*to decide*) to pass the bill.
29. He was reserved concerning himself but a fluent talker when politics (*to be*) under discussion.
30. Politics always (*to interest*) me.
31. Ethics (*to be*) a difficult study.
32. The company (*to find*) shelter from the rain in the village inn. They are going to have lunch there.
33. In the meantime the young couple (*to be*) to live in the old house.
34. That day the committee (*to be*) to meet at her friend's house.
35. I had to find out whether the committee (*to be*) competent enough to consider the project.
36. The committee (*to be*) of the opinion that the matter should be dealt with at once.
37. Close by, a group of men (*to sit*). They kept the waiter busy with their orders.
38. A group of students (*to go*) on a tour to Slovakia in summer.
39. The board (*to be*) extraordinarily kind to you.
40. The board (*to be*) going to consider your application at the next sitting.
41. There (*to be*) a few little craft anchored in the harbour.
42. The staff (*to be*) all gathered in the main office when I came.
43. His staff (*to be*) very small. I don't know how he managed to do any business at all.
44. You've bought yourself a nice car. Your money (*to be*) well spent.
45. His advice always (*to be*) useful to me.

Ex. 3. State the kind of the genitive case used in the following sentences:

1. He did not want to impose his sorrow on his *friends'* pleasure.
2. Wormwood Shrubs is a first *offenders'* prison.

3. The estate where they were to spend the week-end belonged to a cousin of *Andrew's*.
4. Otto turned up at *Arthur's* about a week later.
5. It was *Robin's* turn now to be annoyed with what he felt to be the *boy's* stubbornness.
6. Annie turned great frightened *doll's* eyes upon him.
7. In stressing her *mother-in-law's* peasant origin she found it easier to disregard her.
8. A *professor's* life is little better than a high-grade *clerk's* nowadays.
9. She did not ask him anything because she knew a *sister's* place.
10. The street had not changed. There was the *baker's* at the corner, and there was the *butcher's* with the gilt oxhead on the signboard.
11. I'm sure you know far more than they do about their *country's* history.
12. The *sun's* rays refracted in an intense glare from the chalk-white cliffs.
13. He looked expectantly at Maria, but she dilated her *camel's* nostrils slightly and said: "I don't give blank cheques."
14. It was a habit of *John's* not to tell you things and then assume that you knew all about them.

Ex. 4. Translate the following into English choosing between a noun in the genitive case and an *of*-phrase:

1. Ее кукольное личико выражало раздражение.
2. Он прошел через комнату секретарши, не глядя на нее.
3. Я провел неделю в гостях у друга моей матери, который живет в Лондоне.
4. Женский голос позади меня тихо произнес мое имя.
5. Это было решение опытного человека.
6. В сегодняшней вечерней газете есть длинная статья Питера на эту тему.
7. Джеральд поднял брови. «У тебя очень странные взгляды на обязанности отца», — сказал он.
8. На следующее утро я дала ребенку его первую бутылочку коровьего молока.
9. «Я не буду есть рыбу», — сказал Роберт с важностью старшего ребенка в семье.

10. Боюсь, что мы опоздаем к Джону.
11. Наступило минутное молчание.
12. Он имел обыкновение говорить о своей профессии как о собачьей жизни.
13. После университета в течение года или двух она преподавала в хорошей женской школе на севере Англии.
14. Он никогда не забудет доброты своего друга.
15. Это был дом местного доктора, который был активным членом клуба.
16. До его работы было только несколько минут ходьбы.
17. Он пошел в аптеку.
18. Ее удивил ответ молодого человека на ее вопрос о его отцовских обязанностях.
19. Хозяин дома не живет в нем, но он иногда приезжает сюда на день или два.
20. Что может быть более естественно, чем желание матери узнать что-нибудь о молодом человеке, с которым встречается ее дочь?
21. Интерес больного к этому журналу легко объяснить.
22. У него было знание города, присущее таксисту.
23. Следующая встреча актрисы с режиссером произошла две недели спустя.
24. Я не смог узнать, как зовут человека, который принес это письмо.

ARTICLES

Ex. 1. Explain the functions of the articles or their absence with the italicized nouns:

1. He gave me a *message* for you.
2. The *road* past the *church* was quiet.
3. "Is it true?" "Oh, no. It's pure *imagination*."
4. Only the *poet* or the *saint* can water an asphalt *pavement* in the confident *anticipation* that *lilies* will reward his labour.
5. I was quick to weave *fantasies* with my mother, to build *houses* and furnish them, and give her *motor cars* and *furs*.
6. All available *chairs* were occupied, and at least a hundred people were standing.
7. He closed his eyes. A peculiar *weariness* came over him.
8. Just about everybody in the town is chasing the *dollar* so hard that they only have time to breathe on Sundays.
9. I call it a very mediocre *play*.
10. I liked *pleasure* and good *things*.
11. My mother died in May. From the *cemetery*, my father and I returned to the empty *house*.
12. He wanted to hide the *embarrassment* he felt at making this speech.
13. With a *frankness* which brought colour to her cheeks he said, "I suppose you mean me."
14. She looked in her handbag for an *envelope*.
15. He thinks it's pure *nerves* and he's given me *pills*. You'd better hope that the *pills* do some good.
16. Peter was alone at home, enjoying the *solitude* and the *freedom* of the empty *house*.
17. You've never bought a *car* yet, have you?
18. My mother liked to wait until it was quite dark before we lit the *gas* and drew the *blinds*.
19. I don't know how to talk to *children*.
20. We sat round the *table* in the *kitchen*. There was cold *meat*, *cheese*, a *bowl* of tinned *pears*, *jam-tarts*, and a *jug* of *cream*.
21. She put down the *cup* and got up.
22. There was not a *cloud* in the *sky*.
23. The big *table* was covered with *texts* and *notebooks*.

24. She answered a soft *tap* at the *door* and a *maid* came in with a *tray* which she set on the *table*.

Ex. 2. Say whether the attributes, expressed by various parts of speech are limiting or descriptive in the following sentences and whether they affect the use of articles with the countable nouns therein:

1. "*The injured man* does not understand our language," he said and walked off to find *an English doctor*.
2. *Number 39* was the house with the plain green grass bordered by a *rockery*.
3. He politely avoided *all invitations* from professional acquaintances.
4. *The three thin cracked notes of the gong* floated into the garden inviting us to dinner.
5. She said good-bye to me and started at a great pace up the *chalky footpath*.
6. I think that that is *the wrong point of view*.
7. To *the little girl* he was *a figure to be feared and avoided*.
8. I took *the opportunity of talking* with my father for a moment.
9. She felt, as usual, confident that she had done *the right thing* and that this was *the only conceivable course* for me.
10. My mother was capable but preoccupied, my father took it for granted that she was *the stronger character* and never made more than a comic pretense of interfering at home.
11. He shook his head and said: "Well, I suppose young men must have their fling."
12. I couldn't explain to myself *the stunned look in her face*.
13. His church does not allow him *a second wife*.
14. Then he told me in *a trembling voice* what had happened.
15. He said he would give me the job on *the usual terms*.
16. He came in, batting short-sighted eyes in *the bright room*.
17. Mrs Davis sent me *a note asking* if I could go and see her that evening.
18. He had left his wife in the car and walked to *the nearest telephone box*.
19. *Last night* I looked at Henry when he was working.
20. She stood at *the very top of the long outer staircase* looking down into *the dark courtyard*.
21. He opened the door and saw *two men* standing on the door-step.

22. She had missed *the chance to leave* him and he knew it.
23. It was not *an occasion made* for drama.
24. I am going myself to see *the various people involved*.
25. To divert her, I arranged to take her to a concert *the following night*.
26. We stood side by side on *the dark and empty pavement*.
27. *On the third floor* the door was open.
28. *The old people* had a chance of welcoming their nephew.
29. *The so-called palace* stood the test of time magnificently.
30. "We are *a curious people*," he said to them.
31. He soon bought *a deserted farm eight miles away from the town*.
32. "What's her name and where does she live?" "Miss Ann Kenyon. She has *the brown cottage across the bridge*."
33. "I have felt from the first," he said, "that this is not *the place to bring a young girl to*."
34. He carried *a wooden spade* in his hands.
35. He is *a most amusing companion*.
36. The inn to him was simply *a place to eat and to sleep in*.
37. *A retired plumber* has asked me to paint his portrait.
38. She is *the laziest woman* in the village.
39. When we were eating the lobster, *the last guest* arrived.
40. *A small bush to the left* was engaging her attention.
41. He said: "I'd like to have a consultation with Charles not later than the end of *the present week*."
42. I expressed exactly *the same point of view* myself.

Ex. 3. Supply the required articles for nouns used singly and nouns modified by attributes expressed by various parts of speech:

1. I still keep wondering if I'm doing ... right thing.
2. We needed ... house to stay in when we were in London.
3. There are some things ... gentleman can't do, Phil.
4. Every day, the Marches told each other ... latest pieces of family gossip.
5. You are ... only person whose opinion is of any value to me in ... present regrettable circumstances.
6. He told her he hated ... doctors.
7. She had ... laughing eyes and ... most charming mouth.
8. They took all ... usual measures.
9. We talked about ... books. Charles had just finished ... last volume of Proust.

10. I went into ... room quietly and sat down opposite him without ... word.
11. We all know that ... men under the influence of passion say ... things and make ... promises which in ... calmer moments they forget.
12. She had ... strong opinions on all ... subjects.
13. Mr March spent most of the night talking to Francis about buying ... house. ... two of them were happy discussing ... plans and ... prices.
14. I told myself that in wartime ... letters are lost.
15. He is ... man to deal with it.
16. She went to ... writing-desk and brought out ... sealed envelope.
17. I'll book ... sleeper on ... Geneva-Paris train for tomorrow night.
18. ... second bell sounded, and Mr March began to walk into ... theatre.
19. They never read anything but ... local paper, and ... local papers report ... London affairs in one line.
20. I now see for myself how ... things stand at home.
21. Well, there are ... hundred courses open for you to follow.
22. When he got back to ... hotel he took ... newspaper and considered at his leisure ... story on ... page two.
23. He didn't like ... idea of staying with them for ... other day.
24. She wrote to her mother that ... things were going well and that she was not to be anxious.
25. I had brought all my possessions in ... two old suitcases.
26. For ... first term we shared ... same desk at the school because our names came next to each other in ... list.
27. There was a time when I believed ... people went to ... parties to enjoy themselves.
28. I haven't ... chance of getting this job anyhow.
29. Bill came out to meet them, wiping his hands on ... oily rag.
30. He took ... crumpled telegram out of his pocket, flattened it out on his knee with great care and studied it.
31. Mike waited in ... main hall while Henry escorted ... party to ... elevator.
32. I don't believe ... word of it.
33. In London ... things were much as usual.
34. He was on his feet as soon as ... curtain came down at ... end of ... second act.

35. He asked where I had picked up such ... word.
36. She gave ... same answer as before.
37. He liked going to ... new places.
38. Of all ... papers I read this morning none interested me as much as this one.
39. It was ... only birthday he had celebrated since he was ... child.
40. He was ... most interesting man.
41. He sent her ... offering of ... best flowers that Milford could supply.
42. In his digs Peter had no cooking facilities and he ate off ... newspapers.
43. He began to hum ... song. It was ... old popular song.
44. Then I heard ... voice asking if I was in.
45. I ate ... three cakes; he pressed me to have ... fourth but I didn't, in case it was vulgar.
46. I mean there are times when it's valuable for ... doctor to be independent of his job.
47. It was, after all, no disgrace to be connected with ... case reported in the Times.
48. ... young man listened to ... conversation with ... amused smile.
49. You should have accepted him on the spot. You mightn't get ... second chance.
50. My married daughter said exactly ... same thing.
51. He heard ... popular song played by ... dance band on the radio.

Ex. 4. Make up situations of your own to justify the use of the articles with the countable nouns in the following pairs of sentences:

1. Ned returned to his table. The waiter put a record on the gramophone.
Ned returned to his table. The waiter put the record on the gramophone.
2. He gave her a cigarette and lighted it.
He gave her the cigarette and lighted it.
3. He pulled up in front of a red barn.
He pulled up in front of the red barn.
4. I'll have to have someone lift a heavy thing for me.
I'll have to have someone lift the heavy thing for me.

5. A stout man came up and shook hands.
The stout man came up and shook hands.
6. I've got a job.
I've got the job.
7. She was at work on a book.
She was at work on the book.
8. This is a local library.
This is the local library.
9. He wrote down a figure.
He wrote down the figure.
10. He was standing behind a car.
He was standing behind the car.

Ex. 5. Translate the following into Russian paying special attention to the noun *things*:

1. It was likely that things were in better shape now.
2. Things had started to go wrong from the moment Monty arrived there.
3. "Things have taken an odd turn, haven't they?" he remarked in a meditative tone.
4. How are things generally, Ann?
5. When things look bad she sends for me.
6. He said he had an opportunity to think things over.
7. He resolved to go into the matter more deeply when things became more settled.
8. However, things seemed to be going from bad to worse.

Ex. 6. State the kind of the attributive clauses used in the following sentences:

1. That's a poem *I learnt in the nursery*, but I simply can't remember how it goes on.
2. He often had the feeling *that he did not know her fully, that she was a stranger*.
3. He had made a mistake *which caused him to feel inept*.
4. Mr Knight would not speak to me for the simple reason *that he felt hurt*.
5. I dislike people *who talk about their private lives*.
6. He said: "I'm sorry I had to be late," and sat in the armchair *which had been preserved for him*.

7. He told me of his duties in a manner *that was friendly and a little fussy.*
8. Henry hesitated a minute, then said: "I have the impression *that you are not being frank with me.*"
9. He was rather startled by the defiant stare *with which she returned his look.*
10. I had an uncomfortable feeling *that he was laughing at me.*
11. The local Indians are a people *to whom the writer is sympathetic.*
12. One had the impression *that this was a duty on which he found it hard to keep his mind.*
13. On the pavement, walking towards me, was Sheila. She was wearing a fur coat *which made her look a matron.*
14. Yet her daughter was marrying a man *she liked.*
15. I picked up the package *she had dropped.*
16. Harry brought in the consultant *of whom Charles thought most highly.*

Ex. 7. Supply the required articles for the countable nouns modified by attributive clauses in the following sentences:

1. He began to climb ... stairs, which were dark and smelt of cats.
2. I read until breakfast time ... novel I had borrowed from Marion.
3. You don't have to go into ... reasons why they hate each other.
4. What he said reminded me of ... film I had seen.
5. The lieutenant offered Grey ... cigarette which he refused.
6. He was wearing ... tweed jacket with leather inserts at the elbows, which was ... thing that I had never seen before.
7. Charlotte did not like ... idea that Arthur could be better at anything than Joe was.
8. This was ... sentence that made sense but had no meaning.
9. ... questions Ann asked always seemed to be ... questions to which Paul knew the answers.
10. Stanley knows ... woman in Milford who might be persuaded to come out by bus once a week to clean the house.
11. She was not ... little girl he had known, but she was not yet a woman either.
12. Her eyes were really like searchlights, picking out ... things that no one else saw.

13. ... fact that he would have independent means made her feel relieved.
14. It was not ... job that he liked.
15. Without knowing her at all I got ... feeling that she was the strongest person in that family.
16. Her husband made her presents of ... books she did not read.
17. And then he put forward ... amazing suggestion that she should turn down the offer and settle in London.
18. She wanted to fill ... wine-glasses which she had received as a wedding present.
19. I liked reading in ... garden, which was several steps below the level of the yard.
20. I have ... impression that you don't trust me.

Ex. 8. Say to which element of the combination "noun + s + noun" the article refers in the following sentences:

1. They lived in a two-foot shelter just outside *the officers' dug-out*.
2. He was eager to see Dennis, who was at *a boys' camp* somewhere.
3. There were two old men there and they were taken to *an old people's home*.
4. They made *a two hours' journey* in a train which stopped at every station.
5. After *a six months' period* of drought it started raining every day.
6. He was a tall young man with *a sad clown's face* under stiff red hair.
7. He returned *the old woman's smile*.
8. On the opposite side of the street was *the Sharpes' old car*.
9. She was *a miner's widow*.
10. Have you read *Bob's new novel*?

Ex. 9. Supply the required articles for nouns modified by other nouns in the genitive case:

1. He took ... doctor's arm and led him out of the room.
2. He went up to the third floor where ... assistants' office was located.
3. She lives in ... doll's house at the back of the garden.

4. That dog is a proper brute with strangers. I've known him bite clean through ... lady's stockings.
5. They were promised ... four days' rest.
6. With one hand on ... young man's shoulder, he went up the stairs.
7. She is out visiting ... neighbour's daughter.
8. Thirty years before she taught at ... smart girls' school.
9. He sat on the floor stroking ... cat's fur.
10. After ... two months' leave I was sent to ... Officers' Training Camp in Dorset.
11. In that mood I was unsuitable for attending ... parents' meeting at the school.
12. The scheme of study in ... Teachers' Training College is based upon compulsory and optional subjects.
13. The theatre had ... three weeks' ballet season.
14. Very early in my life I was taught not to believe ... girl's tears.
15. I was told by my friends not to believe ... girl's tears.
16. I stopped at the door to ... Holly's apartment.
17. ... chief's remarks left me indifferent.
18. She spoke guardedly, and her green eyes veiled themselves like ... parrot's eyes.
19. "Is that Mr Blair?" ... woman's voice asked in the telephone.
20. Then she leaped to one side as ... car's brakes screamed behind her.
21. By ... clown's grimace on his face I understood what he was suffering.

Ex. 10. Supply the required articles for nouns modified by *of*-phrases:

1. She was drinking ... glass of orange juice.
2. My friend is ... man of culture and wide reading.
3. His voice was determined, ... lines of his face had grown harsh.
4. Tom sat down on ... edge of a log and looked at ... glassy surface of the lake.
5. ... deposit of 5 pounds is payable by anyone who wishes to become ... reader of the library.
6. The college ordinary course was planned to run for ... full academic year of forty-seven weeks.
7. ... faint purring of a motor woke Julia the next morning.

8. "Come back in half an hour. I'll give you ... bottle of medicine," said the doctor.
9. The lamplight made his skin ... colour of red brick.
10. He found ... orchid of peculiar rarity.
11. He remembered ... soothing effect of her words.
12. He was disturbed by ... sound of a shot.
13. Willy leaned on ... back of the chair.
14. He always disliked anybody as soon as he was appointed to ... position of authority.
15. He always took ... line of least resistance.
16. I should like ... glass of water.
17. My grandfather was ... man of force and intellect.
18. From the kitchen came ... singing of a kettle on the stove.
19. "I'll have ... cup of tea with you," said my mother.
20. Heat up the water to ... temperature of 60° C.
21. Just then ... latch of the front door clicked, and my father came in.
22. From the sitting-room came ... chink of light beneath the door, and ... sound of whispers from my mother and her friends.
23. The wallpaper was dark-blue with ... design of conventional flowers.
24. This machinery drills holes to ... depth of two miles, or even more.
25. The woman moved her chair slightly toward ... right side of the path.
26. He sent me ... box of cigars.
27. In the crate there were ... boxes of cigars.
28. There was ... party of twelve people arriving at the hotel.
29. ... head of the department was a man named Coles.
30. He was a cheerful little boy who brought ... large packets of curious boiled sweets every Monday.
31. They had started from Amman early in the morning with ... temperature of 98° in the shade.

Ex. 11. Revision: supply the required articles for countable nouns in the following sentences:

1. ... girl from ... farm came once ... week to help clean ... house.
2. To them I must have appeared ... most undesirable visitor.
3. He sat down at ... piano and played ... piece that he had played in the morning.

4. "What does ... penniless person do in ... case like this?" Marion said.
5. It's not ... story I could tell anyone else.
6. ... car drove up to ... front of ... movie theatre. They got out. Jack looked up at ... poster in front of ... theatre. ... poster advertised ... picture called "The Stolen Midnight".
7. "... only thing she lacked was ... daughter, and little Betty filled that gap," the woman said.
8. For ... past hundred years ... parties at their house had been held according to ... same pattern.
9. They walked without speaking across ... lawn.
10. I know ... man who will lend me ... car.
11. His daughter is married to ... man who lives by his pen.
12. ... midges were dancing over the water. Close to us ... reeds were high and lush, and on ... other side of ... stream ... bank ran up steeply, so that we seemed alone, alone in ... hot still garden.
13. I got ... impression that he wanted to tell me something.
14. He merely said: "Ah, that's ... question nobody can answer, lad."
15. Her people were too poor to provide her with ... books and ... proper clothes.
16. Mr March looked over ... trees at ... roofs and towers, all soft and opal grey in the moist sunlight.
17. ... letter is supposed to make you see ... things in a different light.
18. He gave ... suspicious look to ... box I carried.
19. I found that they wanted me no more than they wanted ... company of ... dog or ... cat.
20. ... breeze blew some dead leaves onto ... terrace.
21. He tried to give ... impression that one word from him would be enough.
22. She herself was busy with ... gardening basket and ... garden-ing gloves.
23. Keeping in ... shadow of ... house, he crept to ... back door.
24. He was writing ... note for his wife when ... outer door swung open, and ... short man of thirty came in.
25. Harvest was over. ... leaves were red and golden on ... trees.
26. He took ... cigar from his mouth and blew away ... long trail of smoke.

27. ... things are getting out of hand.
28. He could not help liking ... tall graceful young man who was standing beside him.
29. ... gates of ... sports ground stood open, and we walked along ... road, under ... chestnut trees.
30. He went to ... corner of ... room and gazed at ... bookshelf.
31. I thought that English was ... language he had learnt from ... books.
32. You seem very fond of saying ... things behind my back.
33. There's hardly ... man among us who knows ... mountains as you do.
34. She sat on ... sofa, relating slowly and minutely ... plot of ... play which she had seen.
35. He drained his glass and set it down with ... air of ... man who had come to ... decision.
36. Yet I knew that in ... sense my mother was vainer than her sister.
37. Williams stood in ... middle of ... room, with ... expression of ... child from whom ... sweet has been taken.
38. Finally she stopped him in front of ... small picture. In silence and for a long time they stood looking at ... picture. It was ... very good picture.
39. There were ... three shelters on ... cliff between ... steps down to ... sea and ... lighthouse.
40. One winter afternoon she had been buying something in ... little antique shop in Curson Street. It was ... shop she liked. And ... man who kept ... shop was fond of serving her.
41. It is ... portrait of ... friend I told you about the other day.
42. She wished to speak to him about ... important message she had received from London.
43. All ... presents that he had given her were in their usual places.
44. They turned off ... road into ... drive that wound between ... tall trees.
45. He looked at ... figure that was standing on ... upper step.

Ex. 12. Revision: supply the required articles for countable nouns in the following text:

a) ... king was ... very learned person. Yet, when he saw me walk on ... two legs he thought I was ... kind of mechanism made by some clever artist. But when he heard my voice, and found that

I could speak like ... person he was greatly astonished. He was not satisfied with ... story I told him of ... manner in which I had come into his kingdom. He thought that ... girl who found me and her father had taught me those words in order to sell me at ... better price.

He sent for ... three great scholars who were then in ... country. ... gentlemen, after they had examined me carefully, were of ... different opinions about me. However, after much argument, they agreed that I was only ... freak of nature. I was so small that I could not defend myself against ... other animals, they said, I could not run as fast as ... other animals, nor climb ... trees, not dig ... holes in ... earth to hide myself in. I was not ... dwarf, for ... queen's dwarf, ... smallest person ever known in ... kingdom, was nearly 30 feet high. They did not know what I was. Therefore I was ... freak of nature. Such ... conclusion would have satisfied ... philosophers of Europe who reason in ... same way.

After they had told me about their conclusion, I begged for permission to say ... word or two. I told ... king that I came from ... country where there lived ... people of my size. ... animals, ... trees and ... houses were all in proportion. Therefore in my country I might be able to defend myself, and get food for myself. To this they only answered with ... smile of contempt.

b) The teacher rode to ... place where ... small brook crossed ... road. ... few logs, laid side by side, formed ... bridge over ... brook. This had always been considered ... haunted place, and as he approached it, his heart began to beat fast. He gave his horse ... kick; ... animal rushed forward but stopped just by ... bridge so suddenly that he nearly flew over ... horse's head. On ... edge of ... brook stood something big and black. It did not move. The hair of ... frightened teacher rose upon his head with terror. It was too late to turn back. Therefore he asked in ... trembling voice: "Who are you?" He received no answer. Just then ... thing began to move, and stood in ... middle of ... road. Though the night was dark, ... teacher could see ... gigantic horseman mounted on ... huge black horse. He became horror-struck. But the horror grew still worse when he saw that ... head which should have been on ... horseman's shoulders, was carried before him. ... teacher kicked his horse and went away, ... figure following. He looked behind him. He saw ... figure raise ... head and hurl it at him. He tried to get out of its way, but it was too late. It struck his head

... terrible blow — he fell into the dust, and his horse, ... black horse and ... headless rider passed by like ... whirlwind. When a little later ... teacher came to, he found ... hollow pumpkin by his side.

c) ... story that impressed me concerned ... old Indian who kept ... snake in ... box. It was ... hooded cobra, and ... box had ... thick glass lid. Whenever there were ... new arrivals in ... barracks he always made ... same bet with them — to double their money if they could keep ... hand on ... glass for fifteen seconds. It seemed ... easy bet; ... glass was too thick to break. But as soon as ... snake struck at ... glass, no one could control ... impulse to snatch ... hand away. In this way, ... old man made ... great deal of money from ... new arrivals. One day, ... soldier with ... wooden hand asked if he could be allowed to wear ... glove while he laid his hand on ... box. ... old Indian agreed; he was aware that ... glove makes no difference to ... reflex of self-defense. ... soldier laid ... high stake. Everyone in ... barracks gathered round, hoping to see ... old man beaten at last. They were not disappointed; ... soldier kept his gloved hand on ... box while ... cobra struck again and again. ... old man suspected trickery and demanded to see ... hand, but ... crowd of ... British soldiers felt he had been fairly beaten, and forced him to pay up.

d) We drank tea, then we all went out for ... walk before it grew dark. ... children were gathering ... chestnuts in ... woods, and ... others were playing with ... kites in ... meadow on ... edge of ... wood. Some of ... best chestnuts were on ... highest branches, and they were throwing ... sticks to try to knock them down. Monty saw ... opportunity to display his athleticism; ... lower part of ... trunk was too smooth to climb, but he asked me to bend down so that he could stand on my shoulders. Then he leapt on to ... low branch, and swarmed up to ... top. ... boys cheered as he broke off ... branch and threw it down. Then Monty dropped down and slipped into his overcoat, and we walked on.

We stopped on ... outskirts of ... wood above ... village, looked at ... view for ... few minutes, and then turned to walk back. At that moment ... boy came running up to us: "Mister, can you help us to get ... kite down? It's stuck in ... tree."

We followed ... boy back into ... wood. When we saw ... tree we felt doubtful; it was ... very tall elm, and there were ... thorn bushes round its base that made it almost unapproachable. ... two

more trees grew nearby whose branches touched it, but ... branches looked very thin. ... owner of ... kite had already climbed one of ... smaller trees and was trying to reach ... kite by throwing ... stave cut from ... hedge. It was already dusk, so it was not easy to see how ... kite could be approached. However, Monty saw that he was expected to climb, so he threw off his overcoat and jacket, and climbed. He managed to get ... great deal higher up ... smaller tree than ... kite's owner had climbed, and could touch ... kite with ... stave; but ... string was tangled in ... branches, and he could not dislodge it. I watched this for ... moment; then, when no one was looking, dropped my own coat and climbed up ... other tree. I soon saw that I could get from here on to ... elm if I was willing to jump across ... space of about six feet; it was not as dangerous as it looked from below, because ... branch from which I would jump was several feet above ... branch on which I would land. My light weight was in my favour; I got into ... good position, steadied myself and jumped. I managed to scramble on to ... other branch without difficulty. From there on, it was easy. I climbed ... tree, which was as uncomplicated as ... ladder, untangled ... string, and let ... kite float across to Monty who caught it and took it down. Then I went down myself, descending ... lower part of ... trunk as if it had been ... drainpipe; this made my hands dirty, and took ... skin off my ankles, but it was not difficult or dangerous.

Nothing was said about it on ... way home. When we got back into ... cottage Monty and I washed our hands at ... sink. By the time I was ready, I knew I had missed ... six o'clock bus home. Monty then said that we could walk down to ... village and have ... drink at ... pub before we caught ... next bus.

In ... village, Monty suggested that we should go into ... pub. But I said that I was not yet allowed in ... pubs, being only seventeen. So Monty went inside and brought ... drinks out to us on ... tray. We sat on ... bench, feeling very cold and envying the warmth and light inside. By the time we had finished ... drinks I was warm and happy but we had to run for ... bus.

Ex. 13. Say in which of the following sentences you are dealing with generic singulars and generic plurals and explain the use of all the articles:

1. Nature provides *animals* with *weapons* of defence; *the snake*, *the scorpion*, *the bee* have their sting.
2. *The French*, he thought, are always finding occasions to block traffic.

3. "Do you know why *Americans* like fried stuff?" John asked. "They've lost their taste. From morning to night they are chewing gum and drinking Coke."
4. There was nothing of *the artist* in her.
5. *Man's* flight to the moon and his safe return to the earth has now left the realm of science fiction.
6. "*The Italians* are a wonderfully hospitable people," she said.
7. They wouldn't put out a finger to keep a *hard-working little man* from going down *the drain*.
8. From the door to the end of the line *the unemployed* began hopefully discussing their families.
9. But the desire for approbation is perhaps the most deeply seated instinct of civilized *man*.
10. *The Tories* were trying hard to attack the mining industry.
11. *The article* is generally placed before *the noun* or its attribute.
12. I'm sure *the Labour* could find a *better man* for *the job*.
13. *The ignorant* naturally fear those who are interested in things they don't understand.
14. "The respect for property is ingrained in *the English soul*," she remarked.
15. At birth *man* is not yet a *man*. To become one he must provide himself with the things that make *man a man*. In other words, with that which distinguishes *man* from *animals*.
16. She loved to talk on the quality of television entertainment for *the young*.
17. It was a drama depicting the life of *the aristocracy*.
18. "*A man* is fundamentally honest," he observed.
19. *The police* said that *Indians* could come freely to the town and do their shopping.
20. "*Boys* of your age ought to be in bed by eight," she said.
21. *Chemists* tell you that matter is never completely destroyed.
22. "Do you know why *American women* live longer than *American men*, Jimmy?" "Because they sleep as long as they like in the morning." "Then my ambition is to live as long as *the American Woman*," Jimmy said lying back on the bed again.
23. I spoke of the economic position of *woman*.

Ex. 14. Supply the required articles for nouns in the following sentences, paying special attention to their generic use:

1. He killed reluctantly those animals he liked. He hated ... *mink* because it was ... most voracious little predator in ... *bush*. He

- liked ... skunk because it was fearless, he liked ... bear, because it was ... great fool, he liked ... racoon because it was clean, ... beaver because it was clever, but he despised ... fox, because it was cunning, ... wolf because it was ruthless, and ... squirrel because it was ... nuisance.
2. ... English are ... political nation, and I was often asked to ... houses where politics were ... ruling interest.
 3. Princeton University is said to have collected ... data on the relative intelligence of ... men of ... various professions. According to them ... mathematicians rate highest, with ... physicists a close second.
 4. There is so much of ... schoolgirl still about her.
 5. " ... Swiss haven't had ... war in a hundred and fifty years and what have they produced?" Jimmy shrugged: " ... cuckoo clock."
 6. When they are hurt, ... tough usually suffer more than ... tender.
 7. He is ... man who is always ready to work round ... clock.
 8. Hopkins was ... rich man as well as ... successful novelist.
 9. ... man does not live by bread alone.
 10. While waiting for ... flight, and without ever leaving ... terminal, ... visitor could shop, take ... bath, have his hair cut and suit pressed.
 11. She spent ... great part of her life looking after ... sick.
 12. ... roses are ... only flowers that everybody is certain to know.
 13. " ... French are ... easy-going people," her father used to say.
 14. Slowly but surely ... man is conquering Nature.
 15. "Only ... two kinds of ... people," she said, "arrive in ... noiseless cars: ... millionaires and ... police. Since we have no acquaintances among ... former and an ever-widening acquaintance with ... latter, I deducted who had arrived."
 16. In many things it is hard to tell the difference between ... Labour and ... Tories.
 17. No man born of ... woman can live in such conditions.
 18. In the town there were lots of shops kept by ... Chinese.
 19. "Do you notice the way ... Italians drive?" Maurice asked. "Well," Jack said, "it's better than the way ... Frenchmen drive."
 20. Beyond ... river, ... Germans had their lines.
 21. ... auxiliary verbs have no meaning of their own and are used to build up ... analytical forms of ... verb.
 22. She learned entirely by ... eye.

23. Learning comes easier to ... young.
24. I was told not to talk to ... strangers.
25. ... public are requested to keep off ... grass in ... park.
26. ... woman can't resist buying ... cosmetic articles in ... shops.
27. I thought they were ... French.
28. I believe there is ... theory that ... men and ... women emerge finer and stronger after suffering.
29. ... Future Tense is not used in ... adverbial clauses of time and condition.

Ex. 15. Explain the use of articles with nouns used predicatively in the following sentences:

1. He was *a lawyer* by profession.
2. Aunt Laura was *the widow* of an auctioneer.
3. When Murry was appointed *editor* of "The Literary Gazette" his salary became eight hundred a year.
4. As it was, she was *the best-looking woman* there.
5. Jasper was *the son* of my father's elder brother.
6. My father had been *Chairman* of an organization of doctors in New York.
7. He was *a talkative fellow*.
8. They made him *a major-general* after he left the headquarters.
9. We were *children* of our class and time.
10. "Heavens! Look at the dog. Or is he a lion?" "He comes from Newfoundland and he's more *lamb than lion*."
11. Hart was *an uneasy nervous man* who broke into flashes of speech.
12. I wouldn't be *Prime Minister* if they asked me on their knees.
13. Johnson is made *secretary* of the club.
14. John could not make up his mind about the blackmail. He had been led to think that McGrath himself was *the blackmailer*, or at least *a blackmailer* because he had the personality to be *a blackmailer*.
15. She was *the only Liberal* in their family.
16. After some most astonishing adventures in New Guinea he made himself *king* of some wild tribe.
17. No, you are getting this quite wrong. She's *the wife* of a friend of mine.
18. Prynne was *manager* of the estate up the river.
19. With a face like yours I'd be at least *the president* of a steel company.

20. The waiter was an old friend of mine, and at that season he was boots, porter, chambermaid and cook as well.

Ex. 16. Supply the required articles, paying special attention to the nouns used predicatively:

1. He was at that time ... lieutenant in ... British Army.
2. Mr Richardson was ... owner and editor-in-chief of the publishing house.
3. Rudy had ... gift of being liked. That was why he had been elected ... president of his class three times in a row.
4. She was ... wife of ... doctor.
5. Philip was not ... humbug but ... hard and realistic man.
6. At the time I was ... manager of ... Crawford Street branch of ... bank.
7. I saw ... group of ... workmen coming toward us. One of them was ... fat, red-faced man, and I presume he was ... foreman.
8. Mr Knight was ... excessively lazy man, who preferred to sit down.
9. It's ... girl called Betsy. She's ... boss's secretary.
10. Henry Greene was ... son of ... general.
11. It seemed that Aunt Milly had been ... only relative to offer practical help.
12. His study was ... darkest room in ... house.
13. His father was ... good soldier.
14. I might be ... leader of ... party instead of you.
15. His wife and Sheila were ... active, strong women, who loved using their muscles.
16. I'm going to be ... president of this company.
17. This fellow is ... man I want for the job.
18. He was ... manager of ... largest estate in ... district.
19. ... man who wore ... glasses was ... husband of Mrs Holt.
20. "We are merely ... tourists," Tom said.
21. "She is ... very silly creature," he said.
22. There seemed no reason why he should not eventually be made ... Governor.
23. "I call it ... mediocre play," he said.
24. On ... way back to our compartment we passed Natalie Winter. She was ... very shy woman. She was also ... star of the season.
25. She is proud of being ... daughter of ... poet.
26. If anyone could tell her what Mr Potter wanted to know, Mrs Ferguson was ... woman.

27. Even before George introduced me I knew that ... man was ... senior partner.
28. "They've made me ... head of the department," he whispered.
29. I know he is ... sculptor.
30. Katherine was ... wife of ... poor clerk in ... Ministry of Education.

Ex. 17. Explain the use of articles with nouns used in apposition:

1. The girl he loved was Laura Merton, *the daughter* of a retired colonel who had lost his temper and his digestion in India.
2. It wouldn't be hard to make up a story for *Uncle Philip*.
3. For some days Hotchkisson, *the solicitor* to whom Eden had deputed the case, sent me no news.
4. He had been to the tomb of Hafiz *the poet*.
5. Two men, *two passengers*, came along the gangway, and she amused herself by trying to guess whether they were single or married.
6. Charles was dancing with his cousin, *a good-looking, strapping girl*.
7. Even Mr March, *the most realistic man* there, could not forgive me.
8. He now arranged with Spender, *editor* of "The Times Literary Supplement", to write articles on current French literature.
9. They drove up to the terminal, *a brightly lighted and air-conditioned building*.
10. I was chatting with the man's wife, *a lady in purple trousers*, when he was called to the telephone.
11. He accepted the post of *secretary* to a diplomatic mission.
12. In the rear of the car, Margaret Howden, *wife* of the President of the firm, said to her husband: "You look tired."
13. He's *Doctor Evans*, *the nephew* of your host tonight.
14. The principal of the school decided to send *the boy Chalmers* back home.
15. That evening I was introduced to *Captain Riley*.

Ex. 18. Supply the required articles, paying special attention to the nouns used in apposition:

1. Then Rudy saw ... Professor Denton, ... head of ... History and Economics department.
2. The sun was hanging over the hill behind them, ... large red ball which had lost its fierceness.

3. ... Philip's wife, ... biggest snob in ... family, invited me to tea.
4. Then we were joined by ... two women, ... acquaintances of Charles and Ann.
5. Across from her sat Delaney, ... producer of the picture.
6. I said: "This is Mary Summers, ... old school friend of mine."
7. I have got ... job of ... secretary to our new MP.
8. ... figure 5 is ... same for ... Russian or ... American while ... word "five" is not.
9. ... Admiral Lacey was ... red-faced man.
10. They sat in ... drawing-room round the portable wireless, ... present from Fleur.
11. Then he walked down Broadway, ... main street of ... town.
12. She was ... daughter of ... well-known theatrical manager, ... willowy, wispy, fair-haired girl with ... colourless eyes.
13. He assumed ... role of ... breadwinner for ... family.
14. ... General Holt withdrew his plan.
15. They had lunch at Hexley, ... small village on ... coast.
16. He was their favourite nephew, ... son of their dead elder sister.
17. Grant got little information from Andy, ... mail-car driver.
18. He introduced me to ... girl Patricia, and I was glad of an opportunity to look at her face.
19. Peter hit so hard that he broke my arm. I fell to ... ground yelling. Waters, ... gym teacher, carried me off ... field.
20. We spoke to ... Philip's secretary, ... youngish man called Williams.
21. Within a short time, Gregory married Zalia Phelps, ... daughter of Angus Phelps, ... planter in Georgia.
22. Sam, ... man who ran ... elevator, didn't like Peter.
23. Smiley, ... captain of ... team, got up on ... bench and told them of his plan.
24. ... nurse Everett, ... bony woman of fifty, herself opened ... door.
25. He would be given ... post of ... Minister of Justice.

Ex. 19. Supply the required articles for nouns introduced by *as*:

1. I then stayed on with the company as ... manager.
2. The education office in the town hall had asked the school to recommend someone as ... junior clerk.

3. He was universally known as ... author of the book.
4. Margaret, who had not long graduated at Oxford, was working as ... secretary to a Labour member.
5. His father once occupied this room as ... president of the Town Council.
6. In 1949 I found myself working as ... clerk in the offices of the local electricity board.
7. She had given the watch to Julia as ... birthday present.
8. Ronald had been invited to the party as ... appropriate partner for Ann.
9. Maybe he'll take you as ... assistant.
10. After a time Mr Jones engaged the young poet as ... tutor to his three sons.
11. He describes himself as ... independent radical.
12. He took for granted his position as ... head of the family.
13. His reputation as ... painter is well established now.
14. In 1939 I began to write a story with a senior civil servant as ... main character.
15. At the party, Katherine was acting as ... hostess.
16. I thought I would get a post as ... surgeon on a ship.

Ex. 20. Supply the required articles, paying special attention to the nouns used in certain syntactic patterns:

1. My friend Herbert Holt is ... professor of English literature in one of ... smaller universities of the Middle West.
2. What sort of ... family has he?
3. I don't know any of ... people living in the house next door.
4. "Well, ... boy, you are not going out tonight, are you?" his mother asked.
5. Grant is indifferent to that sort of ... thing.
6. I did not swear as some of ... boys in ... form habitually did.
7. "Yeats is one of ... greatest poets of ... age," I said.
8. We sat ... side by ... side smoking and thinking.
9. It was ... sort of ... occasion when one wants to help but doesn't know how.
10. He didn't want to walk home with any of ... other fellows.
11. Marion, like most of ... girls in ... group, came from ... lower-middle-class family.
12. They cleaned ... house from ... top to ... bottom.
13. What ... long way you have travelled since your first book!

14. What ... kind of ... place are your friends living in?
15. I recognized some of ... facts.
16. He was ... man who wandered mysteriously from ... hotel to ... hotel.
17. What ... odd collection you've got in here!
18. Mrs Warren bought one of ... elm-shaded villas at ... end of the High Street.
19. She would know ... names of nearly all of ... people who lived there.
20. She kept the bills on the mantelpiece, and none of ... shopkeepers was allowed to wait ... hour for his money.
21. While they went from ... room to ... room, Blair explained ... purpose of his visit.
22. He turned to me and said, "What ... extraordinary names these boys seem to have!"

Ex. 21. Revision: supply the required articles:

1. Jarvinen was ... Finn, with ... extraordinary blue eyes.
2. She started ... motor and turned carefully in ... muddy lane. She drove back through ... bridge again. ... clattering of ... car over ... loose floorboards reminded her of ... sound she had taken for ... truck passing ... cottage in the night. Of course, it had been ... car going through ... bridge.
3. I felt like ... prince who is schooled from ... age of five to ... idea of becoming ... king.
4. Amy put ... kettle on and got out ... cups and ... saucers, ... spoons, ... sugar bowl.
5. She was married to ... man called Bronson. He was ... planter. He was ... manager of ... estate up ... river.
6. Outside in ... street, he called for ... taxi at ... top of his voice, and set off in chase of it like ... young man.
7. Thames Street was ... broad road on ... edge of ... town half ... mile from ... park. Most of ... houses in it had been built just before ... war.
8. You can't treat Charles like ... child. He is ... grown man.
9. ... pleasantest man in ... office was ... big ex-paratrooper named John Duncan. He was six feet tall, had ... face of ... farmer, and seemed to like everybody and everything.
10. I have married ... Philip's widow. I am ... richest man in ... town today, my friend.

11. All ... big hotels are very much the same.
12. Does it occur to you how boring that sort of ... scene is?
13. He felt ... gentle touch of ... Betty's hand on his shoulder.
14. The plane flew at ... speed of over 1,560 m.p.h.
15. There high society seldom admits ... outsiders into its midst. ... politicians live in their own corruptive circle, ... bourgeoisie, great and small, frequent one another.
16. Her father had started life as ... errand boy, then became ... draper's assistant and was now ... owner of ... prosperous little business.
17. "What ... beautiful portraits," she said, "and what ... lucky man you must be!"
18. Opposite ... window stood ... full-length painting of Charles as ... small boy.
19. Several of ... boys at the new school came from ... same part of ... town.
20. Who is ... best man at this sort of ... thing in your office?
21. Trevor was ... painter. Indeed, ... few people escape that nowadays. But he was also ... artist, and ... artists are rather rare.
22. "What did he do?" "He put ... bomb in ... woman's bicycle basket in ... busy London street and blew ... four people to pieces, including ... woman."
23. I followed his gaze. ... two men dressed in ... white coveralls were carrying ... large wooden crate up ... path, followed by ... other man carrying ... tool box. "Over here," my friend called. They put ... crate down in front of him. "Everything ready?" he asked ... man with ... tool box.
24. It's ... kind of ... secret I'm not bad at keeping.
25. Bert Smith was ... art lover, or at least he bought ... pictures.
26. As she came out of ... store, ... woman crossed her path with ... arms full of ... sofa cushions, and went to ... car parked down ... street.
27. He often told ... people that he was ... Irishman but he couldn't fool ... Irish, they saw through him.
28. It was just as stupid to condemn him as to condemn ... wolf because he ravens or ... cobra because he strikes.
29. It may be that ... police are interested in ... man.
30. He was ... great believer in ... man.
31. I thought of him as ... equal.
32. He would have been ... captain of ... team if he had been less unpopular.

33. They were ... greatest friends, all four of them.
34. He was introduced to Carlotta Lee, ... girl who played ... leading part.
35. I gathered that she was ... widow of ... colonial governor.
36. There was still ... great deal of ... schoolboy about my father.
37. I did this purely as ... favour to you.
38. His battalion had hardly started ... attack when ... Germans ran away leaving their arms behind.
39. He explained that he was ... head of ... department.
40. Slang is ... great pitfall. Henry James in his English stories made constant use of it, but never quite as ... English do, so that instead of getting ... colloquial effect he was after, it too often gives ... English reader ... uncomfortable jolt.
41. He looked like ... manager of ... branch office in ... insurance company.
42. ... driver was ... strong athletic young man.
43. On the following Monday I left West Hatch, ... village where we lived.
44. ... friend of his, ... carpenter by trade, had given him ... job.
45. Philip had been ... hero of his childhood.
46. They were ... handsomest couple in London, and had not ... penny between them.
47. He left his wife in ... car as ... guard while he went back to ... house.
48. ... nouns are divided into ... common nouns and ... proper names.

Ex. 22. Explain the use of articles with uncountable abstract nouns in the following sentences:

1. She had attached herself to *youth* and *hope* and *seriousness* and now they had failed her more than *age* and *despair*.
2. Harry rested in the *certainty* that his duty was to set an example of loving kindness.
3. His face had a *calmness* that was new to her.
4. There was a look of such deep *loneliness* on her mother's face that Lucy felt her heart turn over in pity.
5. The *ownership* of the land was less important to him than the *work* and *sweat* he had put into it.
6. However, I don't propose to discuss *politics*, *sociology* or *metaphysics* with you.
7. I was wrapped in the *security* of *childhood*.
8. An instinctive *kindness* made him want to protect Gorin.

9. After dinner, of which he ate little, thinking with dreary *satisfaction* how *grief* destroys *appetite*, he went round to see his confessor.
10. She anticipated the *time* when they would begin the *life* which she was sure would give her at last perfect *happiness*.
11. The rest of the meeting passed without *interruption*.
12. We were having spring *weather* when it began to freeze again.
13. *Work* got done somehow and she never troubled her head as to how.
14. *Hospitality* was a passion with him.
15. Each moment was sensually enhanced because of the *love* inside me.
16. He nodded briefly without *comment*.
17. She said it without *malice*, there even was genuine *sympathy* in her voice.
18. He nodded and turned his eyes away with a sense of guilty *discomfort*.
19. "Yes, the dilemma we're in is of the greatest *importance*," said Paine.
20. Anthony read the book with the most passionate *attention*.
21. He could tell a story with dramatic *intensity*.
22. I think that we must all have a feeling of profound *satisfaction*.
23. "Mind you," said Aunt Milly, "I shouldn't wonder if you're no better at school than the *average*."
24. She talked about herself with a *frankness* that startled me.
25. He spoke with the *awkwardness* of a man unused to words.
26. During his first talk with them he felt a certain *uneasiness*.
27. He put the situation before her, weighing the pros and cons with unflinching *impartiality*.
28. He had been brought up to admire French *culture*.
29. When I heard the *news* I felt perfect *relief*.
30. There is in the streets of Paris a peculiar *vitality* which excites the blood and prepares the soul for the *unexpected*.

Ex. 23. Supply the required articles, paying special attention to uncountable abstract nouns:

1. He went back home with ... bitterness he had never known before.
2. This thought gave him ... immense satisfaction.

3. She thought that Francis would give her ... happiness. Guy couldn't.
4. When I had received the invitation I felt ... certain curiosity.
5. With ... mock gallantry he took her hand and leaned over to kiss it.
6. There was ... quick, startled wonder in her eyes.
7. He was ashamed of ... harshness that leapt to his tongue.
8. He rose from ... chair and stood by ... window in ... agitated silence.
9. She went back to bed feeling ... curious emptiness.
10. He spoke with ... slow earnestness and his habitually solemn face had ... outraged look.
11. I had ... terrible youth though my father was ... great man.
12. I feel ... real fear as I watch Robert suffering.
13. I felt ... malicious delight at ... absurdity of his position.
14. ... music and ... philosophy are like wine — they are intended to enhance ... pleasure of being alive.
15. He spoke of it with ... boyish eagerness.
16. His confession forced upon me ... truth that I had never permitted myself to see.
17. ... doubt is ... essence of ... excitement.
18. The woman was on her feet with ... swiftness amazing in ... person of her age.
19. He enjoyed ... warmth of her approval.
20. Dave played ... piano with ... peculiar delicacy.
21. At that early hour ... glassy sea often had ... immobility which seemed to make all ... earthy sorrows of little consequence.
22. He arranged everything with ... competence.
23. His eyes were so dark that the iris made one colour with the pupil and this gave them ... peculiar intensity.
24. As she learned to understand him better she discovered ... rare sensitiveness that lay under his aggressive manner.
25. He observed his guest with ... amused detachment.
26. He sometimes referred to his daughter's marriage with ... gloom.
27. The young man said good-bye with ... jauntiness which deceived no one.
28. A look of ... joy came into his eyes.
29. For ... next two days he was in ... state of ... greatest excitement.

30. ... kindness was not one of ... things she had normally met with in ... life.
31. ... ancient jealousy invaded his heart.
32. ... courage and resourcefulness of ... women perpetually amazed him.
33. ... humour teaches ... tolerance.
34. I have ... greatest admiration for Racine.
35. My first inclination was not to give it ... serious attention.
36. He was sorry to leave his friend in ... comparative poverty.
37. I did not realize how motley are ... qualities that go to make up ... human being. Now I am well aware that ... pettiness and ... grandeur, ... malice and ... charity, ... hatred and ... love can find place ... side by ... side in ... same human heart.
38. In ... tone of ... most extreme politeness he said: "I think we had better go downstairs."
39. There was ... refinement in his face and ... spirituality that was oddly moving.
40. In ... acute distress I turned to ... window.

Ex. 24. Supply the required articles, paying special attention to the nouns *society* and *life*:

1. I enjoyed listening to her talk of ... Viennese society in ... days of the Hapsburgs.
2. And although ... society of my friends remained relatively the same, ... new influences had entered, ... new winds had sprung up.
3. I had given up taking my wife into ... society.
4. That night Mark talked to us of ... freedom, of how, if we had ... will, we could make ... better society, in which our children would stand ... fair chance.
5. My aunt enjoyed ... society of young ladies and gentlemen.
6. And he introduced me into ... society, different from anything I had ever known.
7. He was overawed when he went into ... society.
8. Holden believed that his people could create ... society in which ... men could live in ... peace and in ... decent comfort.
9. ... two houses were only ... few miles apart, but in ... society ... distance was vast.
10. He found ... conventionalities of ... Army life irksome. He began to feel a longing for ... more open, less restricted life.

11. If my brother thinks that ... life I am leading now is a razzle he's a lot to learn.
12. After ... brief glimpse of ... working class life, she rushed away to put into print her newly acquired knowledge.
13. The elapsing seconds seemed to draw ... very life out of him.
14. He did not want to send his boy to a school where he would get ... extravagant tastes and acquire ... ideas unfitted to ... station in ... life he would ultimately occupy.

Ex 25. Supply the required articles, paying special attention to the nouns that do not admit of the indefinite article:

1. Everyone hates to have to go out in ... rainy weather.
2. ... work gave him ... increasing pleasure.
3. ... weather was so warm that we decided to go swimming.
4. He had ... romantic affection for all ... manifestations of ... nature.
5. What ... fine weather we're having today!
6. It would be ... fun for George to be ... Governor and for her to be ... Governor's wife.
7. At first I found it difficult to understand ... English money.
8. I turned the radio on and listened to ... nine o'clock news.
9. In ... warm weather I spent most of the afternoon reading out in ... garden.
10. That morning ... nature was at its loveliest.
11. I did not enjoy my holiday because ... weather was very cold.
12. What's ... news?
13. "Congratulations. That was ... very smart work altogether," he said.
14. Have you heard ... news?
15. We have been having ... frosty weather for ... week.
16. I lent him five pounds last week. Do you think he will pay ... money back?
17. ... birds don't like this sort of ... weather.
18. "James is not coming tonight." "Oh, that is ... bad news."
19. You ought to stay at home in ... cold weather.
20. I know ... work I've done is ... good work, the best of my life.
21. He began to think of ... fun he had planned for this day.
22. ... weather is changing for the worse.
23. Your friend is ... great fun.
24. I'm not the man to give you ... advice.

25. He suddenly became aware that Mike had stopped ... work.
26. Now he remembered that he had given ... permission to re.
move ... crate.
27. That's ... best news I've heard yet.
28. We hid his watch for ... fun.
29. Uncle Nick made me feel that we had ... tremendous work to do.
30. Do you like such ... weather?
31. ... news from home is bad.
32. I'm going to cut ... grass in ... garden. It's ... hard work, but
it has to be done.
33. Oh, this is not ... friendly advice.
34. I was trying not to think about ... work I was set to do.
35. Even if he comes with ... news I'm hoping for, the situation
will remain difficult for a couple of days.
36. I just want to ask you for ... advice.
37. ... advice he had got from most of his friends was to turn
down ... offer.
38. The Lieutenant told us to come back with ... information. So
we must find out how many guns they have.
39. "I didn't work there long. I fell ill and had to give up the job."
"That's ... hard luck."
40. What ... good luck that I found you in!

Ex. 26. Explain the use of articles with nouns denoting names of materials:

1. "You're drinking nothing." "You know I never do. *Wine* is
such horrid *stuff*!"
2. Several other men dropped in, and the *air* was soon thick with
tobacco *smoke*.
3. Roy was already sliding down the slope toward the *water* far
below. He was churning up the soft *snow* as he allowed his
body to carry itself hurtling down the slope.
4. Oh, I don't like *tea*, I'll have *lemonade* instead.
5. "Would you like to have a hot *chocolate*?" Mrs Page asked.
6. But look at the *dirt* on that suit. You must have it cleaned.
7. They've taken to giving you extremely bad *teas* in the club.
8. He was covered in fresh *snow*, his thin cheeks pink and flushed.
9. When the *soup* was finished Bertha turned round to the fire.
10. She was still warm with the memory of Milly's pancakes
which had dripped with *butter*, and of the *coffee* which had
been served with real *cream*.

Ex. 27. Supply the required articles, paying special attention to uncountable concrete nouns (names of materials):

1. "I shan't have ... fish," said Robin.
2. Her room smelled of ... soot and ... face powder.
3. ... mud was drying rapidly, but ... car was still stuck.
4. James asked for ... water and drank it thirstily.
5. On the travel he drank ... tea, but in the cabin it was ... thick coffee with ... sugar and ... tinned milk.
6. They found plenty of ... signs of ... deer in ... snow.
7. ... men moved heavily as though they were walking in ... thick mud.
8. They were buying ... new furniture.
9. ... equipment from ... wrecked plane has to be saved.
10. She had ... brown shining hair which hung down on either side of her face.
11. Dinner began in ... silence. In ... silence ... soup was finished. It was ... excellent soup, though a little thick. And ... fish was brought. Someone said: "It's the first spring day!" "Spring!" said John. "There isn't ... breath of ... air." No one replied. ... fish was taken away. Then ... maid brought ... champagne.
12. Your design requires ... very expensive equipment.
13. ... boss took up ... pen, picked ... fly out of ... ink, and shook it on to ... piece of ... blotting paper.
14. Monty and I drank ... beer.
15. "I knit them myself," I heard ... woman say, "of ... thick grey wool."
16. She taught ... children to work with ... paper, which could be crumpled up at ... end of ... lesson, with ... plasticine, which could be squeezed back into ... shapeless lumps, with ... bricks and ... stones and ... coloured balls which could be jumbled together again.
17. She stirred ... melting sugar with ... spoon.
18. But John treated me like ... precious china.
19. Father, at ... head of ... table, began to slice ... hot meat.
20. Barber went to ... bar and ordered ... coffee, then changed it to ... brandy because ... coffee wasn't enough after ... talk like that.

Ex. 28. Revision: supply the required articles:

1. It would have been as difficult to think of him being ... master of ... house as it would have been to think of his wife not being ... mistress of it.

2. ... landscape was flat and covered with ... snow frozen hard.
3. He munched ... sandwich with ... neurotic violence.
4. This is ... story and not ... piece of ... history.
5. But I won't have ... cup of ... tea. I'll have ... coffee.
6. He told himself it was ... stupid case of ... injured pride.
7. Mrs Peck was ... very young woman who wore ... dirty yellow sweater and ... thick tweed skirt.
8. Only ... champagne was served at ... ball.
9. ... huge Saturday night sadness descended upon Laura.
10. He might at least have ... decency not to read ... letter now.
11. Dancing, ... girls banged into each other and stamped on each other's feet. ... girl who was ... gentleman always clutched you so.
12. "It is ... funny thing, but every time I dance with you ... dances seem very short." "They are. My fiancée is ... leader of ... orchestra."
13. He was ... only living relative I had, and when I was ... kid I'd lived with him. He'd worked as ... fireman on ... railroad.
14. It was ... simple statement of ... fact, but there was ... certain wistfulness behind it. My wife did not hear ... wistfulness.
15. He came in with ... three cups of ... black coffee.
16. Schumann was ... composer he liked best.
17. He had ... series of ... landscapes of Tibet by ... Russian painter Nicholas Roerich.
18. She had ... mature distrust of ... trivial.
19. I felt ... elation I used to feel when I heard ... front door open.
20. ... things aren't going too smoothly.
21. I noticed ... Baron take ... three lumps of ... sugar, putting two in his cup and wrapping ... third in ... corner of his handkerchief.
22. I know practically nothing about ... criminal law.
23. ... floor was carpeted from ... wall to ... wall.
24. Margaret was standing against ... wall with ... unlighted cigarette between her lips.
25. Everything in ... room was covered in ... drifts of white. It was ... torn paper.
26. Now he seemed to be chatty and talked to ... jury as ... man to ... man.
27. London is full of ... people from all ... parts of the world during the summer.
28. I've no doubt it will give ... immense satisfaction.

29. He knows a great deal about ... ancient Greek sculpture.
30. He turned ... pages over, observing how consistently each story was used to appeal to ... regrettable in ... reader.
31. He had ... charm that was irresistible. ... children doted on him, and he would play with them and tell them ... stories.
32. He had not very much pity for ... weakness, but he had for ... suffering, for it was, he knew, ... strong who suffered.
33. "Your father used to make ... planes for ... Nazis, I'm told," ... chief remarked with ... studied casualness.
34. He entertained with ... magnificence that never overstepped ... bounds of ... good taste.
35. She'd been to Oxford and she'd taken her degree in ... economics.
36. ... correctness was ... quality he most valued: ... correctness of ... machine, ... correctness of ... report.

Ex. 29. Explain the use of articles with nouns denoting parts of the day:

1. It was almost *noon*.
2. "Lewis! What are you doing at this time of *night*?" I heard the well-known voice.
3. I sat all *night* reading.
4. On the *evening* of the departure the whole village turned out to give us the promised farewell dinner.
5. He used to spend the *morning* lying about the beach.
6. Toward *midnight* he saw the gleam of many lights.
7. It was high *noon* when I woke.
8. *Twilight* was falling when they came back to the great city.
9. At ten o'clock on a hot September *evening* he strolled idly down the street.
10. And in the *afternoon* I used to lie alone, and watch the sun get lower and lower.
11. He always slept late on Sunday *morning*.
12. It was not a warm *afternoon*.
13. I made my speech yesterday *night*.
14. The *day* was hot and muggy.

Ex. 30. Supply the required articles, paying special attention to the nouns indicating parts of the day:

1. It was nearly ... *midnight*, and Margaret rose to go.
2. It was ... *early morning* when ... train pulled into ... station.

3. Outside was ... cold, drizzling twilight.
4. It was ... Saturday morning, and ... weekend guests were coming.
5. It was ... grey, cold day. By ... nightfall, it would rain.
6. We got back to ... inn as ... night was falling.
7. I paid my first visit to them on ... clear cold February night.
8. Martha's talent for sleeping was extraordinary. If nobody went in to awaken her in ... morning she would sleep till ... noon, till two o'clock in ... afternoon, even if she had gone to bed early ... evening before.
9. Charles was in a hurry to get back home by ... midnight.
10. Towards ... evening he called at their house, but found no one at home.
11. On ... Sunday morning ... weather was showery.
12. ... last evening the sirens went again.
13. She hastened out of ... house and to ... barn. ... evening was coming on.
14. All ... night ... snow fell.
15. Each day, coming to ... office, I looked forward to ... evening.
16. It was ... late afternoon and their shadows lay long across ... road.
17. It was ... summer afternoon, ... last day of the Bar final examination.
18. ... evening flowed on. I sat working in ... late summer twilight.
19. As he drove me home through ... June dusk, James suddenly told me that he had left his wife.
20. He pulled aside each curtain to make sure that ... window behind it was latched for ... night.
21. His secretary said that Kevin was free in ... evening.
22. ... day passed quietly.
23. Robert decided to kill a great many birds with one stone by spending ... night in London.
24. ... night was still, and almost tepid.
25. ... couple next door wouldn't leave until ... morning.
26. They played tennis and ping-pong in ... day, and in ... evening, in accordance with ... stiff routine of ... place, they sat down to poker.
27. Surely nothing could be going on there so late at ... night.
28. He let me sit up ... night with him and give him ... things to stop ... pain.
29. It was ... night, but ... street was brightly lit.

Ex. 31. Revision: supply the required articles:

1. He was ... son of ... distinguished soldier. He was given ... first-class education.
2. My brother takes ... affair with ... utmost seriousness.
3. It was ... blazing hot August morning and I tried to beg myself off.
4. I was surprised at ... readiness with which she agreed to my suggestion.
5. ... only persons present were Mrs Perger and ... old friend of ... family, ... Colonel Legrand, ... army doctor who had been ... brother officer of ... Robert's father.
6. She looked at me with her keen eyes: "You're not ... sort of ... boy to be satisfied, are you?"
7. ... evening was falling, and as I turned back towards ... house its upper windows shone like blazing shields in the last of ... sunlight.
8. His wife, ... pretty little thing, was ... actress for ... moment out of ... job.
9. It was ... wet, warm summer day and ... windows of ... drawing-room stood open.
10. "I suppose," he said, "you are ... young man who wants to come here as ... pupil, aren't you?"
11. My father's hours became more irregular; sometimes he stayed in ... house in ... morning and sometimes both he and my mother were out all ... day.
12. As ... students would do, we had ... interminable conversations about ... art and ... literature.
13. Grant took up ... receiver with ... eagerness of which he was not conscious.
14. In ... morning, grey and dark, we sat over our breakfast.
15. Robie examined his father with ... dispassionate attention he gave everything.
16. He then went to Hamburg where ... friend of his was ... manager of the theatre.
17. They ran from ... room to ... room examining them with ... curiosity of ... children.
18. It was a little after seven on ... summer morning.
19. I have ... great admiration for him.
20. I'll tell you all about it ... tomorrow night.
21. He got up and soaked ... tea towel with ... cold water and put

it on ... man's face. ... man brushed it off, but it had had ... reviving effect.

22. We spent ... next three hours talking and drinking ... coffee; then I had to hurry off to catch ... last bus. I missed it by ... few minutes, and had ... five-mile walk back home. I didn't mind this; it was ... cold; starry night, and ... air sometimes had ... sweet smell — as if, I thought, it blew from ... ice-cream factory.

Ex. 32. Explain the use of articles with nouns denoting seasons:

1. The year wore on and it was *summer*.
2. The *winter* was coming on.
3. It was a warm and glowing *autumn*, and she lay in the mellow sunshine.
4. I think the country in *winter* would be horrible, don't you?
5. The *summer* was here with its bright, short nights.
6. People realized that *winter* must come sooner or later, and were determined to make the most of the sun while it lasted.
7. "It has been a terrible *summer*," he said.
8. He cleaned the barn for the *winter*.
9. Through the *autumn*, a busy time for me, I was often uneasy.
10. It was late *summer*.
11. In March came the first break in the *winter*.
12. We had a short *summer* this year.
13. To walk in the garden and watch the *spring* returning was like rediscovering the world.
14. Later when it grew warmer and the sun seemed as hot as in *summer*, she would go out into the garden.
15. She went to Scotland for the *summer*.

Ex. 33. Supply the required articles for nouns in the following sentences, paying special attention to denoting seasons:

1. We used ... cottage for ... week-ends in ... summer.
2. It was ... first day of ... summer.
3. Quite early in ... autumn he began visiting us two or three times each week.
4. As ... autumn passed, I saw ... good deal of Charles and Ann together.
5. It was ... remarkably fine autumn.

6. He walked along ... streets smelling ... spring in ... air.
7. ... spring had come early that year.
8. I saw him before he went down to ... Mr Bell's country house for ... summer.
9. It was ... brilliant summer of 1971.
10. During ... winter I had heard a rumour that she was abroad.
11. They must have met in ... summer.
12. He felt more at home in ... winter than in ... summer because in ... winter there were ... firelights and ... drawn curtains and one's own company.
13. ... summer faded gloomily into ... autumn.
14. In ... autumn young Ben was to go away to a prep school and my job would be ended.
15. ... winter passed.
16. He went duck-shooting with the locals in ... autumn and trout fishing with Mr Clark in ... spring.
17. I expect I shall loathe Manchester. However, I shall not be there long. I'm off to school in ... autumn.
18. It was ... summer and ... place broke out in ... red flowers.
19. "Can't you wait until ... winter?" Sam asked.
20. ... winter had now settled into ... bright cold days and ... hard cold nights.

Ex. 34. Revision: supply the required articles:

1. They watched him in ... nervous silence.
2. ... winter set in early and unexpectedly with ... heavy fall of ... snow.
3. It was ... dark night, with no moon.
4. It gave me ... intense satisfaction that they all enjoyed my article.
5. He went out shooting every morning in ... autumn.
6. In ... morning when he awoke, he found his breath frozen on ... blanket.
7. Because he had succeeded in bearing ... unbearable he was not ... man he had been ... year ago.
8. He soon learned that Grey was ... head of ... department.
9. Then ... spring came, late, cold and rainy.
10. I paid my first visit to his house on ... clear February night.
11. ... expedition started in ... autumn of 1967.

12. In ... garden there was ... patch of ... longish grass, bordered by ... flower-bed, and some raspberry canes; I was specially fond of ... trees — ... three pear trees by ... side wall and ... two apple trees in ... middle of ... grass.
13. ... letter began so tritely as though ... surgeon Dr. Larry Skeen were still ... small boy writing home from ... vacation camp.
14. ... magnificent spring afternoon was already deepening into ... dusk.
15. In ... winter this region is deep with ... snow.
16. He was ... bachelor with ... small income.
17. Isn't it nice that ... winter is behind us?
18. It was nearly ... sundown.
19. They had better finish ... work before ... winter.
20. In ... moment he was quiet again and ... stillness of ... room became oppressive.
21. ... house must be cold in ... winter.
22. Philip called at our house on ... Tuesday afternoon.
23. Tom was trembling from ... head to ... foot with ... excitement.
24. We lay lazily, looking through ... reeds at ... glassy water. I stretched to pluck ... blade of ... grass. ... turf was rough and warm beneath my knees.

Ex. 35. Explain the use of articles with nouns denoting meals:

1. *Lunch* was ready and we went in.
2. I'm sorry I can't offer you *dinner*.
3. I'll try to give you a decent *lunch*.
4. Mother told me to go out and buy some eggs for *lunch*.
5. After a light *lunch* everyone relaxed for a time.
6. He ordered a modest *dinner*.
7. On the evening of departure the whole village turned out to give us the promised farewell *dinner*.
8. I arranged to give a *lunch* for them.
9. I was having *tea* with her.
10. I want you to have a nice *breakfast*.
11. We were talking about it before *dinner*.
12. I was on my way to make final arrangements about a *dinner* I was giving that evening.

13. It did not take one very long to have *dinner* in 1943. There wasn't enough of the *dinner*.
14. Charles and I were alone at *lunch*.

Ex. 36. Supply the required articles, paying special attention to the nouns denoting meals:

1. ... substantial tea was laid on ... table.
2. ... invitations to ... dinner for sixteen people were sent out.
3. He said he would have ... very good dinner on ... train.
4. Hudson talked more during ... dinner than was usual with him.
5. So after I had finished ... supper I came back along ... passage to ... empty dark front room.
6. "Nevil is coming to ... dinner," she added.
7. She intended to have ... glorious supper for my sake.
8. He was afraid he would be late for ... lunch.
9. But now and then Maude prepared ... dinner for him in ... apartment.
10. ... lunch was finished and soon I left.
11. She had been smoking incessantly since they finished ... supper.
12. ... tea came in almost at once.
13. She made ... long telephone call from ... lobby and ate ... quick lunch.
14. If he were kept late at ... official dinner she would work herself into ... fever of ... apprehension.
15. ... tea tasted of ... straw.
16. He was giving ... big lunch on ... following day and at ... end of ... week ... grand dinner.
17. ... tea was over.
18. I found her in ... kitchen, peeling ... potatoes for ... lunch.
19. But ... hot bath and ... good dinner fixed him up.
20. She smelled strongly of ... scent, but not so strongly as to disguise ... fact that she had eaten at ... dinner ... dish highly flavoured with ... garlic.
21. "For ... lunch," she said, "we could have ... cold meat, ... tea, ... bread and butter, and ... jam."
22. I parked in front of ... restaurant near ... road and went in for ... cold lunch.
23. " ... dinner will be ready in ... few minutes," she said.

24. Mr Morley was not in ... best of tempers at ... breakfast. He complained of ... bacon and wondered why ... coffee had to have ... appearance of ... liquid mud. Mr Morley was ... small man with ... decided jaw. His sister who kept house for him, was ... large woman. She eyed her brother thoughtfully and asked whether ... bath water had been cold again. When Mr Morley expressed himself fully on ... point, he had ... second cup of ... despised coffee.

Ex. 37. Supply the required articles, paying special attention to the nouns denoting diseases:

1. My daughter's children went down with ... chicken-pox.
2. She suffered from ... bronchitis.
3. Sheila who had recovered from ... measles was also there.
4. She had been absent less than ... week when ... operation for ... appendicitis was performed on her.
5. "Were you sick?" "I had ... fever."
6. I am suffering from ... malaria and I am sure you don't know what it feels like when ... fever comes on.
7. ... boy sat upright against ... two pink pillows; ... mumps had not noticeably increased ... fatness of his face.
8. "You've lost so much weight and your colour has changed." "I had ... jaundice," Dan said shortly.
9. Mr March always expressed ... gloomy concern if any one of his children had ... sore throat.
10. He was laid up with ... flu and did not let us know about it.
11. My father had ... asthma and ... climate of London always left him a little forlorn in ... morning.
12. Finally I came down with ... pneumonia. My mother took me home to nurse me. While I was getting over ... pneumonia I decided what I was going to do.
13. "Your hair is short and curly." "I had ... scarlet fever and it had to be cut."
14. That day I happened to have ... grippe and didn't know it.
15. In January I had ... diphtheria, with ... complications.

Ex. 38. Supply the required articles, paying special attention to the nouns *bed, table, school, hospital, prison, church* and *town*:

a)

1. Then he carefully placed ... money on ... bed.

2. They were discussing it after ... supper, when ... children were in ... bed.
3. ... room was in ... darkness. I dimly perceived ... bed in ... corner.
4. ... doctor shrugged his shoulders and sat down beside ... bed.
5. He would pile ... journals and ... newspapers, ... books and ... pamphlets on ... bed, ... table and ... spare chairs.
6. When he finished at ... midnight, too exhausted to read any further, he went to ... bed.
7. ... bed itself was wide and high.
8. His aunt urged that he should be sent to ... bed on the spot.
9. I turned toward my own room where I assumed ... bed would have been made up for me.
10. He worked hard and often got out of ... bed at ... night to make sure that he had written ... point down.
11. I swung my feet off ... bed.
12. He was playing with ... dog's ears who had established himself by ... bed.
13. In ... few minutes she went to ... bed.
14. I pushed off ... bedclothes and sat on ... side of ... bed.

b)

1. She sat down beside ... table and began clipping ... stalks of ... flowers and arranging them in ... vase.
2. He would not argue with ... guest at ... table.
3. We sat at ... kitchen table talking about ... things.
4. Tom, who was reading at ... small table near him, looked up.
5. There used to be ... table near the window.

c)

1. Mr Peck came in. He taught us ... algebra and ... geometry; he was ... man about fifty-five who had spent his whole life at ... school.
2. This talk went on throughout ... drive back to ... school.
3. Paula taught Greek and Latin at ... local school.
4. In fact, though clever, he was idle at ... school and far from bookish.
5. ... fees at ... secondary school were ... three guineas ... term.
6. In ... morning I went as usual to ... school.
7. He went to ... school to speak to ... head-master about his son.
8. At ... odd moments he glanced back on those wonderful two weeks before ... school began.

d)

1. He's in ... hospital with ... couple of ... ribs and ... shoulder cracked.
2. He lives in one wing of ... house, and has turned the rest into ... hospital.
3. After ... lunch Dr. Raily went off to ... hospital.
4. She had met his father when he was captured and brought to ... Austrian hospital where she was ... nurse in ... first World War.
5. He told us that ... man had been gored by ... bull and was in ... hospital.
6. She told me that for ... while she had worked in ... hospital.
7. On ... day he was due to attend ... hospital she secretly phoned his doctor.
8. They had ... hospital in ... town during ... war.
9. ... Dan's scratched face became inflamed and poisoned and he went down with ... high fever and was carried off to ... hospital where he lies at present.
10. Doctor Huger is ... best man for you but he's at ... hospital doing ... emergency operation.
11. He is in ... hospital and his condition is reported as being serious.
12. My mother admitted that ... hospital to which Uncle Nick had been taken was ... lunatic asylum.
13. He was in ... hospital for ... few weeks, and came back more moody than ever.

e)

1. St. Peter's is ... church often chosen by ... fashionable people for ... funerals and ... weddings.
2. They stood for ... moment, then all together slowly moved towards ... church.
3. "Do you go to ... church?" "Occasionally."
4. I could see from ... car ... church on ... sharply rising slope.
5. About half past ten ... cracked bell of ... small church began to ring.
6. They rode in ... silence for ... moment, ... church disappearing behind them.
7. "Bertie," she said to my father, "I shall go to ... church this morning."
8. She was dressed for ... church.

f)

1. I'll drive you to ... town this morning.
2. We decided to spend ... summer in ... sea-side town.
3. They lived in ... same part of ... town.
4. ... town was not large enough for one to stay anonymous.
5. When will you drive back to ... town?
6. Blairhill was ... ancient town with ... winding alleys and ... old marketplace.
7. I walked with him through ... town.
8. I'm afraid you can't see Father today; he's out of ... town.
9. My Aunt Milly was well known all over ... town.

Ex. 39. Supply the required articles, paying special attention to phraseological combinations:

1. We sent ... results of ... vote by ... letter.
2. He went to ... rotten log near at ... hand and began to dig under one-end of it with his knife.
3. It was ... holiday, and no games on ... account of ... rain.
4. So I thought we would have ... good dinner and go to ... ballet.
5. His father had crept several times on ... tiptoe into ... room to see if he was stirring.
6. And on ... top of all that he had ... quarrel with his wife.
7. Let's go by ... underground.
8. On ... consideration I am not so sure you're right.
9. He took one of ... books at ... random.
10. He opposed my plan on ... principle.
11. I came across ... book by ... chance.
12. I'll make ... inventory of what we have on ... hand.
13. After she had ... leisurely dinner downstairs Julia played ... piano for ... while.
14. There was nothing to be said in ... answer to such ... bitter accusations.
15. His name was mentioned in ... connection with ... ping-pong championship.
16. He spent part of ... afternoon telling them ... news he could not tell them by ... telephone.
17. ... little car in ... question now stood outside ... front door.
18. He knew Marion Sharpe by ... sight as he knew everyone in Milford.
19. He asked ... man what was his idea with ... regard to ... best means for accomplishing his plan.

20. On ... examination ... object turned out to be ... page torn from ... book.
21. ... transport must come by ... sea to Plymouth.
22. I broke my spectacles by ... accident and then found I didn't really need them.
23. He was so uneasy that his presence was out of ... question.
24. "Are you ... bad sailor?" she asked quickly. "About as bad as is possible, in ... spite of having been at ... sea so much."
25. They are at ... sea now. They write that they are having ... marvellous time.
26. Anna and her husband went out after ... tea to play ... cards, and took their baby, though Eugene said it would get ... pneumonia.
27. She went by ... coach, because it was cheaper.
28. Before long I reached several conclusions in ... relation to my unknown friend.
29. He tore open ... parcel that came for him by ... post.
30. He then went down to ... dinner, and ordered ... whole bottle of ... claret in ... honour of ... event.
31. They followed him through ... slight drizzle to ... garage. ... few men were sitting at ... table, playing ... cards, and ... girl was curled up on ... couch reading ... paperback book.

Ex. 40. Revision: supply the required articles:

1. There was ... empty bottle by ... side of ... bed, which had contained ... milk, and in ... piece of ... newspaper ... few crumbs.
2. He went to ... tiny kitchen, where he knew his way around, and put ... kettle of ... water on ... stove. He poured ... milk into ... jug from ... carton in ... refrigerator, then drank some milk himself before putting ... carton back.
3. ... school was ... pride of ... town. It was made of ... brick.
4. ... driver was ... broad red-faced man who looked like ... captain of ... liner.
5. When he was in ... hospital she could not get ... permission to visit him.
6. We had ... thin soup, ... lamb cutlets coated in ... breadcrumbs, and ... French-fried potatoes.
7. It was with ... greatest difficulty that Brian had persuaded him to join ... Fabians.
8. ... boy Roger sprawled on ... mat nearest to ... door.

9. He rattled on, telling ... anecdote after ... anecdote.
10. All through ... afternoon he had been torn by ... sorrow his brother did not know.
11. Her face had ... hardness of ... face on ... coin.
12. Don't be ... liar enough to say that you like it.
13. She spoke of ... cars with ... lyrical intensity that ... other people gave to ... spring, or ... first snow drop.
14. I understand ... irony in your voice.
15. I have to go up to ... town on Tuesday to see ... man.
16. I did not mean to say it. It came out by ... accident.
17. Then he came to Winton to do ... research for ... year.
18. Outside ... church we met several neighbours.
19. He found himself ... face to ... face with ... Lieutenant Evans.
20. When ... news came that France had mobilized, and that ... Germans had crossed ... Belgian frontier, George abandoned all ... hope immediately.
21. Fortunately we have ... time to decide since there are ... two months of ... wet winter left us and nobody will bother us until ... spring.
22. It was impossible to say how ... things were going on on ... beach.
23. Francis Chadwick was ... tallish good-looking woman, ... natural blonde with ... clothes and ... figure of ... girl who had "modelled" ... clothes.
24. He became ... secretary of ... society he founded.
25. ... iron is ... bread of ... industry; ... nickel is ... meat.
26. It was ... cheerful place in which to pass ... wet March afternoon.
27. He was in his late seventies, confined to ... wheel-chair, but radiating ... tremendous self-confidence.
28. I was ... qualified radio technician in ... civilian life.
29. They went out and saw that ... dawn was breaking.
30. He took him for ... ride at ... twilight.
31. ... odd feeling of ... curiosity stirred him, and he crossed over.
32. She was ... daughter of ... clergyman.
33. Buy me ... ice, please.
34. Marcel, ... fat man who runs ... place we were at ... last night, introduced me to ... two men there.
35. If she could feel ... hunger and ... thirst, ... heat and ... cold, then she could feel ... love and ... love for ... man. Well, he was ... man. And why could he not be ... man?

36. When he left ... school he built ... houses in ... small town in ... West.
37. For ... long time I had longed for ... machine that could move at ... speed of seventy miles ... hour.
38. Finally she sat down again and listened in ... tense alertness to ... conversation.
39. For ... years I could not free myself from ... influence of ... book.
40. It was ... sunny day full of ... sound of ... bees.
41. I believe we could get ... work on ... farm that would see us through ... summer.
42. He stepped out into ... twilight and breathed ... pure air.
43. ... talk flowed easily between ... two women who liked each other.
44. I did not go straight home from ... school that evening. Instead, I walked by myself ... long way round by ... canal; ... mist was rising; but as it swirled round ... bridges and ... warehouses and ... trees by ... waterside, it no longer exalted me.
45. I have received ... information on ... subject.
46. Gerda doesn't know ... art from ... coloured photograph.
47. In ... street in front of ... houses there was nothing but ... dust and ... hard brick and ... cars and ... dirty children.
48. It was ... grey, warm summer evening, and ... trees were swaying wave-like in ... wind.
49. Marion said that she must let some oxygen in before ... next lesson. She moved rapidly to ... window, opened it, returned to ... blackboard, shook ... duster so that ... cloud of ... chalk hung in ... air.

Ex. 41. Revision: supply the required articles in the following texts:

a) Although it was ... early afternoon all ... lights in ... restaurant were on. ... plane from New York had been delayed. ... usual gloom of ... airport was intensified by ... weather. In ... corner of ... restaurant, ... man and ... woman waited, drinking ... coffee, watching ... two small children, ... boy and ... girl who were plastered against ... big window that overlooked ... field. ... woman was in her early thirties, with ... pretty figure pleasantly displayed by ... modest grey suit. She had ... short black hair swept back in ... latest fashion, and her large grey eyes were cleverly accented by ... make-up.

b) I did not feel too good. I had ... headache and ... sore throat, and I went to ... bed at eight o'clock with some lemon and honey. When I woke up in ... morning I was so full of ... cold that I could hardly breathe. I got up and took my temperature, and upon finding it was ... hundred point four I went straight to ... bed again. ... Father wanted to send for ... doctor, and I said I did not want ... doctor.

I slept most of ... day. At ... teatime ... Father came up to see me. He was carrying ... huge parcel. He put it down on ... bed. I started to undo ... brown wrappings. It was ... enormous doll. It had ... real hair and several complete changes of ... clothes, with ... hats and ... gloves and ... shoes and ... socks and ... parasol. I was overcome. I stared at ... bright cheeks and ... black curls and ... blue china rolling eyes and ... long lashes. "I think it's lovely," I said.

c) ... moment I flung open ... door, I smelt ... strong smell of ... gas. I flew up ... stairs and into ... kitchen. ... air was thick with it, and I could tell from ... noise that ... oven was on, unlit. I switched it off, pulled open ... window and retreated. ... whole house stank.

... sitting-room light was on. So I went in and found David sitting on ... sofa reading ... magazine.

"What do you think you are doing?" I yelled. "... whole place is full of ... gas. Can't you smell it?"

"Gas?" he asked. "Is it really? I thought there was ... funny smell when I came in. And I have got ... headache, come to think of it."

"You're lucky you're not dead," I said and went out into ... corridor.

d) Mr Sutton was ... engineer who lived in ... next street, and he was probably ... only good mathematician in our district. I was at ... school with his son Gerald, ... gentle, bespectacled lad who was not particularly brilliant. Like myself, Mr Sutton was interested in ... theory of ... numbers. I had ... tea with Gerald one day and talked to his father; I produced my copy of ... Diophantus's arithmetic, and we sat over it for ... rest of ... evening. I began making ... habit of seeing him two or three evenings ... week and talking over ... problems that interested me.

Apart from his engineering, Mr Sutton had been self-taught. He had left ... school at fourteen and studied at ... night-school;

consequently he had ... enormous respect for ... education. He had taught himself ... German and ... French, and even to play ... piano. He was not much liked by my father, who thought he was ... know-all. Mr Sutton enjoyed standing in ... garden on ... starry nights and explaining ... names of all ... constellations to me; if we walked in his garden on ... sunny day, he would break off ... talk about ... mathematics to tell me ... botanical names of ... flowers. He spoke ... few words of ... dozen languages, and liked to be considered ... good linguist.

e) ... fire was low, and James asked me if I would mind getting in more coal, since my shoes were thicker than his and therefore more waterproof. ... coal was kept in ... shed at ... bottom of ... back garden, on ... other side of ... lawn. I took ... scuttle and ... shovel, and walked across ... wet lawn; it was ... dusk, and ... rain had stopped. Behind ... coal shed flowed ... stream, and I pushed my way through some stinging nettles to peep down at it. I always loved ... sound of ... running water. It was so pleasant that I stood there for ... few minutes, enjoying ... clean air and ... smell that came from ... orchard on ... other side of ... stream. Then I turned back to ... shed, and began to fill ... scuttle with ... coal. As I did so, I had ... feeling of someone standing behind me. I cannot explain why I felt sure of this. When I turned round, holding ... full scuttle, I was aware that someone was looking at me from ... upstairs window of ... cottage, and I thought I could see ... face through ... dusk.

f) ... winter set in early and unexpectedly with ... heavy fall of ... snow. ... snow came silently through ... night, and Christine and Andrew woke to ... great glittering whiteness.

... herd of ... mountain ponies had come through ... gap in ... broken wooden pailings at ... side of ... house and were gathered round ... back door. These dark wild little creatures started away at ... approach of ... man. But in ... snowy weather ... hunger drove them down to ... outskirts of ... town.

All ... winter Christine fed ... ponies. At first they backed from her, but in ... end they came to eat from her hand. One especially became her friend, ... smallest of them all, ... black tangle-maned creature whom they named Darkie.

... ponies would eat any kind of ... food, ... scraps of ... loaf, ... potato and apple rinds, even ... orange peel. Once, in ... fun,

Andrew offered Darkie ... empty matchbox. Darkie munched it down and licked his lips.

Though they were so poor, Christine and Andrew knew ... happiness. Christine, for all her look of ... inexperience, had ... attribute of ... Yorkshire woman: she was ... housewife. With ... help of ... young girl named Jenny, ... miner's daughter who came daily, she kept ... house shining. When Andrew came in tired, she would have ... hot meal on ... table which quickly restored him.

Ex. 42. Explain the use of articles with nouns denoting unique objects and notions:

1. He turned away, and lay with wide-open eyes, looking out of the window at the sinking *sun*.
2. The storm had blown itself out. The last clouds, broken in lurid, ragged-edged fragments, were sailing gently over a soft blue *sky*.
3. Henry did his best to lend an appearance of secrecy to the proceedings of the commission that were reported daily in the *press*.
4. "I suppose I oughtn't to tell you, but someone ought to be thinking of the *future*," said Aunt Milly.
5. She opened her eyes to their widest when she was told what a brilliant *future* spread before her.
6. On such an evening every one looks up at the *Milky Way*.
7. In Milford if you call John Smith on the *telephone* you expect John Smith to answer in person.
8. Charles broke in: "She wants a good *world*."
9. It was the same house all right. We entered the tall gloomy archway as we had so often in the *past*.
10. The night was very dark, with a cold, damp gusty wind from the *west*.
11. That is Sirius, a gigantic *sun*, many millions of miles from us.
12. People all over the *world* want peace.

Ex. 43. Supply the required articles paying special attention to the nouns indicating unique objects and notions:

1. ... sky was still dark to ... east, but it would soon be ... dawn.
2. In ... past when they had come to ... country in ... summer he had taken ... rest from ... research.

3. It was ... night still, but ... stars were pale in ... sky, and ... day was at ... hand.
4. It was ... August night of ... extreme beauty, ... moon was just about to rise over ... hills.
5. He explained later that he hadn't rung up again because he had had no more coppers for ... telephone.
6. Kim threw up ... tremendous party. And, of course, ... press was also cordially invited.
7. Through ... gateway ... thousands of ... miners every day enter ... cages that plunge them more than ... mile into ... earth.
8. Coming down ... street, George had noticed that it was ... clear night with ... full moon and he insisted on going to the Embankment to see ... moonlight on the Thames.
9. ... cloud, hitherto unseen, came upon ... moon.
10. Aunt Bertha liked my company, let me listen to ... radio, and made me ... cakes and ... tarts.
11. ... stars were faint and dim and lovely in ... soft misty night sky.
12. "We've got to make arrangements for ... future." "But have we ... future?" he asked.
13. It was ... perfect night and ... moon was just rising.
14. And curiously enough, at this moment, there came ... distinct rumble of ... thunder out of ... cloudless sky.
15. We hope for ... future and regret ... past.
16. Obviously we take ... different views of ... world. I want ... better world.
17. ... moon made ... faint pathway on ... water, but ... house was still lit up by ... setting sun.
18. There was ... hamburger stand ... block to ... east.
19. ... moon set, and in ... sky ... countless stars shone with their terrifying brilliance.
20. ... man is ... master of ... whole earth, above and below, from ... Equator to ... Poles.
21. It was ... glorious night. ... moon had sunk and left ... quiet earth alone with ... stars.
22. He was faced with nothing but ... decidedly bleak-looking future.

Ex. 44. Revision: supply the required articles:

1. They came out of ... bar into ... street and they walked against ... soft breeze, ... hand in ... hand. ... air was like ... drift of ...

- pollen. ... three-quarter moon, pale as ... china in ... fading sky, sailed over ... towered offices.
2. He had always been ... generous man. In ... future he would be able to be even more generous.
 3. All that day she roamed about ... empty school, unable to settle to anything. She played ... piano in ... music-room for ... few minutes, jumped up and went to ... gym where she did ... tentative exercise or two on ... wall-bars: she was getting stiff. She made herself ... sandwich, poured ... drink, then put it back into ... bottle. ... sky greyed over and all ... shine had gone from ... sea. She began to prepare ... supper, something that would keep in ... oven. From ... wood ... maddening bird cried out again and again before ... sleep. She found herself listening for ... sound of ... car.
 4. I like ... theatre, but George has always said he's too tired to go out at ... night.
 5. He was filled with ... vision of ... ideal world in which ... intellectuals showed ... toilers how to eliminate ... toil.
 6. ... news meant that Alec would soon have ... brilliant future before him.
 7. "We shall have ... rain tomorrow," said George, instinctively looking at ... cloudy sky, invisible beyond ... glare of ... street lamps.
 8. Only ... copperly light of ... low autumn moon, sifting through ... tall, distant pines, ruffled ... water that was as black as ... young crow's wing.
 9. ... past is ... foreign country: they do ... things differently there.
 10. My mother left ... table set for ... tea.
 11. Chekhov was elected ... honorary member of ... Tsarist Academy of Sciences in 1900, but he resigned in ... protest two years later after ... Tsar annulled ... election of Maxim Gorky, ... writer now seen as ... father of ... Soviet literature.
 12. He switched off ... radio and went to ... bed.
 13. Angela was returning by ... train from ... South of France. It was ... weary journey; ... train was already eight hours late; ... restaurant car had disappeared during ... night.
 14. For ... hour she spoke quietly and held ... audience of 2,000 spellbound people with what she had to say.
 15. Joe and I took ... lunch together once ... week, every Friday; unless he was out of ... town.

16. Andy watched them closely and listened with ... solemn attention as if everything they said was of ... profoundest importance.
17. As ... girl she had expected ... husband who would give her ... love and ... luxury and ... state.
18. ... sun rose clear of ... reeds that fringed ... eastern corner of ... lake. Jim and I were eager to start fishing. ... boat rippled ... glassy surface of ... lake which in ... night had mirrored ... stars and ... blue sky in its calm depths.
19. Over ... telephone, at four hours' notice, he invited ... guests, most of whom were ... acquaintances of mine.
20. As ... boy Herbert wanted to study ... music.
21. About ... four miles to ... south, ... second lake ran into ... land, and on ... north shore of it was ... village slightly larger than Garnie.
22. ... waves of ... river were imprisoned at last for ... winter.
23. You shouldn't think it is easy to do ... original research.
24. She was wonderfully ignorant, and had only ... vaguest knowledge of ... European geography.
25. We had walked to their cottage from ... nearest railway station ... distance of about two miles.
26. Towards ... evening I felt stifled, and my head ached. My sister had some of her friends in to ... tea, and they were chattering like ... hundred canaries. I decided to take ... walk in ... park. ... wind was damp and ... ground muddy, and I ended outside ... Aunt Bertha's. She was sitting listening to ... radio and knitting, and she immediately offered me ... cup of ... tea.

Ex. 45. Revision: supply the required articles in the following descriptions of weather and nature:

1. But when ... day came ... weather, which had been fine and warm, broke; ... sky was grey and ... drizzling rain was falling.
2. It was ... late afternoon and ... drizzle turned into ... steady rain. It was getting dark, and ... grey sky seemed so close overhead.
3. ... days and nights grew colder and colder. At ... noon ... sun was ... cold bloody smear in ... misty sky.
4. Dan and Ann were on skis. Sometimes he led ... way. Neither had to break trail, for ... crusted snow made their passage

swift and effortless. Every so often ... mysterious stirring of ... air would send ... powdery snow sifting down from ... lofty trees. ... falling snow shone like ... diamonds in ... moonlight.

5. "... sky is cloudy and it looks like ... rain." "... rain will help ... things grow."

6. Though ... rain ceased at ... noon ... air still felt moist.

7. ... birds' songs ceased; ... trees were still, and far over ... mountains there was ... mutter of ... dull, menacing thunder.

8. We went to ... bed early, and in ... night it rained ... little, not ... real rain but ... shower from ... mountains.

9. Jack sat smoking and looking silently out at ... drizzling rain.

10. On the whole we had ... fine weather.

11. ... fine weather held and we wandered in ... fields.

12. He was still asleep when ... snow began to fall in ... early morning. It did not wake him. It covered his sleeping bag, and even his face and head, but he slept on until ... grey light of ... day disturbed him.

13. It was bleak and cold when I got there and ... thin rain was falling.

14. ... scent of ... lime trees hung over ... suburban street; ... lights were coming on in some of ... houses; ... red brick of ... new church was bright in ... sunset glow.

15. I must have fallen asleep because I woke suddenly with ... start and heard ... crack of ... thunder in ... air. I sat up. ... clock said five. I got up and went to ... window. There was not ... breath of ... wind. ... leaves hung listless on ... trees waiting. ... sky was slaty grey. ... jagged lightning split ... sky. ... other rumble in ... distance. No rain fell. I went out into ... corridor and listened. I could not hear anything. I went to ... head of ... stairs. ... hall was dark. I went down and stood on ... terrace. There was ... other burst of ... thunder. One spot of ... rain fell on my hand. It was very dark. I could see ... sea beyond ... valley like ... black lake. ... other spot fell on my hand, and ... other crack of ... thunder came. One of ... maids began shutting ... windows in ... rooms upstairs.

Ex. 46. Revision: supply the required articles in the following texts:

a) I came home from ... school one afternoon and found my uncle sitting at ... table, sipping from ... pint mug of ... tea, and

making ... calculations on ... sheet of ... paper. My mother was sitting opposite, reading ... newspaper. I sat down and ate ... bread and ... jam.

b) I came home from ... school one day with ... slight headache, and took ... two aspirins from ... bottle in ... medicine cupboard. They left ... curious aftertaste in my mouth, and when my mother came home half ... hour later I told her what I had done. She shrieked and ran to ... telephone; I had taken some tablets that ... doctor had prescribed for her stomach cramps, and she had been warned that it was dangerous to exceed ... stated doze — one tablet ... day. She had broken ... bottle that morning, and transferred ... tablets to ... empty aspirin bottle.

c) My Uncle Nick began teaching me ... mathematics and I spent ... hour every day with him. I liked ... figures. They amused me. They gave me ... certain sense of ... power. I liked to be able to tell ... people how many gallons of ... water were used in our town every day, how many hours everyone sleeps in ... lifetime, how long it would take to cover Mount Everest with ... cigarette stubs thrown away every week in London. Uncle Nick was ... excellent teacher. He took care not to bore me with too many theories; instead, we went through ... books of ... puzzles, and invented ... puzzles to try to baffle one another.

d) ... Uncle Nick's effects had to be moved out of his room so that it could be re-let. His landlady was unwilling to store them, so she asked my father to collect them. It was ... big job, for ... Uncle Nick had ... hundreds of ... books. They had to be collected in ... van and were taken down to our basement one day when I was at ... school. I was not told about this; but on returning home from ... school I noticed ... small jade statuette of ... athlete on our living-room shelf; I knew it belonged to ... Uncle Nick, and began looking for ... rest of his things. When I found that ... door to ... coal-cellar had been locked, I guessed they were down there. I showed no curiosity.

... week later I returned from ... school and found ... house empty, my mother being at ... shops. I knew ... other way into ... coal-cellar, through ... grating on ... far side. It was ... tight squeeze, but I managed it. ... cellar was large; ... coal and ... coke were kept on one side, and ... sacks of ... potatoes, ... cooking

apples and ... jars of ... preserve on ... other. Most of ... books had been packed into ... enormous old trunk, and ... remainder piled on ... top of it. I switched on ... light and went carefully through ... books. ... ones on ... top of ... trunk were ... boring volumes of ... theology. I piled them on ... floor and looked inside. These were ... ones I wanted to see.

While I was still searching through ... trunk I heard my mother come in, and I had ... momentary panic. Then I thought that if she came down for ... potatoes I could probably hide myself behind ... coal. So I went on searching, until I had selected ... dozen volumes that I wanted to read. Then I carried my books over to ... grating, pushed them outside, then wriggled through. When I got back into ... house I even remembered to wipe ... coal off my face.

e) Early in ... morning, ... knight started again on his journey, hoping to cover ... long distance, but ... way through ... forest was very difficult so that, when ... evening fell, he found himself only on ... edge of ... Yorkshire forests.

By this time ... man and ... horse were very tired. It was necessary to find ... place to spend ... night but looking around ... knight saw only ... deep woods with ... few open glades and paths. ... sun, by which ... knight directed his course, had now sunk, and he did not know which path to follow. At last he decided to let his horse follow his own instinct and find ... right way. ... tired horse at once seemed to become more lively and took ... path which turned off from ... former course. Soon ... path grew ... little wider and ... sound of ... small bell gave ... knight to understand that he was near ... chapel. At last he reached ... open glade and saw ... small hut. At ... little distance on ... right hand there was ... fountain of ... purest water. Beside ... fountain were ... ruins of ... very small chapel. ... green bell hung at ... entrance of ... chapel. It was ... sound of this bell that ... knight had heard some time before. He sprang from his horse, approached ... hut and knocked at ... door.

Ex. 47. Explain the use of articles with names of persons in the following sentences:

1. On the way home *Isabel* said: "You must speak to *Father* tomorrow."
2. He told an anecdote about *Stern*. As soon as Dave realized that the reference was to the *Stern* of the famous Stern-Gerlach experiment, his ears pricked up.

3. At that moment they were interrupted by the gentle Mrs Shobbe.
4. At a table in a corner the Colonel was introduced to a Mrs Bilst and a Mrs Peck.
5. In the kitchen a tearful Doris was wilting under the stern reproof of her mother.
6. The children were not allowed by their mothers to play with the Connollys.
7. He was talking pleasantly to the glowering and unresponsive David.
8. To have an early breakfast was unbecoming a Blair.
9. But I'm going to have supper with the Robertses.
10. "Charlie," the irresponsible Emily broke in, "I tried to reach you this morning."

Ex. 48. Supply the required articles, paying special attention to names of persons:

1. As we were returning up ... street, ... cat darted out from one of ... houses in front of us. ... Montmorency gave ... cry of ... joy and flew after his prey. His victim was ... large black Tom. I never saw ... larger cat, nor ... more disreputable-looking cat. It was ... long, sinewy-looking animal. It had ... calm contented air about it.
2. One day he was taken by ... friend to ... party given by ... certain Mrs Lambeth, ... rich banker's widow.
3. Being himself ... fine musician, and ... superlative performer on ... violoncello, my father dreamed of turning me into ... young Mozart, and my training on ... piano began when I was three years old.
4. ... Bradley who settled here was what I suppose you might call ... farmer.
5. When ... dear old Mrs Hay went back to ... town after staying with ... Burnelles she sent ... children ... doll's house.
6. At that time I had ... greatest admiration for ... Impressionists. I longed to possess ... Sisley and ... Degas.
7. ... Jason who came back from the Easter holidays with ... black band around his arm was ... very different person from ... Jason of ... term before.
8. ... Mr March had been compelled to speak loudly, even for ... March, to make ... deaf lady understand.
9. "It sounds most tempting," remarked ... polite Lanny.

10. There was no porter to carry his large valise, but he managed to get into ... carriage just as ... train started. It was ... Pullman, so crowded with ... officers that he hadn't room to sit down.
11. After we lost my brother in ... war and then ... Mother died, he didn't bother about living ... respectable life any longer and just did what he liked.
12. From ... hill Ed tried to wave to ... lonely Nancy who, deserted by her brother, had begun to dig herself ... castle in ... sand.
13. When my uncle tried me with ... few simple problems in ... algebra, he looked pleased and said to my mother: "Your son could be ... other Einstein." "Who is ... Einstein?" asked my mother. I was glad she had asked. I wanted to know too.
14. "Very well, Papa," said ... obedient Milly.
15. She climbed ... stairs and walked with ... completely silent Katherine down ... corridor.
16. ... poor Tom saw no harm in repeating those absurd stories.
17. "Doctor Baker?" she repeated, "I don't know ... Doctor Baker. There used to be ... house called Rose Cottage near ... church, but ... Mrs Wilson lived there."
18. ... Major Wilby and ... lovely Mabel departed.
19. She walked to ... part of ... room where ... puzzled Henry was standing.
20. ... Bert Smith had ... Citroen, and he drove swiftly and well.
21. Next day I saw ... Smiths off at ... airport.
22. His parents could deny nothing to ... suffering Stephen.
23. "How is ... grandmother's rheumatism?" ... doctor asked. "She's been better lately, but ... Mother's had now."
24. "I'm sorry to hear that, ... little girl; tell ... mother to come down here some day and see whether ... Dr. Braine can do anything for her."
25. Charley was distressed. This was not ... Simon he had known so long.
26. ... Bradleys are one of ... oldest families in Illinois.

Ex. 49. Supply the required articles, paying special attention to geographic names:

1. He had ... pronounced views on what ... United States was doing for ... world.

2. ... weather over ... Baltic was said to be worsening every hour.
3. This captain, he said, had made marine history by passing through ... Bosphorus and ... Dardanelles without ... aid of ... pilot.
4. Mr Roberts sipped ... cup of ... coffee and looked out over ... Lake of Geneva.
5. His ship nearly sank in ... Pacific.
6. He told me how he had discovered ... statue, five hundred feet tall, buried in ... sand of ... Sahara.
7. ... book was about ... author's wanderings in ... interior of ... Ceylon.
8. ... man from ... Sudan carried his bags to ... car.
9. She showed me ... pictures taken in ... Swiss Alps.
10. "I know there are ... British bases in ... Cyprus," he said.
11. He said it is ... story of ... writer who goes on ... voyage to ... South Seas.
12. You oughtn't to spend ... winter in ... London with that cough and your chest. I'll give up my work if you'll come for ... month with me to some small place on ... Riviera.
13. His fortieth birthday was at ... hand, and he had never been farther ... west than Chicago.
14. The article says that ... events in ... Asia and now in ... Africa are not without their repercussion in ... Latin America.
15. They stood for some time, talking in quiet tones, comparing ... Thames with ... Seine.
16. This was not ... Paris that he had accepted thirty years ago as his spiritual home.
17. ... rains were moving ... north from ... Rhodesia.
18. So George, after forming ... various vague plans for ... winter in ... Sicily or ... Island of Majorca had to admit that he had not ... money for it.
19. He was ... well-known mountaineer scaling ... Andes.
20. He went down ... road to ... library and came home with ... new book about ... headwaters of ... Amazon.
21. "Where is he?" asked Ann. "He's in ... Buenos Aires."
22. There aren't many sharks in ... Mediterranean. It is down ... Red Sea that you get them in numbers.
23. He retired to his hotel and sat in his shirt sleeves looking at ... Grand Canal.
24. ... Asia Minor is ... part of ... Asia between ... Black Sea and ... Mediterranean Sea.

25. They stayed in ... Venice for ... fortnight.
26. She was going on ... cruise down ... Adriatic.
27. You haven't come back to ... very cheery England.
28. He was staring out across ... Nile at ... distant hills.
29. And several hours later he stepped out upon ... soil of ... Newfoundland.
30. The firm made ... loans to ... Argentine and ... Brazil.

Ex. 50. Supply the required articles, paying attention to miscellaneous proper names:

1. "Do you know where he's staying?" "At ... Bristol."
2. Mr Robinson arrived at ... London airport from ... New York yesterday on his way to ... Ukraine.
3. Usually he used to read ... few articles out of ... "Time" or ... "Newsweek".
4. When last heard from he was at ... University of Berlin.
5. "What's ... French for factory?" "Usine."
6. They drove up to ... main terminal — ... brightly lighted, air-conditioned Taj-Mahal.
7. He had applied for this assistantship in ... answer to ... advertisement in ... "Lancet".
8. Soon after that he was expelled from ... Harvard University.
9. ... "Friedrich Weber" was ... freighter sailing from ... Hamburg to ... Colombo.
10. On their way to ... Savoy Hotel he refused to tell Tom what would happen there.
11. Schiller, ... most popular dramatist in ... Germany, was forced to make ... translations from ... French in order to earn ... money enough to live on.
12. David said in ... gruff voice that he never read ... "News of the World".
13. Gracie was ... student at ... London University.
14. ... liner "Queen Elisabeth" sails at 8 a. m. this morning, on ... schedule.
15. ... lady talked ... bad French at ... top of her voice.
16. There's ... good film at ... Regal Cinema this week.

Ex. 51. Revision: supply the required articles:

1. I felt sure that ... Colonel MacAndrew would not remember me.

2. They boasted that they had been flown over ... late battle-field at ... height of 3,000 feet.
3. ... French didn't allow ... publication of ... book in ... French.
4. It was ... quarter to three when ... telephone rang. Mr Morley was sitting in ... easy-chair, happily digesting ... excellent lunch. He did not move when ... bell rang but waited for ... faithful George to come and take ... call.
5. Mr Pyne amused himself that evening by going to ... cinema.
6. In ... dining-room ... child Terry was howling at ... top of his voice.
7. ... boy Roger had arrived home with ... measles; his mother blessed ... measles that brought him home.
8. ... Adamses were ... pleasant people with ... large family.
9. "Is your father ... businessman?" "Not really. He is ... professor." "... teacher?" she asked with ... note of ... disappointment. "Well, he is ... kind of ... authority, you know. ... people consult him." "About ... health? Is he ... doctor?" "Not that sort of ... doctor. He is ... doctor of ... engineering, though."
10. She said she was going to ... pictures and invited me to go with her.
11. ... three sat talking over ... plans for ... future.
12. He spoke with ... indifference, like ... man weary of ... whole subject.
13. It is necessary indeed to go back to ... middle of ... nineteenth century, when ... industrious and intelligent man called Sibert Mason, who had been ... head gardener at ... grand place in ... Sussex and had married ... cook, bought with his savings and hers ... few acres ... north of London and set up as ... market gardener.
14. I was sitting up in ... bed, sipping ... hot coffee, when ... nurse came into ... room.
15. Together they walked through ... mud and ... slush.
16. "All ... men are ... sinners," my aunt used to say.
17. I spent half my time teaching ... law and ... other half in London as ... consultant to ... big firm.
18. Andy grinned from ... ear to ... ear.
19. I had read ... poetry at ... school, but as ... task.
20. Aunt Milly was ... enthusiastic liberal; my mother was ... patriotic, true-blue conservative.
21. ... box was wrapped in ... tissue paper.

22. His father was ... civil servant, who was ... secretary of ... Post Office in ... Ireland when, in 1916, ... headquarters in ... Dublin was seized by ... Republicans.
23. Let's not bother about ... present troubles and look forward to ... future.
24. "You sit down," he said, "I'll cook you ... big breakfast."
25. We were up before ... dawn and didn't stop ... work till ... nightfall.
26. He hadn't said ... word since ... dinner began.
27. They say he has ... great future in his firm.
28. He stayed in ... bed till ... midday.
29. ... president landed in ... New Delhi after ... five-hour visit to ... Kabul, ... capital of ... Afghanistan.
30. Meg wore ... attractive black and white dress and had had her hair done at ... hairdresser's.

Ex. 52. Revision: supply the required articles in the following text:

In 1923, at ... meeting of ... British Association for ... Advancement of ... Science in Liverpool, Rutherford announced: "We are living in ... heroic age of ... physics."

... curious thing was, all he said was absolutely true. There had never been such ... time. ... year 1932 was ... most spectacular year in ... history of ... science. Living in Cambridge, one could not help picking up ... human and intellectual excitement in ... air: James Chadwick, grey-faced after ... fortnight of ... work with ... three hours' sleep ... night, telling ... Kapitsa Club how he had discovered ... neutron; P.M.S. Blackett, ... most handsome of ... men, not quite so authoritative as usual, because it seemed too good to be true, showing ... plates which demonstrated ... existence of ... positive electron; John Cockcroft, normally not given to ... emotional display, saying to anyone whose face he recognized: "We've split ... atom!"

During ... twenties and thirties Cambridge was ... metropolis of ... experimental physics for ... entire world. "You're always at ... crest of ... wave," someone said to Rutherford. "Well, after all, I made ... wave, didn't I?" Rutherford replied.

He was ... big, rather clumsy man. He had ... large staring blue eyes and ... damp lower lip. He didn't look in ... least like ... intellectual. His was really ... kind of ... face that often goes with ... character and ... gifts. In ... fact, he came from ... very poor:

his father was ... odd-job man in New Zealand and ... son of ... Scottish emigrant.

New Zealand was, in ... 1880s, ... most remote of ... provinces, but Rutherford managed to get ... good education. He was as original as Einstein, but unlike Einstein he did not revolt against ... formal instruction; he was top in ... classics as well as in everything else. He started ... research on ... subject of ... wireless waves with ... equipment such as one might dig up today in ... African laboratory. That did not deter him. "I could do research at ... North Pole," he once proclaimed, and it was true. He brought his wireless work to Cambridge, anticipated Marconi and then dropped it because he saw ... field — ... radio-activity — more scientifically interesting. His work led him directly to ... atomic energy industry, spending ... thousands of ... millions of ... pounds. He himself never earned, or wanted to earn, more than ... professor's salary. In his will he left precisely ... value of ... Nobel prize.

As soon as Rutherford got on to ... radio-activity, he was set on his life's work. His ideas were simple, rugged, material. He thought of ... atoms as though they were ... tennis balls. He discovered ... particles smaller than ... atoms, and discovered how they moved or bounced. Sometimes ... particles bounced ... wrong way. Then he inspected ... facts and made ... new but always simple picture. In that way he moved, as certainly as ... sleepwalker, from ... unstable radioactive atoms to ... discovery of ... nucleus and ... structure of ... atom. In 1919 he made one of ... significant discoveries of all ... time: he broke up ... nucleus of ... nitrogen by ... direct hit from ... alpha particle. That is, ... man could now get inside ... atomic nucleus.

ADJECTIVES

Ex. 1. Use the required form of the adjective:

1. He was the (*amusing*) lad you ever met.
2. He's a far (*intelligent*) person than my brother.
3. She was the (*practical*) of the family.
4. When they told me I was cured and could go, I can tell you I was (*afraid*) than glad.
5. I wanted to ask you both what you thought of my (*late*) films if you saw them.
6. He is (*talkative*) than his sister. He won't tire you so much.
7. He turned out to be (*angry*) than I had expected.
8. Today I'm no (*wise*) than yesterday.
9. This wine is the (*good*) I ever tasted.
10. Jack is the (*clever*) of the three brothers.
11. I don't think it matters in the (*little*) which seat I choose.
12. He felt (*bad*) yesterday than the day before.
13. The (*near*) house is three miles away.
14. Of the two evils let us choose the (*little*).
15. He was the (*late*) man to come.
16. She waited until her silence became the (*noticeable*) thing in the room.
17. The (*near*) item on the program is a piano sonata.
18. He is the (*tall*) of the two.
19. She is (*amusing*) in a small company.
20. Uncle Nick was the (*old*) son of the family.

Ex. 2. Translate the following into English using various sentence patterns to express comparison:

1. Чем меньше ты будешь говорить, тем лучше.
2. К сожалению, я не смог прийти так рано, как обещал.
3. Кошка упала с крыши, но чувствует себя нисколько не хуже от этого.
4. Комната хорошая, но все же не такая хорошая, как бы мне хотелось.
5. Чем больше человек имеет, тем больше ему хочется.
6. Я не так молод, как вы.
7. Погода меняется к лучшему.

8. Окно узкое, как дверь.
9. Суп хорошо пахнет, а на вкус он еще лучше.
10. Как пройти к ближайшей почте?
11. Если он поможет нам, тем лучше.
12. Если он не делает уроков, тем хуже для него.
13. Чем скорее ты сделаешь это, тем лучше.
14. Он становился все слабее и слабее.
15. На этот раз у вас меньше ошибок.

Ex. 3. Translate the following into English using substantivized adjectives where possible:

1. Слепых обучают ремеслам, чтобы они могли работать.
2. Нужны медсестры для ухода за ранеными.
3. Доктор хочет осмотреть раненого.
4. После отъезда сына они перестали приглашать молодежь.
5. Молодежи нравится все делать по-своему.
6. Англичане любят чай.
7. В гостинице было много англичан.
8. Больной попросил воды.
9. Он считал своим долгом помочь бедняку.
10. Работа по спасению пострадавших продолжалась до глубокой ночи.
11. Ты говоришь как неграмотный человек.
12. Он всегда навещал больных два раза в день.
13. Он надеялся застать юношу дома.
14. Для безграмотных были организованы вечерние занятия.
15. Шестерых из пострадавших было разрешено взять домой.

PRONOUNS

Ex. 1. Use the appropriate personal pronouns:

1. ... say there's been a great earthquake in the Pacific.
2. If ... see a giraffe once a year ... remains a spectacle; if ... see ... daily ... becomes part of the scenery.
3. "Mary's married now," said Mrs Scott. "... was in the 'Times'."
4. The "Friedrich Weber" was a freighter sailing from Hamburg to Colombo. ... also carried passengers.
5. There was a lot of noise all around now, and amongst could hear a plane flying unusually low.
6. Pat soon made ... clear that ... did not want to stay there long.
7. I got my hat and beat
8. He is dreadfully ugly. ... must not start when ... see ... , or ... will put ... off. ... doesn't like ... to feel sorry for
9. We were climbing a steep hill and the car throbbed as if ... were going to expire.
10. ... was cold to sit on the terrace, pretending that ... was really a summer evening.
11. "Our aim is to keep Italy out of the war until ... is strong enough to come in on our side," said the colonel.
12. Poor old England! I don't suppose I shall ever see ... again.

Ex. 2. Choose between a possessive pronoun and the definite article:

1. She got to ... feet and began to brush off ... dress.
2. Mr Black gave ... wife a leather bag for ... birthday.
3. Don't show this letter to ... brother.
4. There was a cold wind blowing, so I put on ... heavy coat.
5. He took me by ... hand and led out of the room.
6. His father touched him on ... arm.
7. He took the child into ... arms.
8. What have you done to ... face?
9. He patted Jack heartily on ... shoulder.
10. He bent ... head low.
11. She slapped him on ... cheek.
12. It's going to rain. I'd better take ... raincoat.
13. She put ... glass back on the table.
14. He crossed ... legs.

15. He was wounded in ... leg.
16. He buttoned up ... coat.
17. He caught me by ... sleeve.

Ex. 3. Use the appropriate form of possessive pronouns:

1. The man next door has been busy cutting the grass in *(he)* garden.
2. He put *(he)* hand in *(she)*.
3. "This foolish wife of *(I)* thinks I'm a great artist," said he.
4. Very well, Mother, I'll have *(I)* hair cut this afternoon.
5. Then he stopped and pointed and said: "Those are peas." I said, "We've got some peas, too." "I expect *(you)* are bigger than *(our)*," he said politely.
6. Edwin said, "Dear Mary, we all felt with you. *(you)* distress was *(we)*."
7. We can do *(we)* shopping before lunch.
8. There's a ghastly article of *(he)* about it in this evening's paper.
9. She folded the letter and replaced it in *(it)* envelope.
10. The children had had *(they)* tea. Kate was late for *(she)* as usual, Mary and Paul were having *(they)*.
11. This demand of *(they)* is quite ridiculous.
12. She makes all *(she)* clothes herself.
13. This book is *(I)*. There is *(I)* name on it.

Ex. 4. Supply self-pronouns where possible:

1. We enjoyed ... at the dance.
2. She had made ... very unpopular.
3. Why is she sitting all by ... in the dark?
4. Jessica looked at ... in the long mirror.
5. I liked having lodgings of my own, where I could be by ...
6. I closed the door behind ...
7. Every man is important to ... at one time or another.
8. All day the children were beside ... from excitement.
9. The young leaves unfolded to their utmost and the fields generously spread ... on either hand.
10. He was amiability ...
11. I found ... doing nearly all the talking.
12. I ... married early, and nothing good came of it.

Ex. 5. Use one of the demonstrative pronouns:

1. ... is a cooking apple, ... an eating one.
2. She gave the ... answer as before.
3. "I'm going alone and ... 's ...," I said.
4. What do you want me to do with ... ?
5. His mental level at the time of his death was ... of a four-year-old child.
6. He dined there only on Sundays, and not every Sunday at ...
7. Do you see ... bushes on the other side of the river?
8. Well, ...'s exactly what I did.
9. Don't be in ... a hurry.
10. He continued to frequent the ... café as when he had stayed at the hotel.
11. I believe you but there are ... who wouldn't.
12. ... is what I thought last year.
13. ... is life.
14. I can't find all the books you asked me for. I put ... I found on your desk.
15. ... is what I want you to do.
16. I have divided the books into two piles. ... are to be kept. ... are to be sold.
17. I have had ... a busy morning.
18. My seat was next to ... of John's mother.
19. He can't be more than three or four years older than you, if ...
20. "One can't compare Chopin's waltzes with ... of today," said she.
21. My services, ... as they are, are at your disposal.

Ex. 6. Supply *some*, *any* or *no*:

1. If you have ... news, call me back.
2. She helped me borrow ... more money.
3. There is hardly ... place in this house where we can talk alone.
4. ... boy at the school had ever taken a scholarship to the university.
5. It meant real hardship to my mother unless I earned ... money at once.
6. My mother hoped that perhaps the school had ... funds to give me a grant.
7. It was unlikely that ... of the guests would take particular notice of it.

8. They understood each other without ... words.
9. "Let's go back home. It's already late." "I'd rather stay out a little longer." "I suppose we've got to go home ... time."
10. There isn't ... boot-polish in this tin.
11. You have ... fine flowers in your garden.
12. Go and ask him for ... more paper. I haven't ... in my desk.
13. Later we had ... tea.
14. He wants ... more pudding. You can take it away.
15. There are ... matches left. We must buy ...
16. I wouldn't go to his concert. He is ... pianist.
17. ... time ago I read his story in a magazine.
18. I don't think there is ... milk left in the jug.
19. ... student can answer the question.

Ex. 7. Supply one of the compounds with *some*, *any* or *no*:

1. At the party you'll see ... you haven't met yet.
2. Will there be ... at the club so early?
3. I'm not going to see him because I have ... important to report.
4. I was late. I found ... in the house.
5. I am expecting ... at twelve o'clock.
6. I think there's ... wrong with my watch.
7. Is there ... at home?
8. The doorbell rang but there was ... there.
9. I know ... at all.
10. Otherwise there was hardly ... to occupy him.
11. "Why don't they do ... about me?" Mr Scot cried out hearing that his friend had got promoted.
12. ... can become a member of the club by paying a subscription.
13. When we get there it may be too late to do ...
14. ... has been here before us.
15. "Why don't you say ...?" he demanded.
16. In the winter he lived without doing ...
17. He wondered if he would ever again share ...'s emotion.
18. This is my affair and ... else's.
19. Sometimes he would sit silent and abstracted, taking no notice of ...
20. ... is better than ... in a situation like this.
21. Can't you do ... by yourself now?
22. I took care to ask him ... about his own doings.

23. Will you bring ... with you or will you come alone?
24. ... has any right to interfere in this matter.
25. If ... delays you, you must let me know.
26. It was clear that ... had happened.
27. ... at the airport could tell me ... about the Trianon hotel.
28. It's a cave. I'd like to find out if there's ... left inside.
29. He looked at my pictures and he didn't say ...
30. Her parents are ... much, you know. I'm afraid you will be disappointed.
31. But in any case, what can ... do?
32. ... had heard a rumour that he led a "wild" life.

Ex. 8. Use the pronoun *one* in the proper form and, if necessary, with the required article:

1. ... man's meat is another man's poison.
2. His parents never appeared in the parish church except on special occasions. Mr Evans' funeral was such ...
3. They are six in the family. ... you saw are David and Tommy.
4. Brown's old car is much better than our new ...
5. There are woollen gloves and leather ... in the crate.
6. It is the most natural thing to start talking to someone who knows nothing whatever about ... and who is never likely to cross ... way again.
7. He was rather pale, and the expression on his face was ... I had never seen before.
8. "Which girl is Jean?" " ... in the green dress."
9. "What has happened to all the brushes?" "I saw ... on the table in the hall."
10. Such ... as you want is very rarely seen.

Ex. 9. Choose between *no one* and *none*:

1. ... tried to teach her anything.
2. ... of us is perfect; we all make mistakes.
3. ... of us knew how ill she was.
4. I'm sure you heard it from Mary, ... else could tell you that.
5. ... had anything to gain by his death.
6. I wanted some more coffee but there was ... left.
7. ... of them knows his duty yet.
8. We had ... to give us accurate information, let alone advice.

9. Philip slowly mounted the stairs. ... of his family was yet up.
10. I looked around the room, expecting to see piles of books; ... were visible.
11. ... of us knows how much he has suffered.
12. Since ... had an answer to his question, silence fell in the room.
13. He asked for food but his mother said there was
14. ... of the new men have been able to pass the test.
15. Of all the girls he phoned ... were at home.
16. During that time he saw ... who could tell him what had gone wrong.
17. ... of us were sure of the facts.
18. "Where are the apples?" "There are"
19. A hundred yards or so from the cottage stood a brick house that looked unfinished. ... in the party gave it a second thought.

Ex. 10. Choose between *all* and a compound with *every*:

1. I shall want to hear ... they say.
2. She took the initiative and herself spoke to ... she knew.
3. He couldn't help noticing how well dressed ... was.
4. I want ... to be happy.
5. Then, to ...'s surprise, she married someone quite undistinguished.
6. ... who have studied this issue have come to the same conclusion.
7. She believed that ... was watching her.
8. ... of his friends had offered him his help.
9. Soon ... were asleep.
10. The lady laughed immoderately at ... that was said to her.
11. ... has been taken away that could be removed.
12. ... felt indignant when he began hitting the boy with his stick.

Ex. 11. Choose between *all*, *every* and *each*:

1. I have ... book he has ever written.
2. He shouted her name twice, ... time banging his fist on the table.
3. He had been brought up by a mother who had taught him that ... pleasure must be paid for.
4. They did not talk much about what ... feared most.

5. ... trunks must be labelled before being deposited in the left-luggage office.
6. He has ... right to know who you are going to marry.
7. That's the sort of job ... boys like doing.
8. They broke into little groups; ... had his own wonderful story to tell.
9. ... the people were cheering loudly.
10. Before he left the classroom he gave ... boy a task.
11. She had something to say on ... subject.
12. ... the money was spent.
13. ... the family were present.
14. And I had to sit out there with ... eye on me.
15. He has ... chance to win.
16. He looked at ... of us in turn.
17. Hugh had ... advantage of education.
18. I'd like you to make ... effort to obtain ... the data we spoke about.
19. Frank's wasn't a bad place. The tables had yellow tops which Frank wiped after ... customer.
20. Almost ... boys like sport.
21. The doctor took his gloves out, and pulled one on his left hand, concentrating on ... fold in the leather.
22. The actor could make you hear ... word in the last row of the gallery.

Ex. 12. Use the pronoun *other* in the proper form and with the required article:

1. I think the first thing to do is to have ... talk with your sister.
2. It was not a large garden, but it was long and narrow. John and I walked right to ... end of it in silence.
3. I talked to a lot of people. Some said that in the same circumstances they would do as they had done before. ... told me that if they had known what it would come to they wouldn't have ever done it.
4. Then I read the novels of George Meredith one after ...
5. ... day I made an epigram. I hope you'll like it.
6. They were going to get punished, one way or ...
7. The bar was kept by two very nice girls, one was American and ... English.
8. ... people have told me the same thing.

9. That night Kate was gay and could make ... laugh.
10. He was always somewhat indifferent to the feelings of ...
11. Well, I met him in the club ... night.
12. I made few friends in those days, for I was occupied with ... things.
13. Without ... word he started up the car.
14. He sat in ... arm-chair at the opposite side of the fire-place.
15. The servant opened the door and ushered in ... visitor.
16. Young men and young women would greet me on their way to or from the tennis court. Some found more to say to me than ...
17. The houses on ... side of the river were built out of gray stone.
18. Some people refused to take the advertisements and walked away and ... dropped them on the grass.
19. Why are you alone? Where are ...?
20. Would you like ... cup of tea?

Ex. 13. Use both, either or neither:

1. We drove along a wide road with ditches and trees on ... side.
2. Ed and I were ... very big men.
3. He invited us ... , but I knew he felt it irregular; he did not want ... of us at a family party.
4. The verandah stretched on ... side of me.
5. The first apple pie of the season was on the table and a large dish of purple grapes. Muriel was too angry to touch ...
6. I could hear them ... , but saw ...
7. Cords were drawn on ... side of the picture gallery on days when the public were admitted.
8. These are ... very gloomy rooms. I'm afraid ... will suit me.
9. ... his legs were broken in the accident.
10. "Which of the two newspapers would you like?" "Oh, ... will do."
11. She had brown shining hair which hung down on ... side of her face.
12. "What are you going to have, orange juice or Coke?" "... I'm not thirsty."
13. "Tell ... your mother and father that I'm expecting them to-night." "I'm afraid I won't see ... of them today."
14. "Which job are you going to take?" "I'm afraid ..."
15. She can play with the tennis racket in ... hand.

16. By that time ... his sisters had got married.
17. There were trees on ... bank.
18. You can borrow ... of my two cameras.
19. Nick and Tom are ... my friends. But ... is in the town now.
They are ... in the Navy.
20. "What have you written, a short story or an essay?" "I'm afraid it doesn't come within ... description."
21. "... the jars, the big one and the small one, are empty. You can take ... of them." "I'm afraid ... will do."
22. "She's either very ill or has gone away." "What can one do about it in ... case?"

Ex. 14. Choose between *much* and *many*, (*a*) *little* and (*a*) *few*:

1. Nowadays he was very busy and he saw ... of his old friends.
2. I suggested that he should get ... grapes and some bread.
3. Aunt Florrie had ... money while none of the other family had inherited as ... as a pound.
4. He was so happily absorbed in the building of his house that events outside it affected him ...
5. My sister spends so ... money on her clothes that she has none left for holidays.
6. My dear, I'm afraid I have not ... news to convey but still there are ... things I should like to add.
7. I began to miss London: it was not so ... that I had ... close friends there, for I have ... friends, but I missed variety.
8. Tom has eaten so ... that he can't move.
9. Adeline had slept ... last night and she had a headache.
10. She was glad to see me because I was English and she knew ... English people.
11. My engagements were ... and I was glad to accept the invitation.
12. He knew he was not a good teacher, and he intended to do ... of that.
13. At the bar ... men were discussing the coming elections in loud barking tones.
14. Virginia returned to England at the moment when ... were leaving it.
15. I have so ... things to do that I don't know which to do first.
16. Last week there was so ... rain that I was not able to go out.

Ex. 15. Make the following sentences affirmative and replace *many* and *much* by suitable expressions:

1. Ann had not had *many* visitors lately.
2. He didn't earn *much* money and lived in the country.
3. I drove along the edge of the sea. There were not *many* people about.
4. Were there *many* things that your mother minded your doing?
5. He hasn't *much* work to do this afternoon.
6. Dick doesn't smoke *much*.
7. There isn't *much* time to catch the train.
8. I didn't get *much* to eat when I had dinner with the Greens.
9. I haven't *much* time for watching TV.
10. My father didn't read *many* books on economics.

Ex. 16. Use interrogative or conjunctive pronouns:

1. They had brought few books with them ... she hadn't read.
2. You're one of the few people ... I'd like to know better.
3. "... of the two of them is right?" he asked me.
4. I don't honestly see ... I can do about it.
5. That is the worst news ... we've ever had from you.
6. He was compared with everyone ... had ever written a successful travel book and the accents of ... were certainly to be caught in his own works.
7. ... do we call the sea between England and France?
8. I told him everything ... was relevant.
9. ... I saw was a solid-looking brick house.
10. ... pronoun is always written with a capital letter?
11. In this room there was a small grate, on the mantleshef of ... she had arranged two vases of flowers.
12. Looking at him she wondered ... sort of small boy he had been.
13. ... cost more money, ready-made clothes or tailor-made clothes?
14. All ... they would tell me was that Uncle Nick was ill.
15. ... did he say?
16. There had grown between them an understanding ... required no words.
17. ... other things did you buy?
18. Now ... you see all the family together tell me ... you think of us.
19. "I have never been given any of Granny's things." "... about her watch?"

20. It is for you to decide ... is to speak to the chief.
21. They're a family that would quarrel about ... way a doorknob turns.
22. ... quality do you admire in a man?
23. He is the man ... car I noticed in the square.
24. Take these books to your brother and ask him ... are his.
25. If you ask for "the German", every one will know ... you mean.
26. I didn't tell her ... it was all about.
27. He examined the official records to find out in ... name the house and plot were registered.
28. They explained ... they wanted.
29. I was sure that ... he said about the girl was true.
30. Later that afternoon Phil went to San Fernando, where he soon found the house in ... the Klement family was said to live.
31. They asked a young woman ... the street was called.
32. Then they were asked ... company they represented and ... sort of factory they intended to put up in the area.
33. Tell me ... daughter you're going to take along with you and ... is staying behind.

ADVERBS

Ex. 1. Choose the right adverb:

1. He stood (*close/closely*) to the door.
2. You can get the book (*free/freely*).
3. He couldn't explain it (*clear/clearly*).
4. I (*hard/hardly*) studied at all last term.
5. You guessed (*wrong/wrongly*).
6. He opened the door (*wide/widely*).
7. She was (*high/highly*) praised for her work.
8. He has been working (*hard/hardly*).
9. I'm getting (*pretty/prettily*) tired.
10. You can speak (*free/freely*) in front of him.
11. My friends are (*most/mostly*) students.
12. I haven't been to the theatre much (*late/late*).
13. I (*wrong/wrongly*) assumed that you were my friend.
14. He (*close/closely*) inspected the lock.
15. He came back (*late/late*).
16. You're doing (*fine/fine*).
17. Take it (*easy/easy*).
18. The kite flew (*high/high*).
19. The girl was dancing (*pretty/prettily*).
20. I understood his English (*easy/easy*).
21. He pulled the strings (*tight/tight*).
22. It was (*near/near*) midnight.
23. Of all fruit he loved apples (*most/most*).
24. They differed (*wide/wide*) in opinions.
25. The car drove up (*near/near*) to the gate.
26. I (*clean/clean*) forgot about it.
27. He loved his parents (*dear/dear*).
28. He will be in (*short/short*).
29. He bought it (*cheap/cheap*).
30. His refusal cost him (*dear/dear*).
31. He turned round (*sharp/sharp*).
32. They travelled (*cheap/cheap*).
33. They treated him (*fair/fair*).
34. The foreman cut me (*short/short*).
35. She clenched the letter (*tight/tight*) in her hand.
36. She wiped the table (*clean/clean*).

37. He always travelled (*light/lightly*).
38. You must play (*fair/fairly*).
39. He kissed me (*light/lightly*) on the cheek.
40. It was ten o'clock (*sharp/sharply*).
41. Stand (*clear/clearly*) of the machine.

Ex. 2. Find the best possible place for the adverbs:

1. I can't do it (*possibly*).
2. He has mentioned it (*never*).
3. We just watched TV (*tonight*).
4. Has he been out of his native town (*ever*)?
5. Mother is in the kitchen (*now*).
6. He can be seen in the local pub in the evening (*usually*).
7. What have you been doing (*here*)?
8. He will be sick of living alone (*soon*).
9. She went to bed (*early*).
10. They all went upstairs (*presently*).
11. "Fools," she said to herself (*angrily*).
12. She was indifferent to him (*entirely*).
13. He looked hurt (*deeply*).
14. He could have managed it (*easily*).
15. She listened to him (*respectively*).
16. They kept laughing (*uproariously*).
17. She was trying to explain (*simply*).
18. I think she's lying (*frankly*).
19. They've forgotten the time (*probably*).
20. The visit has been very successful (*politically*).
21. He knew what was happening (*perhaps*).
22. I did not see him (*honestly*).
23. The letter is sent off (*anyway*).
24. He is very happy (*obviously*).
25. The players could see the ball (*hardly*).
26. Turning the books over he looked at the titles (*rapidly*).
27. We had a nice game (*certainly*).
28. The idea passed through my mind (*idly*).
29. She spoke Italian (*perfectly*).
30. I must just wait for his letter (*patiently*).
31. She began to cry (*hysterically*).
32. You can see in people's thoughts (*sometimes, clearly*).

KEY TO EXERCISES

The Verb: Finite Forms

Note: Alternatives are given in brackets.

Ex. 3.

- | | |
|---|------------------------|
| 1. don't ... think, is behaving | 15. come |
| 2. live | 16. are ... doing |
| 3. change, get | 17. stands |
| 4. is ... doing | 18. goes |
| 5. do ... have | 19. is greeting |
| 6. does ... play (is ... playing) | 20. comes |
| 7. is keeping, doesn't ... tell | 21. am ... joking |
| 8. arrive | 22. travel |
| 9. is doing | 23. do ... do |
| 10. don't touch | 24. is... trying |
| 11. are speaking | 25. is not seeing |
| 12. is ... calling | 26. feel, don't ... do |
| 13. believe, feels (is feeling) | |
| 14. don't like, am not talking,
presents | |

Ex. 5.

1. "Where is Ted?" "Out in the garden." "What is he doing there?"
2. My brother will never forgive me if I let you go.
3. I haven't the faintest idea what you are talking about.
4. Every room in the hotel has a bath.
5. He heard her saying into the telephone: "No, I'm all right. I'm awake and having breakfast."
6. I ought perhaps to warn you. We teach by the direct method. We do not speak anything but Esperanto.
7. Does that mean that I'm growing old?
8. "And what do people say (are ... saying) about me here?" she asked.
9. But they've done nothing yet. What do you think they are waiting for?
10. These people talk a language no one knows.
11. Their company is building a new car. That's big news.
12. You know how he loves cars.
13. By the way, what's happening here?
14. Whenever you come across a word you don't know, look it up.
15. "I do not sleep in the house," he said.
16. Let me pour you out some water. Your hands are still trembling.

17. He said, "We'll never get up to London if you do not drive carefully."
18. "It's surprising," he said, "how easily he makes friends."
19. "And what is Sandy's mother doing in Japan?" "She's gone there with a delegation of women."
20. Do you remember James? He is working for the new publishers and doing quite nicely.
21. I'm very busy with the new school we're building.
22. Sam, please run off and play in the park. Your father is not feeling too well.
23. I don't know why I'm crying.
24. "Have you eaten yet?" "No, not yet. I'm washing my hair."

Ex. 7.

1. "It's my mistake. I apologize," he said.
2. "Where is the lieutenant?" "He just lies up there, watching the enemy patrol."
3. I still do not understand you.
4. At the crossroads the old man said hastily: "I leave you here. I'm going to my daughter's."
5. I tell you this as a warning, Milly.
6. Does he know we are leaving?
7. "Do you want to tell me that my father is a liar?" "No, no, young man, you exaggerate."
8. What do you mean, Sam? You talk in riddles.
9. Don't be so rude. It doesn't suit you.
10. Can't you see I'm tired? All I want is a cigarette and a bath.
11. "How do you feel (are ... feeling) now? Why don't you eat your soup?" "I don't want it."
12. "Is Paul around?" "He's taking a bath."
13. "Why are you so bad-tempered?" "I'm not bad-tempered." "Well, don't shout." "I'm not shouting."

Ex. 8.

- | | |
|----------------|----------------------|
| 1. do ... go | 8. am not going |
| 2. arrive | 9. returns |
| 3. is leaving | 10. do ... go |
| 4. do ... do | 11. dig |
| 5. am selling | 12. is coming |
| 6. leaves | 13. am going, begins |
| 7. do ... tell | 14. are ... doing |

Ex. 9.

- | | |
|--------|------------|
| 1. get | 3. will be |
| 2. is | 4. are |

5. gets
6. approaches
7. will meet
8. is not
9. treat
10. are

11. will deliver
12. goes
13. switches
14. is
15. 'll be
16. is

Ex. 10.

1. am trying
2. do
3. are ... wearing (do ... wear)
4. doesn't break
5. is driving
6. is ... trying
7. is ... doing, is writing
8. knows
9. do ... do
10. is waiting
11. is
12. don't ... try
13. are not feeling (don't feel)
14. am starting, are ... looking, are joining
15. do ... want, am watching
16. are ... standing, are ... thinking
17. do ... play
18. are ... doing, am getting
19. is being, don't ... stop
20. do ... play
21. do ... do, is

22. get
23. is suffering
24. don't go, gets, does
25. changes
26. do ... hear, am waiting
27. am joking
28. is growing
29. sails, leaves
30. are looking (look)
31. think, are doing
32. flies
33. are ... taking, are leaving, am returning
34. says, lies, lies
35. don't say
36. are ... wanting
37. are becoming
38. leaves
39. am seeing
40. takes
41. leaves
42. are ... leaving, are seeing

Ex. 13.

1. have ... seen
2. met
3. have met, have spoken
4. have got, have ... raised, have ... been, have ... done, have sold, have told, haven't ... told
5. has been, has ... done, hasn't done, has ... seen
6. have ... heard, were, slipped, tried, was, have been
7. had, happened
8. found
9. has arrived, found, didn't hear, knocked

10. lit, walked
11. spent
12. said, was, did ... mean
13. did ... speak, spoke
14. have seen, has ... arrived, saw, have ... seen, have met
15. had, have disappeared
16. have acted, have ... deceived
17. have ... read, did ... like
18. came, leaned, kissed, did ... have
19. didn't ... hear, said
20. was, have picked
21. has been, said, went
22. has had, have ... had, have had, have paid
23. have been
24. happened, did

Ex. 15.

1. She was alone when her husband came in. He gave an astonished look about the room. "What's this?" he demanded. "I've moved in." She smiled up at him. "The house is not ready. You can't do it." "I have done it."
2. When Molly entered the room I said: "I've brought my old stamp album here. I met your husband on the doorstep. He asked me to leave it with you."
3. "Good morning," he said. "May I see Mary?" "She is not here," her mother answered. "I had a talk with her which she didn't like and she's left."
4. "I've telephoned for the doctor," his sister said coming into the room. When Robert came to, he asked: "Did you say you telephoned for the doctor? Stop him if possible. I am quite recovered. I can't imagine why I fainted."
5. "Where is he? I must see him." "He's gone off to the woods."
6. "Is Daddy downstairs?" "Yes." "Did he go over to the Smiths?" "Yes." "What did Mr Smith say?" "Daddy did not see him."
7. She stood up from the table. "I must go and lock the gate. It's got dark."
8. "Look," he said, holding out a brush in each hand, "what my cousin has given me. He left them on my dressing table."
9. The boy came out and recited his piece (poem) in a clear voice. His mother was the first to speak. "Come here," she said to him. "Who taught you that?" "I made it up myself," the boy answered.
10. My clothes are not in the room. They have taken them away.
11. He picked off the flower. "Look," he said, "what I have done." "Why did you do it?" "I don't know."
12. What have I done anyway to make Father so angry?
13. Then they all moved into the dining-room and took their seats at the

- table. "But my brother and I have had our breakfast," Meg suddenly exclaimed, "I forgot"
14. Molly, something awful has happened. An infant was found on our neighbours' doorstep.
15. They say that the girl and her aunt have sold their cottage and are going to relations somewhere.

Ex. 18.

1. have been
2. haven't seen
3. have been walking, have had
4. have been cooking, cleaning and digging
5. has ... been saying
6. have learned, have been
7. have been sitting
8. haven't been standing
9. have ... been
10. hasn't worked
11. has been going
12. have known
13. have ... seen
14. haven't read
15. have lived
16. has been going, have known, have known
17. has been having

Ex. 19.

1. Your brother and I have been talking about this affair today. That is why I have come to see you.
2. "I have been thinking about this book," he said, "and I have come to the conclusion that we cannot publish it."
3. "Is the truck still there?" "Yes. They've been working a couple of hours trying to move it. But they've failed so far."
4. "What have you been doing, Pat? You are covered in earth."
5. "Well, you've heard about Molly, haven't you?" "I have been hearing about her for two years."
6. I've been noticing a difference in you.
7. "How are you?" "I'm a little tired. I've been scrubbing the walls all afternoon."
8. The boy needs a beating. He's been asking for it for months.
9. "Tom and I," she said brightly, entering the room, "have been having such fun. We've been looking at some of those albums."
10. "Oh, I am quite satisfied with the place I've chosen. I shall live on berries and fish and read all the books I have been wanting to read." "Where will you get them?" "I've brought them with me."

11. "This hospital has been good for languages," said the girl. "Since I've been here I've spoken (been speaking) French with two doctors, and German with the nurses, and I've picked up a lot of Spanish from a patient. Music too. I practise every day. The last few months I've been taking a course on the history of music."

Ex. 20.

1. When they were left alone, she asked: "What's been happening here?"
2. "What if I ask Philip to lend me some money?" "You can try. He has been fishing. It's a suitable moment."
3. "How cold your hands are, Mary!" "I have been sitting by the window marking the notebooks."
4. "Oh, there you are, Tom. I've been looking for you. There is a young man waiting to see you."
5. With stern parents and two older brothers I've always been hearing someone say: "Philip, you ought to be ashamed of yourself."
6. "I'm sorry I'm late, Mother. I had to go to town and got caught in the rain and was wet through. I've been changing."
7. "Hullo! Where is everybody?" "I'll be right down," Dolly cried. "I've been shutting the windows."
8. He thanked his sister for the present and said: "It's just what I need. The moths have been eating my woollen underwear."

Ex. 23.

have ... been, did ... join, did ... serve, did ... see, did ... remain, were, was, was, were, were, have ... been feeling (have ... felt), haven't ... left, have ... been serving

Ex. 24.

1. did ... find
2. have ... heard, didn't ... tell
3. did ... learn
4. didn't ... tell, have ... done, did ... manage, did ... buy
5. have ... been
6. did... have
7. did... begin
8. did ... teach, did ... stay
9. did ...go

Ex. 26.

- | | |
|-----------------|---------------|
| 1. fought | 4. slept |
| 2. met, had | 5. didn't see |
| 3. have... seen | 6. had |

- | | |
|-----------------|-------------------|
| 7. hasn't had | 11. had |
| 8. hasn't had | 12. have ... seen |
| 9. regarded | 13. brought |
| 10. haven't had | 14. seemed |

Ex. 28.

1. "Can you tell me whether Miss Smith went on the train to London this morning?" he asked the station master. "No. She missed it."
2. They talked for about two hours and he said he had some friends to see.
3. His mother is dead. She was a teacher for years.
4. Look here, John, your landlady says you've been in bed all day. Well, that won't do, will it?
5. She was surprised to see him. "Did you not get my letter?" "Your letter? No." "Of course you couldn't. I forgot. It was only posted this morning."
6. She turned sharply to her husband and said: "I'm going to take the car home." "You haven't driven for months," he protested. "I haven't forgotten how."
7. All the three of us walked together along the street. For a time no one spoke.
8. "Uncle Tom is coming," Meg announced. "Mother had a letter from him this morning."
9. I have hardly had time to glance at my newspaper this week.
10. "You ought to go up and see Willy," she said. "You haven't seen him for three weeks. Have you quarrelled or something?"
11. They sat side by side for a long time. Jack was the first to break the silence.

Ex. 30.

1. is looking, have been meeting
2. have been studying, am reading
3. have been asking, is ... finishing
4. am visiting, have ... been staying
5. have been making, is having
6. is talking, has been driving
7. are doing, have been doing
8. are having, have been wanting
9. have been staying, are not thinking
10. is waiting, has ... been waiting

Ex. 32.

- | | |
|-------------|---------------------------|
| 1. have put | 3. have seen |
| 2. is | 4. have finished (finish) |

- | | |
|----------------|--------------------|
| 5. return | 14. have gone |
| 6. have read | 15. have had |
| 7. has seen | 16. has set (sets) |
| 8. have talked | 17. has finished |
| 9. die | 18. have left |
| 10. have seen | 19. decide |
| 11. have gone | 20. have asked |
| 12. wake | |
| 13. refuses | |

Ex. 33.

1. have ... known, were
2. saw, are ... doing, slept, have taken, have slept (have been sleeping), has been, have ... seen, do ... know, is talking, started
3. don't play, have ... had
4. did not have, is getting, does ... look, notice, was, saw, didn't know, were
5. kept, haven't been ringing, have ... been doing, is
6. did ... get
7. haven't sung, came, have forgotten
8. have been sitting, haven't dozed
9. don't want, have been, have been, are ... catching, arrives, have written, are flying
10. disappeared, have ... heard
11. didn't clear, have ... left
12. left
13. have ... painted
14. came, have been
15. were
16. have ... received, have been, haven't looked, wrote, haven't opened
17. have ... had
18. met, talked, put, have come, have been toppling

Ex. 34.

a) is, has gone, didn't say, helped, left, am, am, have been, have left (am leaving), did ... leave, are, did ... leave, has not gone, did not catch, said, was not, was, telephoned, have got, is (has been), has done, said, has found

b) is, was, have heard, has turned, is, is, is, writes, does ... write, know, set, do ... think, haven't thought

c) opened, could, called, reassured, are, are coming, are ... feeling (do... feel), rubbed, saw, am, has happened, am, are, were, did ... get, dragged, are, are, cried, is ... looking, got, have been, are

d) seemed, got, have written, is, is, has been, have ... been working

e) is, see, is, have made, went, got, boiled, was, carried, set, placed,

sat, is coming, hear, went, was, stopped, got, have been, refuses, come, left, is, is, have been playing, came, have been having, are

Ex. 37.

- | | |
|----------------------------|--|
| 1. had, was laughing | 12. was, were shaking |
| 2. moved, was coming | 13. was, was acting, was amusing |
| 3. was waiting, arrived | 14. were joining |
| 4. was, was ... teasing | 15. knew, were going |
| 5. wanted, were coming | 16. had, was ... asking |
| 6. saw, became | 17. noticed, was standing, was talking |
| 7. was having, started | 18. came, was searching, carried, was ... losing |
| 8. walked, was not working | |
| 9. looked, was coming | |
| 10. led | |
| 11. found, was speaking | |

Ex. 38.

- | | |
|--------------------------|--------------------------------|
| 1. talked, drove | 12. stopped, was getting |
| 2. were drinking, said | 13. was standing, opened, came |
| 3. sang, beat | 14. listened, complained |
| 4. disappeared, stirred | 15. waited, sat |
| 5. slowed, mounted | 16. didn't say, were eating |
| 6. heard, came | 17. talked, lectured |
| 7. came, climbed, held | 18. looked, waited |
| 8. called, was preparing | 19. tore, was changing |
| 9. gave, entered | 20. were talking, came |
| 10. watched, walked | 21. stood, were |
| 11. looked, came | 22. examined, organized |

Ex. 39.

1. While the porter and the driver were putting his bags in the car, Jack lit a cigarette.
2. At that moment he saw his brother. He was standing beyond the glass doors.
3. The woman said something to the boy who was walking beside her.
4. When the boy fell asleep, he was still holding the new toy.
5. He awoke. The telephone was ringing by the side of his bed.
6. Joe was happy that his brother was driving more slowly now.
7. She was sitting in the back of the room, facing the door. She was wearing the same dress and she was looking boldly at a party of three men, who were standing across the room from her. As Jack approached her, she smiled at him. He was aware that the three men were watching him.

Ex. 40.

1. does ... like, sees, meet, looks, passed, was ... staring, said, didn't ... bother
2. was lunching, was trying, was doing, rang, answered, came, said, says, has started
3. saw, was lying, had, was bleeding, were standing, yelled, have hurt, said, didn't touch, came, opened, said, has happened, am
4. was, went, looked, was walking, was delivering, was polishing, were wagging, turned, went
5. were eating, were drinking, smiled, said, did ... enjoy
6. is ... looking
7. melted, touched
8. has ... bothered
9. have ... played, came
10. laid, fried
11. wrote, was returning
12. don't understand, has had
13. have saved
14. have ... been, have been
15. have translated
16. have improved, have known
17. has gone, was
18. looked, walked

Ex. 41.

a) left, went, saw, was moving, recognized, called, are getting, straightened, am not, look, told, showed, have taken, need, began, are looking, are having, have paired, are strolling, consider, have paired, doesn't sound, are ... getting, do ... like, write, spoke

b) came, saw, said, went, have had, have worked, are not leaving, are taking, are going, spend, have saved, does ... know, told

Ex. 42.

aroused, was thinking, was wondering, was, said, did not turn, heard, was, forgot, was staring, heard, was, was, led, drew, was, was, knows, am, did ... say, repeated, wondered, saw, waited, came, nodded, came, rested, slipped, knew, wanted, wants, know, does ... consider, nodded, am, was, broke, haven't changed, haven't got, am not looking, believe, is, had, didn't accept, sent, remained, sent, has sent, knows, am, have not kissed, have dared, didn't ... dare, hadn't, was starving, have been putting, have not changed, am, have not developed, is puzzling, wants, don't want, is, have received, am earning, are breaking, know, love, love, was, have loved, have done, requires, sat, knew, began, have said, did not love, have learned, have learned, am, care, has gone, leaned, closed, forgot, was, was trying, forgot, were

Ex. 44.

- | | |
|--|-----------------------------------|
| 1. came, had ... heard | 7. pressed, had ... been, became, |
| 2. re-read, had written | was, stepped, looked, was, was, |
| 3. knew, had made, giggled | were, felt, had expected |
| 4. had arranged | 8. set, was, felt, knew, began, |
| 5. rose, shot, had read, stood, had done, was | found, wrote, wrote, had taken, |
| 6. entered, found, knew, had happened, had left, knew, hadn't ... thought, wasn't, had loved | had stayed, was, was, lived, |
| | saw, began, found, had gone, |
| | went, was, had treated, felt, |
| | had written |

Ex. 45.

I dressed and went out into the garden. The sun was rising. There was no wind but the leaves were still falling in the garden. Over the night the birches had turned yellow up to their tops.

I went back into the house. It was warm in there. The little birch that my son had brought and that we had planted in a tub, stood by the window. Suddenly I noticed that it, too, had turned yellow over the night and there were already a few leaves lying on the floor.

The warmth of the room had not saved the little birch. In a day it dropped all of its leaves. My son and we all were very disappointed. We had grown used to the idea that it would remain green throughout the winter. The forester only smiled when we told him how we had tried to save the green leaves of the little birch.

Ex. 46.

- | | |
|--------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| 1. had been | 9. had been writing, hadn't eaten |
| 2. had stayed | 10. hadn't seen |
| 3. had been doing | 11. had been |
| 4. had known | 12. had been raining |
| 5. had been importing | 13. had had |
| 6. had been, had lived | 14. had been sleeping |
| 7. had ... been swimming | 15. had been |
| 8. had been eating | 16. hadn't written, had been working |

Ex. 49.

1. He raised his head from a cup of coffee which he had been stirring but not drinking.
2. Tom never wanted his mother to know what we had been doing.
3. She could see from the wet look of their costumes that they had just been swimming.
4. The people she met seemed to know where she had been and what she had been doing.

5. In the typewriter there was a sheet of paper on which somebody had been learning to type.
6. When he came back we tried to pretend that we had not been discussing him.
7. Max picked up the book he had been reading and turned down a corner of a page to mark the spot.
8. I sat in the kitchen smoking. Flora, who had been playing in the sitting-room, came to see what I was doing.

Ex. 50.

- | | |
|----------------------|-----------------|
| 1. returned | 8. had been |
| 2. reached | 9. had made |
| 3. had finished | 10. had dragged |
| 4. had mastered | 11. got |
| 5. got, had prepared | 12. began |
| 6. had seen | 13. had found |
| 7. had talked | |

Ex. 51.

1. had been, was wearing, was burning, had laid, had lit
2. has been shopping, hasn't bought, has been fishing, hasn't caught
3. went, was standing, had, had been trying, had been saying
4. found, was sitting, had been swimming, was lying, had been swimming, was shaking, was spraying, had fluffed, was watching, had got, were walking
5. was, said, could, didn't know, have been doing, have been, have read, have been, have ... had, have worked, was, have been, have concluded, haven't been reading
6. realized, had been, had been saying, had forgotten
7. have been meaning, have been
8. approached, fell
9. had been walking, had passed, appeared
10. live, visits
11. had been pacing, had stopped, was leaning, told
12. remembered, had met, was working
13. are having, have been wanting
14. don't know, have ... stopped
15. reached, was, was acting, had had
16. has stayed, fears
17. was paying, came
18. was sitting, had, had been crying
19. have been, did ... give, were
20. had had, were sailing
21. did ... see, had

22. had been playing, saw, was sitting
23. was ringing, unlocked
24. had made, did, thought
25. was watching, saw, hadn't set, was advertising
26. came, stopped, was standing, didn't see, was scribbling

Ex. 52.

1. had ... changed, was waiting
2. had come, was standing
3. had stopped, was trying
4. sat (was sitting), had retired, were talking, had gone, were ... playing, was sitting
5. had stopped, was shivering
6. had laid, was taking
7. had taken, was carrying
8. had finished, was drinking
9. had begun, was raining
10. was towing, had swum, was accompanying

Ex. 53.

1. He put his hands on the table again and looked at them.
2. He had put his hands on the table again and was looking at them.
3. The boy left the boat and swam to the beach.
4. The boy had left the boat and was swimming to the beach.
5. They had finished their meal and were drinking coffee.
6. She finished eating and took the plates back to the kitchen.
7. They came out of the cinema and walked up the street.
8. They had come out of the cinema and were walking up the street.
9. Joe had come down into the hall and was waiting for his friend.
10. The wind had stopped, but it was still raining.
11. The children had lost their ball in the long grass and were looking for it.
12. The wind had blown off his hat and it was rolling down the street.
13. The wind blew off his hat and it rolled down the street.
14. Mary found an old hat and tried it on.
15. Mary had found an old hat and was trying it on.

Ex. 55.

- | | |
|------------------------------|-----------------------|
| 1. saw, came | 7. smiled, seemed |
| 2. got, hadn't arrived | 8. went, was sitting |
| 3. turned, was ... walking | 9. had tidied, went |
| 4. walked, carried | 10. met, was having |
| 5. had not walked, went | 11. finished, clapped |
| 6. returned, had disappeared | 12. had, got |

13. had been, found
14. looked, were dancing
15. asked, had finished
16. came, was eating
17. was doing, arrived
18. went, looked
19. hadn't gone, noticed

20. had gone, went
21. was getting, offered
22. hadn't talked, felt
23. shrugged, explained
24. had shown, had fed, demanded
25. returned, drew, sat

Ex. 56.

1. telephoned, reached
2. came, got
3. disliked, had been
4. dialed, replaced, answered

5. disappeared, had had
6. heard, knew
7. opened, entered
8. entered, was

Ex. 57.

1. had had, invited
2. saw, (had) arrived
3. had lunched, went, sat
4. was, had gone

5. had taken, went
6. couldn't, had happened
7. had gone, locked, went
8. was, (had) left

Ex. 58.

1. spoke, arrived
2. did not speak, had moved
3. said, had ordered
4. waited, heard
5. waited, had finished
6. went, had selected
7. waited, had shaved, had finished

8. lasted, put
9. went, explored, closed
10. waited, had passed
11. hoped, had come
12. sat, was
13. stopped, had passed
14. laughed, filled

Ex. 59.

1. stumbled, found
2. decided, left
3. began, had paid
4. had become, spoke
5. (had) knocked, rang (had rung), made
6. walked, spoke
7. had not gone, got
8. realized, had been
9. (had) hunted, found
10. had shut, felt

11. came, had finished
12. spent, spoke
13. had hung, had
14. had not been, said
15. had been, found
16. had known, said
17. found, had gone
18. took, was
19. found, made
20. began, had reached

Ex. 60.

- | | |
|-----------------------------------|------------------------------|
| 1. had ... sat, flopped | 7. had ... fallen, rose |
| 2. had ... reached, encountered | 8. had ... asked, answered |
| 3. had ... taken, appeared | 9. had ... taken, began |
| 4. had ... disappeared, came | 10. had ... begun, went |
| 5. had ... established, perceived | 11. had ... stopped, reached |
| 6. had ... arrived, got | 12. had ... come, arose |

Ex. 61.

- | | |
|-----------------------|--------------------------|
| 1. is | 12. had ... come |
| 2. touched | 13. had ... got |
| 3. was | 14. had ... known |
| 4. have ... spoken | 15. was |
| 5. had | 16. had ... had |
| 6. went | 17. have |
| 7. was | 18. moved |
| 8. was | 19. have ... seen |
| 9. knew | 20. am |
| 10. have ... had | 21. will be |
| 11. was ... listening | 22. had ... been talking |
| | 23. was ... crying |

Ex. 62.

a) found, sat, was not looking, had brought, pushed, said, have ... read, shrugged, is ... reading

b) had been whitewashing, saw, was going, had ... been, did not seem, offered, shook, said, had been doing, had got

c) was, was, were, gleamed, were playing, had gone, was sewing, was smoking, (was) watching, looked, smiled, was ... being, compelled, were ... coming, was, thought, could, was leaving

d) woke, was burning, had started, hit, had been, were, had been, had missed, had been sleeping, was, took, passed, was, didn't want, got, pulled, could, saw, got, didn't remember, found, had saved

e) was, came, was talking, didn't see, had, had done, had put, was, had diminished, had been

f) was, looked, had been, waited (were waiting), was smiling, had tried, didn't like, had insisted

g) arrived, saw, went, are ... doing, am, did, were, are ... reading, broke, moved, had been watching, smiled, asked, do ... know, were

h) was lying, rang, was, was raining, had, was reading, had, had finished, picked, said, did ... give, hung, put, buttoned, pulled, got, patted, had, had, shrugged, went, was sitting, had been, met, had had, was wearing, had gone, were

i) was, lay, seemed, had gone, saw, had fallen, was, had had, covered, turned, awoke, was, had not moved, were

j) got, was, had been battling, was, started, wanted, had taken

turned, saw, was, am coming, has knocked, is, has been, got, have gone

was, found, went, entered, came, was, have been, entered, was, dropped, had been, was, crawled, saw, were doing

reached, ran, was, lay, held

saw, was, asked

opened, smelled, had thrust, knew, had occurred, had dropped, was, had, was, might

remained, bent, said, was, groaned, grated, fainted, could, was doing, believed, had ... thought, felt

(had) finished, sobbed, put, began, had not gone, heard

k) had presented, sat, prepared, remarked, seems

agreed, died, has been, has taken, spends, has, carries, was ... ruining, think, is

miss, comes, drew, continued, stared, have sold, repeated

have been talking, died, brought, is, hated, loves, wants, wants, has ... had, has

came, had been, was, had given, was, congratulated, thought, had done, circled, had ... gone, entered

has gone

is, has had, have said, has made

did not like, had said, is ... getting, rose, have, met, handed

didn't ... give, gave, took, read

has been, didn't appear

was listening, said, had left, exclaimed, has been playing, don't know

opened, came, looked

know, have been

don't like, makes, looked, say, makes, do ... mean, makes, do ... mean, tires

considered, replied, makes, tire

have explained

l) was, tossed, had been reading, ran

was, had expected, was sitting, was crying, (was) trying, lay, had not suffered, was, had ... been

went, happened

said, was, agreed, threw

are ... doing, is

had jumped, was investigating, quivered, shot, picked

said, held, picked, put, began

was, was sitting, was beaming, occurred, had come, was

m) had left, was, had sailed, had returned, smiled, considered, was, had gone, had been, had shuddered, had stood, had interviewed, had been,

had come, had winked, (had) whispered, hope

had ... entered, was waiting, had looked, had been, remembered, had exchanged, had said, were, was

had asked, do ... think

had sounded

had continued, don't like, choose

told

had been, had been, had shown, grazed, had crossed, (had) climbed, had

had come, had ... been going, had felt, had gone, had heard, was, had felt, was, was

thought, had gone, had told, had come, pleased, had left, was returning, tried, had been, knew, neared, ran, became, was, gave, rose, had seen, had been, had clung, had feared, might, had, thought, had been, was looked, was nearing, were beginning (had begun)

Ex. 64.

- | | |
|--------------------------------------|---------------------|
| 1. 'll ... wash, ('ll) get, 'll show | 8. 'll be looking |
| 2. shall be cleaning | 9. will be |
| 3. will have finished | 10. will ... make |
| 4. will be getting | 11. will eat |
| 5. 'll ... get, shall have returned | 12. 'll practise |
| 6. 'll find | 13. will be waiting |
| 7. 'll take | 14. will ask |

Ex. 67.

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. 'll write, ('ll) make, meets, looks | 19. 'll let |
| 2. is going to happen | 20. shall be leaving |
| 3. are ... going to wash, will do, am taking, 'll... go | 21. 'll tell |
| 4. 'll speak, shall be seeing | 22. won't like |
| 5. is going to be | 23. 'll ... expect |
| 6. shall stay | 24. won't mention |
| 7. 'll get | 25. is, will be going |
| 8. shall ... forget | 26. will be falling |
| 9. shall ... see | 27. will have set, get |
| 10. do, 'll pay | 28. will tell |
| 11. will surprise, is coming | 29. get, will have had, shall find |
| 12. don't go, 'll fetch | 30. am not going to unpack, am not going to stay, am leaving |
| 13. 'll be | 31. are ... going to do, shall end, are ... going to stay, want, have been, 'll find |
| 14. 'll ... get | 32. happens, will be looking, will be inviting |
| 15. 'll catch | |
| 16. shall be having | |
| 17. leaves | |
| 18. 'll be doing | |

Ex. 68.

- a) had finished, felt like, appears is going to do, 'll be

are ... complaining, have
need, is

'll do, has... said, has ... arrived

b) was getting, went, had taken, said, shan't be wanting, are getting,
are going

didn't say, went

'll like, get, 'll be, 'll... be

is... going to set

c) do (shall) ... have, have ('ll have)

has ... bought, needs, is, likes, goes

will find, is, will take, will follow

will ... be

is, do ... tell, ask, is

will have, take, will not be, land, will not be, will be, will have estab-
lished, will have been, will know, will have become, will take, will be, will
have, will show, is, will come, will take, will go, will be, will come, hasn't
been, will be, will put, will not take, will ask, will be, will not leave, will
stay, will arrive, is, will be, will fly, will see, will throttle, (will) open,
(will) push, will close, (will) turn, (will) land, will be, will have, will walk,
will pay, have spoken

d) are doing

had been planning, were living, had been

had ... finished, was

is, reported, walked, am, will have dug, will be beginning

approached, had been calling, saw, was being, had ... been

do, don't

bowed, reached

have ... come, are going to make, 'll start, won't take, said, walked

doesn't wind, will be puffing, reach

is going to sweep, (is going to) come

will be, is to be, indicated, will be, is going to be, won't be

had ... come, watched (were watching)

are making, is to keep, is, is to give

will look, will be

won't show, were

do ... see, will be, will come

will be, was, had hurt

Ex. 70.

1. would stay, (would) meet

2. would have, went

3. were to begin, opened

4. were sending

5. would be wanting, came

6. was going to be

7. would ... be leaving

8. would marry

9. was to begin

10. was to become

11. would be

12. got

13. would find, was going

14. was to dine, was coming, would
be having

15. was

Ex. 71.

a) was sitting, was, lingered, hadn't, was getting, would be, would offer, could, had known, had bored, disliked, was seeing, gave, were giving, would be, were presenting, did not ... want, would make, would refer, (would) express, (would) wish, would reply, had prepared, surveyed, had taken, (had) landed, would thank, had been, would sing, would dance, would get, would see, would be, wondered, would say, had feared, had ... spared, saw, sighed, had been, had ... been, had earned, was, had inspired, would regret, would be

b) walked, was, was moving, were, was, didn't look, wasn't going to buy, passed, set, might, would have, would ... be, would fight, were going to set, was hiding, would be, would ... pull, would ... crash, would turn, would ... doubt, would ... fail, would be, would drone, would crash, would try, would not be, would drive, would stand

Ex. 73.

- | | |
|-------------------------------------|------------------------|
| 1. knew | 8. are |
| 2. is doing | 9. made |
| 3. looks | 10. was, did not leave |
| 4. meant, was saying,
was having | 11. seemed |
| 5. are not making | 12. felt |
| 6. was doing | 13. was cleaning |
| 7. likes | 14. cared |
| | 15. is not getting |

Ex. 74.

- | | |
|---------------------|----------------------|
| 1. had asked | 10. missed |
| 2. had been buying | 11. had wanted |
| 3. had received | 12. had been |
| 4. have written | 13. have ... married |
| 5. had gone | 14. was doing |
| 6. spent | 15. came |
| 7. went | 16. have been |
| 8. had been living | 17. have been trying |
| 9. have been crying | |

Ex. 75.

- | | |
|---------------------------|----------------------|
| 1. would go | 7. was going to work |
| 2. was coming | 8. 'll be |
| 3. was going, would write | 9. will make |
| 4. 'll have | 10. 'll be staying |
| 5. was going to come | 11. would invite |
| 6. were going to stay | |

Ex. 80.

1. had not ... gone
2. have ... seen
3. thought, had made
4. was going
5. did not want
6. had returned (was returning)
7. had had, was feeling, could
8. was, had turned
9. turned
10. was going to do, hoped
11. was hanging
12. was working, would ... not agree
13. had ... invented
14. had had (would have), had had (would have), needed

Ex. 81.

1. I was sure he was already sorry he had written to her.
2. I thought he was tired and asked him what he had been doing.
3. I had the impression that he had been there for some time.
4. I nodded and said yes, feeling that this was what she wanted.
5. Realizing that he would do nothing to help me I changed my plans.
6. I had a suspicion that she had forgotten to mention that I was waiting.
7. He knew what she was thinking.
8. I've no idea if she knows Phil will be around.
9. By the way, does Ted know that my sister is arriving tomorrow?
10. He wasn't sure what he would do in New York.

Ex. 82.

1. had been thinking, had not done, would be, was
2. had ... reached, saw
3. returned, had sat, was taking
4. were, had ... been crying
5. had ... arrived, sent, had
6. 'll get, 've got
7. was, saw, said, 've been fighting
8. has, is farming
9. made, had had
10. walks
11. drove, stared
12. had walked, took
13. became, had come, was ... saying

14. was sitting, (was) eating, came, was, had been, was having, waved,
saw
15. remained, had passed
16. had fallen, returned, said, had turned, couldn't, had ... understood,
had happened
17. took, had been
18. is, has been needing
19. looked, was sitting, lay, had been doing
20. was reading, crossed
21. 've touched
22. came, ran
23. has been acting, have been
24. had been sitting, sat
25. was, would be, heard
26. stopped, stood, took, saw, thought, were
27. had sat, was, pushed
28. 'll take

Ex. 83.

- | | |
|-----------------------|----------------------|
| 1. were | 7. has ... been |
| 2. has ... heard | 8. am |
| 3. were ... sitting | 9. was ... waiting |
| 4. was | 10. hated |
| 5. was ... teaching | 11. had ... put |
| 6. had ... formulated | 12. have ... offered |

Ex. 84.

- | | |
|---------------------|---|
| 1. had been rolling | 14. hadn't seen |
| 2. did not hear | 15. held |
| 3. am going | 16. last |
| 4. went | 17. did not speak |
| 5. did | 18. has been tending |
| 6. saw, heard | 19. held |
| 7. lived | 20. rang |
| 8. will leave | 21. kept |
| 9. sat | 22. have been telling, have been lis-
tening |
| 10. are | 23. have worked |
| 11. haven't had | 24. let |
| 12. play | |
| 13. lay | |

Ex. 85.

1. "Ann, Martha is coming back." "I suppose she'll stay with her sister."
2. She has locked herself in and won't come down till they've gone.

3. I saw that the moment for which he had been waiting had come.
4. He took the kitten and put it carefully back where we had found it.
5. Hallo, Jack, where have you been and what have you been doing?
6. While he waited he heard children playing in the garden below.
7. I know the names of everyone in the village. I've lived here all my life.
8. She was not at all shy, she asked me to call her Sally before we had known one another ten minutes.
9. I've not been such a bad husband to you for the twenty years we've been married.
10. After six months I barely recognized myself.
11. I decided against going to Cambridge. I had hardly looked at a book of mathematics for six months.
12. We'll see to it that you don't meet him here.
13. Before I had been on board an hour he invited me to lunch.
14. You'll have three meals a day.
15. Roy had been working hard and sleeping badly and he looked very tired.
16. I have nearly finished the book.
17. You don't know what you have done to me.
18. I've scarcely had a proper meal since I reached England.
19. He's not coming. I've just talked to him on the telephone.
20. "What are you going to do on Sunday?" "I don't know yet."
21. Philip had taken his bag to the carriage and was smoking on the platform.
22. I saw your sister at the theatre.
23. Why, you're not ready yet! What have you been doing?
24. For two years she was at the top of her class.
25. For two years she has been at the top of her class.
26. You know, Professor Lennon is going to give a course on the Renaissance next term.
27. It's hot and it hasn't rained for over a month.
28. Where did I put my cigarette lighter?
29. I enjoyed the ballet. Why didn't you go with us?
30. Why did you come so late?
31. The train leaves at a quarter to two. If we don't start for the station right away we shall be late.
32. We had lived in the village for two months when my brother came for a short visit.
33. We stayed with the Smiths for two days and returned to London by train.
34. When I got up I came up to the window. Although it was no longer raining there were great puddles everywhere.
35. John had marked all his pupils' compositions and was reading a book he had bought in the morning on his way to the school.
36. How did she get here in this weather?

37. I have never before felt so well as now.
38. I had never before felt so well as then.
39. Tomorrow I'm leaving for the country for a fortnight.
40. After lunch I usually study in the library for two hours.
41. Before I had reached the corner I heard someone's steps behind me.
42. I'll let you know what measures I shall have taken.
43. The weather was gloomy that day. The wind which had been blowing since the morning had stopped but it was still drizzling.
44. I had scarcely said good-bye to them when the train began moving.
45. Before the war she taught geography for a short while.
46. Ann had packed her things and was waiting for a taxi.
47. I'll tell him to bring the key back when he has had a look round the house.
48. We drove for about an hour and then saw a small lake.
49. We had been driving for about two hours when we saw the lake.
50. I had been walking about in the woods for about an hour when I saw a little house. As I had never been to these parts before I did not know who lived in it. The house was surrounded by trees and the path I was (had been) walking on, led to it.

Ex. 86.

a) said, 've asked, is, got, is, met, was raining, was sitting, dropped, picked, got

did ... happen, 've been going

does ... do

works

arranged, gave, ushered, cast, took, decided, talked, poured, asked,

cut, pressed, took, put (was putting), fell

am, said, picked

'll cut

am not, is

has been

don't want

am, don't like

is, am not

refused, lit, said, am dying

did not say, raised, wasn't, had been doing, was, wanted, didn't ... know

'll walk

has been

came, was, was, had passed

b) was ... casting (cast), could, had thought, saw

was, smiled, said, is, get, will be shining, returned, were leaving, walked,

was

give

have wasted

was considering (considered), added, wasted

know, are, have gone

were, stood, lay, stood, led
 do ... like
 've ... seen
 exclaimed, didn't expect
 went, stood
 shall ... play
 turned, sat, could, played
 smiled, nodded, sat, played, stole, could, heard, was, appeared, had
 left, seemed
 became, was ... playing, turned, had felt, had stood, had been
 had passed, was ... playing, remembered, rested, asked
 gave, went, rose, came, sat
 have been
 have not felt
 means (has meant), added, played, did ... notice
 thought, was
 have been working, hadn't played, played
 was
 is
 'll take, 've made
 c) went
 was, were, had added, extended, had played, had sat, had ... talked,
 didn't remember
 stood, came
 was returning, had passed, had been raining, was, was sighing, was, had
 heard, had turned, (had) walked, echoed, had found, had lifted, had stopped,
 crouched
 are ... doing
 did not answer, said, laughed, said, had
 had said, don't know, have, know, doesn't have
 had caught, had ... risen, do ... mean
 mean, have, will show, start, 'll ... amount, had walked, (had) left
 stood, remembered, was, returned, expected
 opened, went, was, was, had painted, had removed, had replaced, had ...
 hung, were
 came, rustled, moved, smiled, were, was, look, glanced, saw, were, ap-
 peared, knew, had been operating, saw, said, have (did), 'll tell

Ex. 87.

a) am, live, seems, took, passed, failed, means, can't, was, heard, had
 failed
 have, worked, managed, think, is, want, doesn't agree, doesn't want,
 doesn't think, is, is, thinks, are trying
 b) 've won, 'm going, had, kept, can, like, find, 've made, has agreed
 c) 'm, 's, 've had, left, are going, are going, 'll see, are going, had,
 made, started, joined, had hated, was
 brought, had attended, has ... been, is staying
 am, can't, rains

- d) 've managed, am sitting, aren't, rent, says, isn't, haven't told, was walked, had seen, was, had been falling, had leaked, was, came, is, was had spoken, made
had put, turned, looked
are ... not going, told, is
do ... know, is
've taken
came, was standing, asked
did not put, did
saw, went, took
are, have, 'll have
e) share, are, is ... apologizing, hasn't done, lies, am not complaining, am phoned, is trying, is finding, am
f) had, talked, has been writing, had, is doing, asks, have been reading
have had, do ... know, has gone, writes, has, has been cross-country skiing, has been enjoying, has not seen

The Verb: Passive Voice Forms

Ex. 3.

- | | |
|----------------------------------|--|
| 1. was not liked, was considered | 22. had ... been made |
| 2. had been said | 23. is lent |
| 3. have ... been treated | 24. had been caught |
| 4. was being played | 25. had been left |
| 5. am paid | 26. had been sent |
| 6. was being restored | 27. was (would be) operated |
| 7. was received, (was) taken | 28. was announced, were given |
| 8. is being done (has been done) | 29. was run |
| 9. had been turned | 30. were ... looked |
| 10. hadn't ... been taught | 31. was put |
| 11. has been seen | 32. had been sent |
| 12. had been offered | 33. had been shown, were taken |
| 13. had been cut | 34. had been looked (was being looked) |
| 14. was given | 35. will be seen |
| 15. were begged | 36. is being killed (has been killed) |
| 16. had been influenced | 37. was tried, (was) sentenced |
| 17. was looked | 38. was (being) run |
| 18. are dealt | 39. was asked |
| 19. was seen, was called | 40. is ... being interfered |
| 20. were being unloaded | |
| 21. had been promised | |

Ex. 4.

1. A new block of houses is being built down the street.
2. He has never been taken for an Englishman yet.
3. Nothing has been moved in your room since you were sent to the sanatorium.
4. Are you interested in the job you have been offered?
5. Every penny must be accounted for.
6. Have you ever been taught how to behave?
7. He had to be operated on.
8. The children were treated to some ice-cream.
9. My collection of stamps has been stolen.
10. I have never been spoken to like that before.
11. Look! Tea has been spilt all over the table-cloth.
12. Lessons should be made more interesting.
13. Something ought to be done for these people.
14. Football is played all over the world.
15. I'm afraid this lock cannot be repaired.
16. She was given a box of chocolates for her birthday.
17. His friend is well spoken of.

18. The students were told to wait outside.
19. My uncle has been made a captain.
20. The stranger was asked to leave the meeting.
21. You will be told when the train leaves.
22. She felt that something was being concealed from her.
23. It will be so dark there that you won't be seen.
24. I felt that he had been asked this question before.
25. I was sent off to bed.
26. He did not hear what was being said.
27. We'll find out if he's been properly looked after.
28. He was given a first-class education.
29. Is anything being done to restore the building?
30. They say he hasn't been seen for three months.
31. He turned the radio on. Brahms was being played, a piano concerto.
32. I didn't know whom I was being introduced to.
33. At the reception the professor was taken no notice of but his pretty wife was made a fuss of.

Ex. 5.

1. It was explained to me that ...
2. ... it was arranged that ...
3. ... it was proposed that ...
4. The new law was explained to us.
5. The fact was mentioned to my friends.
6. It is requested that ...
7. The Pyramids were pointed out to us.
8. The party was arranged on Saturday.
9. He was discovered at home ...
10. It was said that ...
11. My father's health was proposed.
12. At lunch it was mentioned that ...
13. It was known that ...
14. The accident was reported to the police.
15. It was announced on the radio that ...
16. It was discovered that ...
17. It was pointed out to us that ...
18. It was expected that ...
19. ...a walk to the river was suggested.
20. It was demanded that ...
21. It was believed that ...
22. It was understood that ...
23. His absence was noticed.
24. His story was not believed.
25. An explanation was demanded from him.
26. ... it was suggested that ...

27. A course of action was decided on.
28. It was agreed that ...
29. It was announced at the meeting that ...
30. These facts are well known.
31. It was noticed that ...
32. It was decided that ...

Ex. 8.

1. It was announced over the radio that cold weather was expected to set in towards the evening.
2. I doubt whether the phenomenon can be explained now.
3. The woman was pointed out to him, and he went over to her.
4. It was arranged that she should wait for him in her hotel.
5. The news was announced over the radio.
6. It was explained to her who we all were.
7. It was expected that he would come back in time for the sitting.
8. It was decided that he would return on Friday.
9. It was noticed that he never phoned his home from the office.
10. It was explained to him why he was wrong.
11. His mistakes were pointed out to him.
12. A considerable deposit of ore was discovered to the south-west of the town.
13. Great changes were expected in the production plans of the company.
14. It was not thought that he would work with them a long time.
15. It was said that it had not been easy for him to do it.
16. It is rumoured that he has gone to Canada.
17. It was decided that the payment was not legal.
18. The loss of the document was reported to the management.
19. It was pointed out to him that smoking was not allowed in the hall.
20. His courage was well known in the regiment.
21. His arrival was casually mentioned in the conversation.
22. It was suggested to me that I should first have a meal.
23. It is well known that Frank has admitted his mistake.

Ex. 9.

1. was locked
2. had been locked
3. had been carried
4. was reminded, had ... been told
5. is given, is ... watched, is ... thanked, (is) told, are ... needed
6. was left
7. had been left
8. was hidden
9. was prepared, was floored, (was) tented, were placed
10. was ... reached

11. was written
12. is shut
13. were ... explained
14. was hired, have ... been varied
15. are ... being looked
16. was locked
17. was announced, was not mentioned
18. was ... established
19. had been cleared, were drawn
20. was ... given
21. had ... been furnished, (had been) decorated
22. was ... furnished, (was) decorated
23. have ... been taken
24. was being (had been) observed
25. were closed
26. was announced, was dismayed, (was) perplexed
27. is... fixed
28. was (had been) buried, was read
29. was buried
30. was done
31. were locked
32. were ... injured
33. are being washed
34. is described
35. have been disposed
36. was being fixed
37. was parked

Ex. 10.

a) were painted, were drawn, was lit, was dusted, had been moved, had been added, had been brought

b) was sent, were examined, was told, would be flown

c) had been expected, were shown, were detained, were not ... allowed, had been ... chosen, had been pointed, was interrupted, had been warned, were being introduced

d) were being killed, were shot, were thrown, was ... poisoned, was brought, were held, were leapt, were saved

e) were found, was being emptied, were dragged, (were) stood, be left, were included, was being sent, was ... involved, was ... discovered

f) was given, had been drawn, was ... hampered, is believed, was caused, was observed, were brought, were trapped, were ... overcome, was taken, is reported

Ex. 11.

boarded, had been provided, was fitted, glowed, were shut, went, was, had ... been, were painted, imposed, had put, longed, tried, was, had

worn, had been, clung, set, had not occurred, had been, had wandered,
had lunched, had been ordered, were needed, had not dined, saw, sat,
came

Ex. 13.

was, was ... built, were, made, were kept
were, had been cut, were being laid, had been rooted, had been dug,
was, had been done, were paid
came, learned, were paid, stopped, were being discussed, held, said,
would not return, agreed, promised, was finished
found, was made, went, asked, was being played, were, said, would do,
gave, flew, said, don't start, turned, walked
was strolling, ran, heard, understood, had been thrown, knew, was,
looked, had been thrown, could, went, returned, saw, had been thrown,
required
rode, found, guessed, was being discussed, was formed, were placed,
was set, sloped, was raining, were pulled, was, rode, called, left, flung
went, had started, was, will regret, said
came, said, had made, had, had, wished, became, were working, stared,
realized, had outwitted, were being laughed, was, was, was found, had
been shot

The Verb: Modal Verbs

Ex. 2.

Sentence 1 — variant 1

2 — 3

3 — 1

4 — 2

5 — 1

6 — 3

7 — 4

8 — 2

9 — 4

10 — 4

11 — 3

12 — 2

Ex. 3.

1. could move

2. could ... tell

3. could not have seen

4. could ... refuse

5. could have run

6. could have told

7. could learn

8. couldn't have done

9. couldn't tell

10. couldn't have told

11. could answer

Ex. 4.

1. could ... do

2. could ... see

3. could ... have got

4. could ... make

5. could ... have

6. could have

7. could ... be

8. couldn't

9. couldn't have done

10. could open

11. couldn't be

12. could get

13. could have

14. could ... be, couldn't have changed

15. couldn't have told

16. could ... do

Ex. 5.

1. have been

2. be done

3. get

4. have been worrying

5. have done (be doing)

6. have been

7. have been

8. have been sleeping

9. be doing

10. have heard

11. walk

12. be dying

Ex. 7.

1. Could you translate this text?

2. You can buy this book at any shop.

3. He could have done it last week. He wasn't particularly busy.

4. He could not show us the calculations. They were not finished.
5. It's dark in the room, and I can't find my things.
6. She can't (couldn't) have made a mistake.
7. Can (could) they have been waiting for us?
8. You can't (couldn't) have been sent to me. I have nothing to do with this.
9. Could I have a cup of tea?
10. He said we could go.
11. I can return on the bus.
12. I could return on the bus.
13. Maurice stared at the letter. "Now where could it have come from?"
14. Evans was so illiterate that he could not have written a word of the report.
15. "She didn't understand you," cried Philip. "She understood me well enough." "She could not have understood you," he repeated doggedly.
16. It was a very long walk back to the hotel, he could never have done it without a map.
17. She had a square face that could never have looked young.
18. "What are you looking at, Willy?" "Nothing, dear." "You can't be looking at nothing."
19. She raised her voice and called, "Can you hear me?"
20. No one could have impressed me more than you did.
21. At that moment I could have killed him.
22. He cannot (couldn't) have been more than thirty at the time we first met him.
23. I could swim when I was five. Daddy taught me.
24. They're very nice to me. They could not be more polite and obliging.
25. It's getting dark. What time can it be now?
26. You are brave to work with these people. I couldn't do it.
27. He took the menu and said: "Well now, I suppose you're hungry. Let's see what we can have."
28. How are the puppies? Can I have a look at them?

Ex. 10.

Sentence 1 — variant 1

2 — 4

3 — 1

4 — 2

5 — 3

6 — 1

7 — 4

Ex. 11.

1. might ... ask

2. might ... fade

3. might have been

4. might ... be, might have done

5. might not find

6. might ... have

7. might notice

8. might have chosen

Ex. 12.

- | | |
|-----------------------|----------------------|
| 1. have been expected | 7. break |
| 2. be lurking | 8. be |
| 3. write | 9. have been reading |
| 4. have been detained | 10. have wanted |
| 5. have told | 11. have understood |
| 6. be dying | 12. be listening |

Ex. 13.

1. You weren't all that busy. You might have helped us.
2. Ask him if we may look round the laboratory.
3. He might do it for you. It is not at all difficult for him.
4. He might have broken the window.
5. She may be late.
6. They may be working at the same problem.
7. It may rain towards evening.
8. They may not have been in the town last night.
9. I thought if his watch was there, the money might be there too.
10. I agree it may have been a mistake to let Peter go abroad. I thought it might bring him back to his work.
11. I may not have mentioned it in my letters, but I did quite a lot of work up there.
12. Not seeing either her father or the boy, Meggie thought they might be rearranging some of the books on the shelves.
13. You may have heard his name.
14. It occurred to me that he was secretly proud of his son, though he may not have known it.
15. He's got a big family. I can easily imagine that he may (might) be looking for a better job.
16. I had the impression that the storm might break out any minute.
17. She wasn't a Swede, but she might have been taken for one.
18. He might (may) be in the hotel waiting for me.
19. I might have missed the last bus.
20. They may have thought that we won't come in this rain.

Ex. 15.

- | | |
|-----------------|------------------|
| 1. could, can | 9. could |
| 2. may | 10. could |
| 3. could, could | 11. could, might |
| 4. could | 12. can |
| 5. might | 13. might |
| 6. might | 14. may |
| 7. could | 15. could |
| 8. may | 16. could |

- | | |
|------------------|-----------------|
| 17. could, might | 29. could |
| 18. can, can | 30. might |
| 19. might | 31. can |
| 20. could | 32. might |
| 21. may | 33. may (might) |
| 22. may | 34. can |
| 23. can | 35. may |
| 24. can | 36. can |
| 25. can | 37. could |
| 26. may, may | 38. can |
| 27. could | 39. can |
| 28. might | |

Ex. 16.

- | | |
|--------------------------------------|--|
| 1. It may rain. | 14. Can they be waiting for us? |
| 2. It may not rain. | 15. Who can they be waiting for? |
| 3. It can't rain. | 16. They can't possibly be waiting for us. |
| 4. Can it rain? | 17. I may (might) as well be off. |
| 5. He may have seen them. | 18. I may (might) just as well stay at home. |
| 6. He may not have seen them. | 19. I might have lost the keys. |
| 7. He can't have seen them. | 20. It might have been worse. |
| 8. He can't possibly have seen them. | 21. The weather couldn't be worse. |
| 9. Can he have seen them? | 22. I couldn't but stay with them. |
| 10. Where can he have seen them? | 23. I couldn't help agreeing with them. |
| 11. They may be waiting for us. | 24. I couldn't care less. |
| 12. They may not be waiting for us. | |
| 13. They can't be waiting for us. | |

Ex. 19.

- | | |
|----------------------|-----------------------|
| 1. have been | 9. be |
| 2. be doing | 10. have cost |
| 3. have taken | 11. have influenced |
| 4. be | 12. have been reading |
| 5. have heard | 13. be getting |
| 6. do | 14. have been bought |
| 7. be wondering | 15. be lying |
| 8. have been sitting | |

Ex. 20.

- I must work very hard this week.
- But Martha saw them. She must have told you (about it).

3. He must get there before eight.
4. She lit the fire and said: "Do sit down, you must be frozen."
5. I must wash up all the glasses.
6. John, turning from the door, noticed that he was standing upon a letter which lay on the mat. It must have been delivered some time after his return.
7. "We are having tea early," said Kate. "You must be starving."
8. "Oh, you!" he said as he looked up in surprise. He must have forgotten my name.
9. I did not see Jim but I knew that he must be waiting somewhere.
10. I waited about half an hour, and was just thinking that something must have happened to Kathy when she arrived in a taxi.
11. She looks so pale. She must have been ill.
12. I must write to them today.
13. I must do something for him, Jack thought.
14. "Phil, there was a letter in your book." "Was there?" "You must have forgotten it."

Ex. 21.

1. I don't want to take the examinations. I shan't probably be in London then.
2. There had probably never been (must never have been) so much money at his disposal.
3. Martin was on the other side of the fireplace. I thought that he could not have heard (it was impossible for him to hear) their words.
4. He must have failed to talk him into going with us.
5. He probably just hasn't had (must never have had) time for you so far.
6. They must have missed him at the station.
7. I tolerated it so long because I thought she loved me in her own way. But, of course, she can't have ever loved (must never have loved) me.
8. The teacher must have omitted (left out) your name by mistake.
9. She must be unaware that you are here.
10. They must have seen nothing of her since the summer.
11. "Can (could) I talk to you tomorrow morning?" "I probably shall be busy in the morning."
12. He won't speak English probably.
13. There must be no one at home now.
14. "Who is the old man?" "The new president of the company." "Are you joking?" "I'm not joking. You can't have read the papers (must have read no papers)."

Ex. 23.

1. he can't have done

2. you may be

- | | |
|-------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| 3. they may have forgotten | 16. the news may be broadcast |
| 4. can it be | 17. they must have taken no notes |
| 5. he can't have been meaning | 18. can we be |
| 6. he can't have refused | 19. he may forget |
| 7. he can't have read | 20. can something have happened, |
| 8. where can you have met | the car must be undergoing |
| 9. he must have heard | 21. you can't possibly get |
| 10. it must have been | 22. what can he be doing |
| 11. he must have been fishing | 23. it can't have been |
| 12. she must be out | 24. she may have been, she may not |
| 13. what can you have brought | have heard |
| 14. he may not know | 25. you must have used |
| 15. can he be giving | |

Ex. 24.

1. They must do as they are told.
2. I suppose I must put on my other shoes for the party.
3. I can't leave without paying.
4. They must return all the money.
5. You might have given them a call to say that you were not coming.
6. I was so hungry that I might have eaten the whole chicken up.
7. "Must I take an umbrella?" "Yes. It looks like rain."
8. Were you able to finish the work?
9. The situation (Things) couldn't be worse.
10. Could you come a little later?
11. Can you have written it yourself?
12. It can't possibly happen to me.
13. In my mind I went over the possible occasions when I might have met him.
14. He may not have wished to speak.
15. She never spoke of her childhood, and there must have been some reason for it.
16. But really I can't possibly walk further.
17. "He can rest in my office," said Mr Bolt.
18. Norah led the boy to her room. I could hear them talking there.
19. "You mustn't minimize the danger," he said.
20. I shall be able to write them tomorrow.
21. No one could have done more than you did.
22. Nick was a son that any parent might have been proud of.
23. I think he has fallen in love with you because he must never have met anyone quite like you.
24. I don't think I shall go out today. I may just as well sit in the arm-chair at the fire in this weather.
25. You might have done something about it.
26. After all, one can't help admiring a man whose principles are so high.

27. You can do what you like.
28. "I don't see what else I could have done," he said.
29. His mother is again in hospital. She must be seriously ill.
30. There was no one among them to whom I could turn for help.
31. I can't see how you can have been so foolish.
32. I couldn't help thinking that Miss Grey had given herself away by saying that.
33. He moved so quietly that he could not have disturbed the lightest sleeper.
34. Where are my spectacles? No, they are not here. I must have left them at home.
35. Must I stay here all day?
36. He asked if he could depend on me.
37. He asked if I could take his class for the next period.
38. When the child is so ill you must feel wretched.
39. You must get him here with all his stuff.
40. "This must be unlike your home," said Bart.
41. I said he could take my car.
42. I couldn't care less.
43. She knew what he must be feeling.
44. He can't be more than three or four years older than you.
45. The weather may change for the better yet.
46. She can't be unaware of it.
47. I won't be able yet to give you a definite answer on Monday.
48. They may not have come yet.
49. They may be still investigating the matter.
50. They may have been at the party but I didn't see them.
51. Who can have turned the light on in my room?
52. Your father is very angry. What can you have done again?
53. It's quite dark. I must have been sleeping a long time.
54. He will probably give us a call soon.
55. Can he have told you to come here?
56. "Where is my key?" "You must have lost it." "I can't have lost it. I may have left it in the pocket of my coat."

Ex. 25.

- | | | |
|----------------|--------------------|--------------|
| 1. can | 10. must, can, can | 19. can |
| 2. must | 11. could | 20. was able |
| 3. can | 12. must | 21. could |
| 4. may, may | 13. can, can | 22. must |
| 5. must, could | 14. must | 23. must |
| 6. must, can | 15. can, must | 24. could |
| 7. could | 16. must | 25. must |
| 8. can | 17. must | 26. could |
| 9. must, can | 18. must | 27. must |

- | | | |
|-----------------|----------|-----------|
| 28. must, could | 33. must | 38. might |
| 29. can | 34. must | 39. must |
| 30. must | 35. must | 40. must |
| 31. could | 36. must | |
| 32. can, can | 37. must | |

Ex. 27.

1. doesn't have to, does he have to?
2. didn't have to, did they have to?
3. shan't have to, shall I have to?
4. doesn't have to, does she have to?
5. didn't have to, did he have to?
6. won't have to, will she have to?

Ex. 28.

1. Bart was to see his brother-in-law for lunch the next day, but he saw no reason to tell his wife that.
2. She had to drink tea without sugar.
3. I knew that Pat was to come to the club.
4. I was somewhat surprised to find so many people in the hall in which I was to speak.
5. I don't have to be there before three.
6. Rudy was invited for dinner at Mary's house. After dinner they were to go to a movie.
7. One of the guests sat down beside me. I didn't have to be told who it was.
8. They bombed us all day yesterday, and we had to stay in the trenches.
9. "Your hair is short and curly." "I had scarlet fever and it had to be cut short."
10. "I never told you I was at a public school, did I?" said Alec. "You didn't have to. I knew it."
11. Next day Frank took me for a long drive. We were to dine with the Greens at seven.
12. It was announced on the radio that the President was to speak that night.
13. He had to move closer to hear her.
14. At this hour Philip was never to be seen.

Ex. 29.

- | | | |
|---------|----------------------|--------------|
| 1. were | 6. was | 11. was, was |
| 2. had | 7. didn't have | 12. had, was |
| 3. was | 8. was | 13. had |
| 4. had | 9. had | |
| 5. was | 10. had, didn't have | |

Ex. 31.

- | | |
|--------------------------------------|----------------------------|
| 1. must | 12. must |
| 2. has to | 13. have to |
| 3. are to | 14. must |
| 4. mustn't (isn't to), don't have to | 15. must, will have to |
| 5. must | 16. mustn't, don't have to |
| 6. has to | 17. had to |
| 7. is to | 18. was to |
| 8. must | 19. was to |
| 9. am to | 20. was not to |
| 10. must | 21. must not |
| 11. have to | 22. had to |

Ex. 33.

- | | |
|-----------------------|------------------------|
| 1. to have | 9. have arranged |
| 2. be | 10. to answer |
| 3. to have brought | 11. have left |
| 4. be playing | 12. have been arriving |
| 5. to make, to laugh | 13. to have been told |
| 6. to be operated | 14. have laughed |
| 7. have seen | 15. to be done |
| 8. have been sweating | 16. have been |

Ex. 34.

- | | |
|---------------|-----------------------|
| 1. should | 9. shouldn't |
| 2. ought to | 10. ought to |
| 3. ought to | 11. should |
| 4. shouldn't | 12. should (ought to) |
| 5. should not | 13. shouldn't |
| 6. shouldn't | 14. ought to (should) |
| 7. ought to | 15. ought to (should) |
| 8. ought to | 16. ought to |

Ex. 35.

1. I'm sorry. I shouldn't have said that.
2. I think you ought to show more respect for your elders.
3. I thought you ought to know about it.
4. Now I've upset her. I shouldn't have said that.
5. "Have I said something I shouldn't have?" he asked his mother.
6. You shouldn't ask questions like that.
7. Well, you were right. I shouldn't have done it that way.
8. What do you think I ought to do?

9. I've been more frank with you than I should have been.
10. I said she should never have come with him at all.
11. But you should not be so critical at your age, Frank.
12. "Ann is my sister." "I ought to (should) have guessed. You take after her."
13. She ought to (should) have remembered about it.

Ex. 36.

1. How much shall I give the porter?
2. Well, when we have found out anything you shall hear about it.
3. "Will you let me go home?" "No. You shall sail to San Francisco on Tuesday."
4. It can be done and it shall be done if you will only help me.
5. "Shall I play to you?" she said. "Yes, do please."
6. When he says "do it", I say "it shall be done".

Ex. 38.

1. Well, I thought it was too absurd that we should live next door and not speak.
2. How strange that he should have said nothing about it.
3. It was very improbable that John should be so busy that he had no time in the whole week to see her.
4. I see no reason why they should be angry.
5. "What is his name?" "Why should I tell you?"
6. I'm sorry that you should think so badly of me.
7. I don't know why he should want to see George.
8. It was strange that at her age she should be so indifferent to parties.
9. At last he decided to drive back home. It was possible that he would (might) hear news of Mary there.
10. I'm sorry that my brother should be responsible for this.
11. How did you happen to bring him with you? Why should he have wanted to come here?
12. He was pleased that Kate should have called the child after him.
13. What can have happened to him? I can't think why he should be so late.
14. It's funny that she should have been right.
15. It's odd that she should have chosen this man for a husband.
16. It made me angry that he should be so weak-willed.
17. He seemed flattered that someone should want to read something he had written.
18. Still Rosemary did not see why she should go.
19. She began to tell her husband about Ted, but soon she stopped and said: "But I don't know why I should bore you with these stories about Ted."

- He should have read your composition once again. There must be some mistakes there.
 Is it only six o'clock?
 He should not have spoken to him like that. He might have felt hurt thought to know it.
 Shall I give him a call right away?
 He must have a sense of humour. Otherwise he couldn't have said it like that.
 Tomorrow is your sister's birthday. I think you should (must) give her a present.
 It must be raining heavily. The street is deserted.
 He can't have forgotten his promise.
 He should have sent them a telegram. They might have arrived by now.
 I'm sorry I'm late. Did you have to wait long?
 He didn't go out that evening as George was to come and see me after work.
 He had to return to the hotel as his flight was delayed.
 He knew that he was to attend two meetings next week.
 He must know nothing about your affairs.
 He can't know anything about his affairs.
 He has to take this exam in a week.
 Will you have to call them up again?
 He doesn't have to go shopping today as we are dining out.
 "What are they talking about?" "They may be arguing about the script."
 The news may (might) frighten her.
 He knew she must explain everything to them.
 He thought to make your own living.
 His house was to be brought down and he had to move to a new residential area.
 May your wife doesn't have to wash the car.
 The weather is very good, and we could go for a drive in the country.
 I'm sorry but I must be off. I am to meet Betty at the cinema. Oh, it's quarter to seven. She must be waiting for me. I'll have to take a taxi.
 Shall you do it today?
 May I go?
 Should I walk all the way there?
 "Late. Where can Dick be?" "I couldn't care less."
 He thought to visit your brother in hospital.
 He might have been taken for an old man.
 He thought not to blame him for it. It's partly your fault, too.
 He could (might) tell us what is happening.
 They may have made their choice.
 He doesn't know why she should not want to speak to him herself.

38. It's surprising that they should have included him into the team.
39. You ought to find a specialist who could deal with the problem.
40. He must have told them nothing.
41. They may be packing. There is an hour left before train time.

Ex. 42.

1. Would you tell me what's happened?
2. John tried to open up the lid of the can but it wouldn't come.
3. I would do anything to help him.
4. He said that he would be glad if I would come and stay with him for a few days.
5. He tried to explain himself but I wouldn't listen.
6. "He didn't agree with me." "He wouldn't."
7. It is Sunday and all the shops will be closed.
8. He made two or three attempts to strike his lighter, but it wouldn't work.
9. I asked his wife what was wrong with him, but she wouldn't answer.
10. He would spend most evenings playing chess.
11. I have paid the money, and I will stay here.
12. He turned off the light. But sleep would not come.
13. I think I'll go and watch the telly if you'll excuse me.
14. I wanted to see the exhibition but they wouldn't let me in as it was late.
15. "Uncle Edwin," the boy cried, "you promised to help me with my toy train. It won't run."
16. I suggested that she should see the doctor, but she wouldn't hear of it.
17. He would often fall asleep with a book in his hands and spectacles on his nose.
18. After work he would wait for us at the bridge.

Ex. 43.

1. When we got into the car, he said: "We could go for a drive now. There is a place near here I'd like to show you."
2. You must control your temper. I will not have you behave like that in my house.
3. Would you like another glass of juice?
4. I'd rather not tell you what I know about him.
5. I did not really want to go to the party. I would rather have stayed and talked with my parents.
6. He would rather listen to others than talk himself.
7. They know that I will not have this happen in my flat.
8. "I had better not have come home," she said in a voice trembling with despair.
9. Father will not have you speak to me like that.
10. We'd better get home at once, so that you can lie down.

11. He'd rather not leave yet.
12. I've made up my mind what had better be done.
13. She'd rather read the letter first.

Ex. 45.

1. What she did is so silly that we needn't discuss it.
2. The lake was so near that even Alan who hated walking, agreed that they needn't take his car.
3. We needn't cook all the potatoes.
4. Need we change for dinner?
5. We have lots of time yet. We need not have hurried.
6. Need we go there after all?
7. You needn't spend all the money on them.
8. "I told your uncle I would speak to you." "You needn't have troubled. I've promised my parents to stay here a little longer."
9. He put the envelope down on the table. "The money is all there," he said. "You needn't bother to count it."
10. You know the children. They are destructive. I needn't tell you that.
11. He knew he did not need to explain anything to anyone.
12. I don't think we need give her so much of our attention.
13. You needn't be afraid of me.
14. We needn't listen to all the speakers.

Ex. 47.

1. You should not have given way to her whims.
2. You shouldn't (oughtn't to) have brought your friend tonight. I don't feel well.
3. I oughtn't to (shouldn't) have told them that.
4. You needn't have booked a room in the hotel. We have a spare bedroom.
5. You oughtn't to (shouldn't) have married so early.
6. You should not have written to him about it. He will feel worried.
7. You needn't have come to London. He is not here.
8. You shouldn't have bought this car. It's much too expensive.
9. You needn't have brought your car. There is no bridge over the river here.
10. You oughtn't to have been so rude to her. She is weeping now.

Ex. 48.

1. "Shall I tell you how it all happened?" "No, you needn't. I know all about it."
2. The weather is warm now, and I don't have to make a fire in the evening.

3. He was well aware of what he wanted to say and he didn't need to search for words.
4. I didn't have to do any shopping as my husband was dining out that day.
5. He is on holiday at present. He doesn't have to start work till autumn.
6. Tell my son he needn't work till autumn. He should have a long holiday at home.
7. She knew that she did not have (did not need) to be present during their conversation.
8. He didn't have to live in London in summer.

Ex. 49.

- a) can, ought to (should), wouldn't be able, can't, can't
- b) wouldn't, would, might, can, can't, shall, should, might not, must
- c) might, can't, can, must, must, must

Ex. 50.

- | | |
|-----------------------------------|------------------------------|
| 1. could, would | 9. may have to |
| 2. ought to, should, could, would | 10. could, might |
| 3. should, might | 11. could, might |
| 4. should, could | 12. may be able to |
| 5. could, should | 13. may have to |
| 6. can, must | 14. should, could |
| 7. can, can, can, 'd better, may | 15. may (might) have to |
| 8. doesn't have to, could | 16. ought to (should), might |

Ex. 51.

1. Shall I go and find out if he has done the work? He was to finish it yesterday.
2. Did you have to wait for him long?
3. You needn't have come. The meeting is cancelled (called off).
4. He was to have finished it all yesterday, but he was called away to London unexpectedly.
5. You ought to have told us about it, now we don't know what we are to (should) do.
6. Everything is settled. Now I don't have to go to London.
7. He must have been unable to give them our message and they may be waiting for us.
8. "Can he have forgotten to book rooms at the hotel for us?" "He must have done it in your name."
9. She can't have been so foolish.
10. Can (may) I go?
11. Could you do it for me?

12. "He was to have come by the five-o'clock train. Could he have missed it?" "How should I know?"
13. He must have forgotten to tell them about it and they may not come.
14. You should have told us that you wouldn't be able to play for the team today.
15. Why should you put off till tomorrow what you can (could) do today?
16. I'm to see him on Tuesday night.
17. He might have said something in my favour.
18. She wouldn't explain what was wrong.
19. Unfortunately I could not speak to my father. I didn't catch him at home. I should have come early in the morning.
20. You might have told me you would be late.
21. She must have misunderstood which road she was to take and she may have lost her way.
22. You had to stay there till the end, didn't you?
23. You are wet through. You should have asked someone to give you a lift.
24. I may have to go there by taxi. It ought to be much quicker.
25. "I looked for him everywhere last night. I wanted him to speak at the meeting, too." "You needn't have bothered. He might have ruined everything."
26. I couldn't mark my students' notebooks yesterday because I had to take another teacher's class.
27. I needn't tell you why this must be done right away.
28. You needn't have gone for the key. The door was open.
29. Last night I saw his wife. She might have been taken for a French woman.
30. Why do you think he should feel so embarrassed?
31. You should take your rain-coat. It may rain.
32. The ground is wet. It must have been raining here.
33. You needn't have come. We could have finished it without you.
34. In the evening she was to go to a party. So she had to wash her hair after breakfast.
35. It's strange that he should have left without saying where he was going (had gone).
36. I don't see why you should not be friends.
37. Be careful. You might have fallen down.
38. You shouldn't have called her up so late (given her such a late call).
39. It's an unimportant item. You needn't have included it in your account.
40. He said he must be off and left without waiting for her to answer.
41. You needn't come tomorrow. I'll be busy.
42. Father says that I must stay with him a little longer.

The Verb: Means of Expressing Unreality**Ex. 2.**

1. (should) try
2. (should) be allowed
3. (should) be
4. (should) walk
5. had been, was
6. should have
7. should have chosen (had chosen)
8. dropped
9. (should) keep
10. were (would be)
11. should pay
12. should be (was) reading
13. had ... seen
14. should ... be spoken
15. should be
16. (should) be represented
17. (should) be sent

Ex. 3.

1. He then suggested that we should drop (drop) the discussion and talk about something else.
2. My mother's name was Lydia, and she always insisted that we should call (call) her by this name.
3. After supper he suggested they should go (go) to a movie, but she refused.
4. He is angry that I (should) have fallen in love with his sister.
5. They all agreed that something should be done about the boy.
6. My father wanted to walk, but my mother insisted that we should go (go) in the car.
7. He suggested on a postcard that they should meet (meet) in the National Gallery.
8. He insisted that I should take (take) a holiday.
9. She hoped that she would be able to clean the kitchen in the morning.
10. I didn't understand why he should be (was) so angry.
11. As soon as we sat down he demanded that the candles should be removed (be removed).
12. Charles advised that we should have (have) a meal and then go to a theatre.
13. He requested that we should keep (keep) the evening free.
14. I was alarmed that he had not called me up.
15. He asked me if I should be back in London in a week.

16. I suggested that we should dine (dine) together.
17. Her mother invited them to stay with her but Ann insisted that they should go (go) to a (the) hotel.
18. I'm glad that you (should) think so highly of my son.
19. He arranged that Edward should go (go) to Italy for a year or two.
20. I gave orders to Amy that she should undertake (undertake) the task.
21. He preferred that Kate should invite her friends to the house.
22. Ronny decided that I should meet (meet) his girl that night.

Ex. 5.

- | | |
|-------------------------------|------------------------------|
| 1. should sleep (sleep) | 10. should tell (tell) |
| 2. should have given (gave) | 11. found |
| 3. should join (join) | 12. kept |
| 4. should be (was) | 13. should forbid (forbids) |
| 5. should turn (turn) | 14. should see (see) |
| 6. should be sent (is sent) | 15. should be (was) |
| 7. should remain (remain) | 16. should pick (pick) |
| 8. should spend | 17. should stay (stay) |
| 9. should continue (continue) | 18. should be made (be made) |

Ex. 6.

1. It's admirable that she herself undertook (should have undertaken) the task.
2. In the end it was decided that they should arrange a party.
3. In this case it is essential that he shouldn't make a mistake.
4. Suddenly it seemed terribly important to him that they should not leave him alone.
5. It was arranged that we should meet at his flat.
6. It was absurd that she had got (should have got) so angry over a burnt dinner.
7. It was requested that the father should take the girl away with him.
8. It is surprising what fear does to a man.
9. It was desirable that he should go to a law school following the family tradition.
10. She knew it was urgent (imperative) that she should buy herself a new coat.

Ex. 8.

- | | |
|---------------------------|--------------------------|
| 1. knew | 7. had |
| 2. had known | 8. could |
| 3. had ... happened, were | 9. would go, (would) see |
| 4. could | 10. had not taken |
| 5. had | 11. had not asked |
| 6. were | 12. hadn't written |

13. were, were
14. could

15. would ask
16. had not come

Ex. 9.

1. I wish that your daughter were just a little like you.
2. I wish you'd make up your mind one way or another.
3. He wished the evening were already over.
4. I sometimes wish you hadn't decided to write that book, Hugh.
5. I do wish we had a proper garden.
6. Oh, God, how I wish I'd never done it.
7. I do wish Willy would change his mind about taking up German.
8. He wished he knew how to console his wife.
9. I wish you would start writing poems again.
10. I wish more people in the office had your sense of humour, Jack.
11. She wished she could hear what they were saying downstairs.
12. I wish he would stop writing to me.
13. I wish I had found him at home.
14. I wished I had not told them about my life.

Ex. 11.

1. It's time we were off.
2. It's high time he explained to us what he is up to.
3. It's about time he were taught a lesson.
4. When I woke I felt it was time I called a doctor.
5. It's really about time we had dinner.
6. He was told in public that it was time he learned to do as he was told.
7. It's high time you got rid of that old furniture.
8. Don't you think it is time we joined the guests?

Ex. 13.

- | | |
|------------------------|--------------------|
| 1. may call | 7. did not have |
| 2. have | 8. should betray |
| 3. would (might) leave | 9. might strike |
| 4. should miss | 10. should ... be. |
| 5. might let | 11. shouldn't come |
| 6. should let | |

Ex. 14.

- | | |
|---|--------------------------------|
| 1. should start | 6. had made (should have made) |
| 2. haven't made | 7. should speak (speak) |
| 3. would have | 8. should not get |
| 4. was (were) | 9. reminded (should remind) |
| 5. should take (take), should move (move) | 10. had not come |
| | 11. should stay |

- | | |
|---------------------------------------|--|
| 12. may misunderstand (misunderstood) | 31. would stop |
| 13. (should) vary | 32. should explain (explain) |
| 14. had ... met | 33. might (would) be |
| 15. should stop (stop), (should) go | 34. was |
| 16. didn't sleep | 35. hadn't caught |
| 17. should have | 36. was (were) |
| 18. heard | 37. should talk (talk) |
| 19. shouldn't do | 38. would come |
| 20. should be taught (be taught) | 39. should find (find) |
| 21. would think | 40. should be destroyed (be destroyed) |
| 22. looked | 41. should not quarrel |
| 23. (should) think | 42. was, should go |
| 24. were not made | 43. should know |
| 25. had changed | 44. should have |
| 26. were | 45. should tell (tell) |
| 27. should be (was) | 46. should be done |
| 28. was (were) crying | 47. would rain |
| 29. would be | 48. was (should be) telling |
| 30. should go (go), (should) see | 49. had brought |

Ex. 16.

- | | |
|-----------------------------------|----------------------|
| 1. should not exceed | 10. did not fit |
| 2. should take | 11. should see |
| 3. were | 12. had moved |
| 4. should leave | 13. should meet |
| 5. should dismiss (dismiss) | 14. should make |
| 6. would improve | 15. caught |
| 7. should be allowed (be allowed) | 16. should get |
| 8. should see | 17. should buy (buy) |
| 9. should be given | |

Ex. 18.

- | | |
|-----------------------|---|
| 1. could look | 8. could be re-let |
| 2. should not see | 9. should not trip |
| 3. could speak | 10. should not knock, (should not) make |
| 4. could (would) look | 11. wouldn't (shouldn't) show |
| 5. can ask | 12. could read |
| 6. can judge | 13. could get |
| 7. might (could) go | |

Ex. 19.

1. I inform you of these things so that we can understand each other.
2. He told us to get into the back of the car so that we could talk.

3. He pretended to speak to someone so that the servant should not think that he was alone in the room.
4. The girl kept her window open day and night so that the cat could (might) come into her room whenever it felt inclined.
5. We went for a walk so that I could see the woods before it got dark.
6. She lowered her voice so that her mother should not hear us.
7. Grace took the necessary steps so that they could get married at once.
8. He stood aside from the box-office in order that I might (could) speak to the clerk.
9. Telephone me when you're starting so that I shall (can) know when to expect you.
10. She gave me the key so that I could (might) open the door.

Ex. 20.

1. so that the doctor could (might) see
2. so that my wife can see
3. so that we can have
4. so that the maid'll clear
5. so that all could hear
6. so that you can write home about it
7. so that the cows should not get
8. so that little Em could sleep
9. so that her mother should not know
10. so that I could look it over
11. so that she could carry them
12. so that her children should not hate

Ex. 22.

- | | |
|---------------------|-----------------------|
| 1. were | 11. had |
| 2. had said | 12. were |
| 3. were doing | 13. had been |
| 4. were | 14. had been shouting |
| 5. had given | 15. were ... dreaming |
| 6. were talking | 16. were |
| 7. were | 17. were laughing |
| 8. were | 18. had been running |
| 9. were making | 19. were choking |
| 10. had ... decided | 20. hadn't moved |

Ex. 23.

1. He sat at his desk as though he were writing, but he neither wrote nor read.
2. He looked at me as though he didn't understand.

3. The dog greeted Frank as if they had not met for long.
4. They did not talk, as though they were so happy to be together that conversation was unnecessary.
5. He looked as if he might (would) burst into tears.
6. She felt very tired, as if she had been for a long walk.
7. She kept on glancing round the room as if she were looking for someone.
8. They talked to each other in low voices, as though they were in church.
9. Maurice sat without stirring as if he hadn't heard Jack.
10. He buttoned up his coat, as though he were cold.
11. Oh, yes, I feel as though I'd known you for years.
12. She used to look as though she had been crying.
13. It looked as though the talks would (might) continue for some more days.

Ex. 25.

(Note: The Conditional Mood, as is known, has three forms with the 1st person, singular and plural: would do (would have done), should do (should have done) and the contracted form 'd do ('d have done). They are all interchangeable. However, in the Key to the Exercises on the use of the Conditional Mood only one of the three forms is given, namely, the one found in the original.)

1. hadn't gone, would have turned, (would have) gone
2. would wait, were
3. would have fallen, had not put
4. were, would write
5. were not, would be
6. were, would give
7. would have been, had accepted
8. would ... know, were
9. would have happened, had gone
10. happened, would be
11. would ... follow, went (were to go)
12. would have made, were
13. would be, took

Ex. 27.

- | | |
|-------------------------------------|---|
| 1. would be, kept | 10. were to be (were), should not like |
| 2. shall be, should be | 11. would be, refused (were to refuse) |
| 3. would ... do, had | 12. would ... think, were to hear (heard) |
| 4. would feel, were to come (came) | 13. should not change, shall be |
| 5. would be, would ask | 14. shouldn't be, were to be offered (were offered) |
| 6. would miss, were to leave (left) | |
| 7. would ... be, had | |
| 8. should arise | |
| 9. would calm, would ... stop | |

Ex. 28.

- | | |
|-------------------------------------|---|
| 1. might be, had | 14. might be, were to learn (learned) |
| 2. would be, were to write (wrote) | 15. shouldn't bother, were |
| 3. had tried, might have stopped | 16. had kept, should have missed |
| 4. were, would not let | 17. would have continued, had not been distracted |
| 5. should hate, deceived | 18. had picked, would have died |
| 6. would think, were to come (came) | 19. might be, could join |
| 7. weren't, would get, (would) go | 20. would look, were to tell (told) |
| 8. could have gone, had wanted | 21. were, would try |
| 9. would be, were to tell (told) | 22. had been, would have done |
| 10. had not been, might have taken | 23. weren't, 'd leave |
| 11. would not have got, had asked | 24. were, should choose |
| 12. had been, might have cried | 25. should ... have put, had known |
| 13. would not be, turned | 26. 'd have wired, could have done |

Ex. 29.

1. If you were to ask me I couldn't tell you.
2. If you were travelling alone you would have got to the city by now.
3. He would have been captain of the team if he had not been so unpopular.
4. He would have been a handsome man if he had been a little taller.
5. I could have heard her if she had replied.
6. She would have enjoyed the game if she hadn't discovered that her opponent disliked losing.
7. If I were to make my suggestion he would (might) think I'm prying into his affairs.
8. If somebody had told him about this affair he would have been involved in it.
9. If he were to be invited to the party he wouldn't know what to wear.
10. If it were not for the winter we wouldn't enjoy the spring so much.
11. If (in case) anything should happen to him I shall stay in my office the whole day.
12. Darling, wouldn't it be nice if you would (were to) show Harry the garden?
13. I wonder what effect it will have on my sister's nerves if John should turn his back to her.

Ex. 31.

1. I wouldn't have thought it possible if I hadn't seen it with my own eyes.
2. I wouldn't do it if I were you.
3. In case you should have to leave unexpectedly, send me a note.
4. I would have liked the play better if it were not so long.

5. If it had not been for his illness the family would have moved to town.
6. If he had come in time it might not have happened.
7. If it had rained I would have got wet through. I had a very light dress on.
8. Where would you go if it were not raining?
9. Stay with him, please, and if he should ask for anything, let me know.
10. If I were to say a thing like that to your aunt she would think me a lunatic.
11. I'll be at the flat all evening in case you should change your mind.
12. Possibly he would feel and act differently if the circumstances were different.
13. If you were not so busy we might (could) go somewhere for dinner.
14. If I had stayed a moment longer I don't know what I might have said.
15. If we had no luggage we could walk to the station.

Ex. 32.

1. had realized, wouldn't have come
2. didn't care
3. should not catch
4. had not told, would ... have believed
5. were
6. could eat
7. were not relating
8. had seen, could have done
9. should not be
10. would be, kept (were to keep)
11. were to ask (asked), would not know
12. would be, would allow
13. had swept
14. could go
15. would be, were to come (came), (were to) see (saw)
16. should ... happen, 'll act, had ... been written

Ex. 33.

1. If any difficulty should arise, call me up at once.
2. He smiled as if he did not believe what I was saying.
3. Lock the door so that nobody should disturb us.
4. The girl sat quiet, as though she were watching TV.
5. It would have been better for us if we had never met.
6. He spoke of the book as if he had read it.
7. I left a note for him on the desk so that he would (could) see it the moment he came back.
8. He didn't utter a word as though he hadn't heard us talk about him.
9. If it hadn't been for you I don't know what I would have done.
10. Put the notice higher up so that everybody can see it.

11. If it hadn't been for his grandad the boy would have been very unhappy at home.
12. She wrote down the title of the book so that I could ask for it at the public library.
13. He said what others might have said if they had been frank.
14. The floor in the room was so dusty as if it hadn't been swept for days.
15. He would have been a happier man if he had stayed in his native village.
16. He smiled and patted her shoulder as if she were a child.
17. He felt that if he were to refuse (refused) the offer his father would be angry with him.
18. We would have caught the last bus if we had left the theatre five minutes earlier.
19. She even hinted that if they had met ten years before, when they were twenty, things might have gone differently.

Ex. 36.

- | | |
|--------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| 1. would not have been | 9. could ... have produced, would be |
| 2. wouldn't ... have been | |
| 3. should ... have given | 10. wouldn't have bared |
| 4. would have been | 11. 'd die |
| 5. would have made | 12. would have lived |
| 6. would have escaped | 13. 'd hate |
| 7. 'd do | 14. would worry |
| 8. could open, wouldn't do, would be | 15. would have brought |

Ex. 37.

1. I did not blame him. I would have done the same.
2. These are things which would be hard for a child to understand.
3. I don't think Doris would do a thing like that.
4. "Look at this scene," she said. "Where else in the world would you ever see anything like that?"
5. It wouldn't have made any difference to me.
6. "I was curious, you see." "I'd have been curious, too."
7. "I don't want to go there." "Why not? I wouldn't miss the match for anything."
8. I think it would be wise to wait till the evening.
9. I should never have thought that you would learn to drive so soon.
10. He would have said a lot more, but he was tired.

Ex. 38.

- | | |
|------------------------|-------------------|
| 1. should have thought | 3. would ... care |
| 2. shouldn't like | 4. should say |

5. should have thought
6. couldn't, could think
7. might (should) say
8. should have thought
9. should say

10. would ... say
11. couldn't tell
12. should have said

Ex. 40.

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. 'd be | 24. would not have upset |
| 2. would turn | 25. should arrive |
| 3. should be settled | 26. should fetch, could drive |
| 4. could (might) read | 27. would have made, had ... ex-
isted |
| 5. should come, could (might),
spend | 28. had ... come |
| 6. would find | 29. (should) go |
| 7. had | 30. should give |
| 8. should not know | 31. (should) be sent |
| 9. should ... set | 32. were, might have done |
| 10. should talk | 33. could not describe, had been |
| 11. had seen | 34. should ride |
| 12. were to get (got), would ... mean | 35. had, could have |
| 13. stayed, 'd have, wouldn't like,
would spoil | 36. should change, (should) stay |
| 14. should meet, might (could) show | 37. hadn't been, would have been |
| 15. would not tell, could remember | 38. were |
| 16. would help, would let | 39. was (might be) |
| 17. might have been | 40. should learn |
| 18. might (would) forget | 41. were not, would not live |
| 19. could have gone | 42. went, left |
| 20. should be dismissed | 43. might ... have met |
| 21. would have argued | 44. wouldn't interfere |
| 22. had, wouldn't live | 45. should be operated |
| 23. might have been detained, would
have telephoned | 46. should fix |

Ex. 41.

1. It was decided that the children should go to the Zoo right after breakfast.
2. I wish you wouldn't smoke so much.
3. He demanded that he should be paid at once.
4. I wish I had told the truth.
5. It's necessary that you should take a month's holiday.
6. There are not many people who would have taken the whole thing so calmly.
7. I went to my room so that no one should disturb me for an hour or two.

8. Now he wouldn't have made such a mistake.
9. I do wish this term were over.
10. At first he was afraid that Fred would sit down beside him and go on talking.
11. If only someone would believe me!
12. I should think he might be capable of it.
13. "Will you do it?" "Oh, I'd rather you did it."
14. Someone suggested that a doctor should be sent for.
15. It's time we got down to work.
16. We were afraid he might fall ill.
17. One always spoke of her like that, in the third person, as though she were not there.
18. He knew if his mother were to sit beside him and touch his hand all would immediately be well.
19. You would not understand my difficulty even if I were to tell you.
20. He left instructions that we should be taken on a sightseeing tour of the town.
21. Oh, if she had only known where to write to him!
22. If it hadn't been for his work in the British Museum Library he would never have found the book.
23. He locked the paper in his desk so that nobody should see it.
24. If Meg hadn't been with him he would have asked them about his father.
25. I should have told you a long time ago how much you had always meant to me.
26. If I were ever to meet him again I would know what to do.
27. "If my parents hadn't taken me along with them I would have never forgiven them," the boy said to me.
28. I wish I could tell you about it.
29. He feared that he would make a poor impression.
30. I should have thought you'd be glad to see your old friend.
31. And then he suddenly felt powerless, as though his bones had suddenly become soft.
32. My suggestion was that he should come and spend a few days with me so that he could look about till he found some house to suit him.
33. I wish you had seen the letter; it would have explained everything to you.
34. I insist that we should stay here.
35. His father decided that he should study law.
36. It's time you woke him up.
37. They fell in love with each other and they would have married at once if she had been free.
38. It is recommended that people with a weak heart should take these pills twice a day.

39. I wish I had known you needed the book. I could have bought it for you in London.
40. Be careful about the key. If you should lose it we'll never open the safe.
41. It was suggested to me that I should write a review of the book.
42. My husband's intention was that we should live (settle down) in Brighton.
43. I hid the paper under the cushion so that Max should not see it.
44. If it hadn't been for his smile I would not have suspected anything.

The Verb: Verbals

Ex. 1.

1. to go
2. telling
3. being
4. going
5. to speak
6. knowing
7. to call
8. mistaking

9. to get
10. being
11. to mention
12. reading
13. to get
14. denying
15. to sit

Ex. 2.

1. your
2. any person
3. a woman
4. me
5. his
6. Tom

7. his, him
8. my
9. my, me
10. Winifred
11. any person
12. me

Ex. 3.

1. to treat
2. to find
3. being
4. to demand
5. (to) obey
6. going
7. to explain
8. meeting

9. (to) sit, dream
10. being burnt
11. to find
12. putting (to put)
13. (to) cut
14. being
15. to put
16. to telephone

Ex. 4.

1. him
2. any person
3. he
4. any person
5. she
6. someone

7. everyone
8. you
9. me
10. my
11. I
12. they

Ex. 5.

1. to spend
2. to fall
3. shaking

4. to meet
5. waiting
6. stroking

- | | |
|----------------------|-------------|
| 7. to run | 14. to know |
| 8. smashing | 15. to find |
| 9. to blur | 16. to be |
| 10. fishing, sailing | 17. staring |
| 11. to want | 18. to be |
| 12. listening | 19. to be |
| 13. meeting | 20. wishing |

Ex. 6.

- | | |
|-------------------------|--|
| 1. to have lost | 10. to be talking |
| 2. to be | 11. to have aged |
| 3. to be reading | 12. to have been established |
| 4. to have been | 13. to understand |
| 5. to have forgotten | 14. to be copying, (to be) translating |
| 6. to have been asking | 15. to have changed |
| 7. to have become | 16. to be saying |
| 8. to be | |
| 9. to have been snowing | |

Ex. 7.

1. That turned out to be true.
2. He seemed to have gained all he wanted.
3. "Where is Miss Stone?" "She seems to be working in the reference library."
4. He appeared to have no friendly relations with anyone in the office.
5. Bob glanced at his mother to see how she was taking the conversation. But she didn't seem to have been listening.
6. His information turned out to be accurate.
7. She seemed to be writing or drawing.
8. The gossip seemed not to have been taken seriously by my brothers.
9. He's the only friend I seem to have.
10. My father listened gravely, or at least he appeared to be listening.
11. We seem to have had this conversation before.
12. None of you seems to know how to behave in a decent way.
13. He seemed to have been (to be) surprised by the rumour.
14. He did not appear to have heard what she had said.
15. I never knew the fellow, but everyone seems to have liked him.
16. He happened to have been (to be) invited to dinner at Roger's.
17. I happened to be the first to hear about it.
18. Ann met her young man at a dance and later on she went out with him a lot because he proved to be a good boy.

Ex. 8.

1. He went riding every day.
2. She sat gazing straight before her.

3. He came back looking upset.
4. Several men were sitting around eating sandwiches and smoking.
5. I told my husband I wanted to go dancing.
6. She lay crying a long while.
7. That morning the boy went boating alone.
8. I said nothing and the boy went off whistling.
9. We stood waiting for the doors to open.
10. I went swimming that morning.
11. She has gone shopping.
12. With the first gust of wind her husband's hat went sailing through the air.
13. They sat talking over plans for the future.

Ex. 9.

- | | |
|------------------|----------------|
| 1. to find | 14. meeting |
| 2. watching | 15. saying |
| 3. understanding | 16. buying |
| 4. to hear | 17. coming |
| 5. learning | 18. correcting |
| 6. dragging | 19. to feel |
| 7. to find | 20. finding |
| 8. wondering | 21. knowing |
| 9. leaving | 22. walking |
| 10. listening | 23. to find |
| 11. to discover | 24. balancing |
| 12. sitting | 25. proving |
| 13. to find | |

Ex. 10.

1. I sat there for a while just looking at the people.
2. They both paused, listening to the voices on the stairs.
3. Oh, Bert, I never thought I would end my life wrapping brown paper round strange objects.
4. Bernard was still in Scotland staying with relations.
5. Jack shook his head, rejecting the idea.
6. I lay on my bed thinking about this all afternoon.
7. A man walked out of the house carrying a guitar.
8. Dinny is upstairs reading to my son.
9. For a minute we stood still, not being able to realize what was happening.
10. He looked at the present, not believing his eyes.
11. He sat by the fire, trying to read the evening paper.
12. He stood at the top of the stairs watching his wife sort out the letters.
13. He went about the house, smiling quietly.
14. He was alone in the classroom, marking exercise-books.
15. You would be happy living with me in the country.

Ex. 11.

1. She spent the spring holiday skiing with her parents.
2. She won't have any trouble getting you a job in Hollywood.
3. When I got home, I spent an hour cleaning my room.
4. She used to spend the morning lying about the beach.
5. They spent most of their time reading or listening to music.
6. They had a hard time living in Dublin.
7. I had difficulty recollecting the man's name.
8. We had a hard time finding a taxi in the night.
9. He didn't waste any time getting to London.
10. We had a jolly good time dancing.
11. She had trouble making the child eat his breakfast.
12. I wasted two hours waiting for you at the station.
13. She had a dull time looking after her aunt.
14. I don't want to spend the evening boring you with my stories.
15. In my youth I wasted a great amount of time reading books that were of no great profit to me.
16. I spent all my spare time reading and writing.

Ex. 12.

- | | |
|------------------------------|-----------------------|
| 1. to be | 25. liking |
| 2. to find | 26. to do |
| 3. listening | 27. buying |
| 4. to look | 28. hearing |
| 5. to cheer | 29. attempting to see |
| 6. to come, leaving, letting | 30. to get |
| 7. to do | 31. to ask |
| 8. to drive, (to) get | 32. to explain |
| 9. to settle, (to) live | 33. knowing |
| 10. seeing | 34. getting, reading |
| 11. saying | 35. seeing |
| 12. to illustrate | 36. to be |
| 13. to hide | 37. to wipe |
| 14. composing | 38. writing |
| 15. to remember | 39. breaking |
| 16. to answer | 40. to interfere |
| 17. thinking | 41. to shave |
| 18. strapping | 42. coming |
| 19. to employ | 43. to confide |
| 20. to meet | 44. painting |
| 21. whistling | 45. to see |
| 22. looking | 46. living |
| 23. to know, to like | 47. to do |
| 24. to waste | |

Ex. 13.

- | | |
|--------------------|---------------------------|
| 1. to take | 21. to disappoint |
| 2. altering | 22. to doubt |
| 3. to find | 23. unpacking (to unpack) |
| 4. knitting | 24. searching (to search) |
| 5. trying to cheer | 25. writing (to write) |
| 6. to say | 26. to gather (gathering) |
| 7. talking | 27. to work (working) |
| 8. going | 28. to look (looking) |
| 9. to buy | 29. to visit (visiting) |
| 10. to tell | 30. to hum (humming) |
| 11. going | 31. playing (to play) |
| 12. to tell | 32. having (to have) |
| 13. seeing | 33. sitting (to sit) |
| 14. being taken | 34. flying |
| 15. to look | 35. to think |
| 16. having | 36. working |
| 17. to slouch | 37. to admit |
| 18. taking | 38. ringing |
| 19. to lock | 39. walking |
| 20. going | 40. to rain |

Ex. 14.

(Note: Certain verbs may be followed by either an infinitive or an *ing*-form as direct objects. In such cases the keys to the exercises give the variant found in the original.)

1. She began to cry.
2. I wanted to find out something about him.
3. He was wide awake now, and he felt like reading, but the only book in the room was the Bible.
4. Paul doesn't need defending.
5. He liked being in the company of his relations.
6. He kept glancing at his watch, and when he finished his tea he said he must be going back.
7. Now I was beginning to understand something.
8. Before long I ceased to be useful to them.
9. Dan could never resist showing (displaying) his work.
10. Even in the darkened room, I could not help seeing that Mrs. Jones' face was swollen with tears.
11. All that January morning the telephone kept ringing in my office.
12. I proposed to find a doctor and bring him to see Ed.
13. I don't think he mentioned visiting them.
14. They forgot to invite me.
15. I shall never forget staying in your house in Kent.
16. I'm trying to read.

17. I did not want to leave him alone in his grief and offered to take him to my home.
18. I've put off writing to him till tomorrow.
19. I could not endure being treated coldly.
20. She never minded being alone in the cottage.
21. I set about writing short stories seriously.
22. He was glad that she had taken the trouble to write to him.
23. Do you remember delivering the grape juice to this house that morning?
24. Did you remember to send the money to Leeds?
25. I decided not to worry Roger with the matter.
26. Oh, I think you'll enjoy being here when the summer comes.
27. He tried growing potatoes there.
28. I knew that he was trying to save some money.
29. We are not going to ask to come with you.
30. I was tired of pretending to write or to read.
31. I did not feel like joking.
32. I refuse to accept responsibility for your actions.
33. He was anxious to avoid meeting anyone who he knew.
34. In spite of the rain we went on waiting.
35. He could not afford to be late these days.
36. Hugh read a review of the book in an American paper and suggested buying it for their library.
37. When I got back into the house I remembered to wipe the rain off my face.
38. I remember mentioning it to you, Lewis.
39. Possibly Milly regretted talking so much.
40. More and more she dreaded being left alone with the children.
41. The others, without fuss, agreed to take part.
42. Her friends promised to send her work.
43. Now she sat down by the fire and prepared to tell her news.
44. He kept calling his hotel, asking if there were any messages for him.
45. Do you care to take a look at it?
46. He did not trouble to reply (to them).
47. In the morning he started moving to the room downstairs.

Ex. 15.

- | | |
|---------------------------|----------------------|
| 1. being needed | 10. being interfered |
| 2. to whistle (whistling) | 11. erasing |
| 3. being laughed | 12. to be shown |
| 4. to be bothered | 13. being called |
| 5. inviting | 14. to be looking |
| 6. to be sleeping | 15. being parted |
| 7. to be differed | 16. to hurt |
| 8. to have heard | 17. being seen |
| 9. to be known | |

Ex. 16.

- | | |
|--------------------------|----------------|
| 1. to go, to find, to do | 8. to forget |
| 2. to look, to listen | 9. to take |
| 3. trying | 10. working |
| 4. to discern | 11. to watch |
| 5. considering | 12. to see |
| 6. to express | 13. tearing |
| 7. buying | 14. to imitate |

Ex. 17.

1. Jobs were still hard to get, and I didn't have very much luck the first few days.
2. Her lower lip trembled as if she were ready to burst into tears.
3. Her smile faded quickly: "You were crazy to come."
4. Mother was busy cooking dinner in the kitchen.
5. He shook hands with me: "I'm sorry to have to leave."
6. For a while I was very content just to be alone.
7. The song was worth being recorded.
8. He was quick to understand what had happened.
9. Their argument was hard to follow.
10. You're certain to hear about it sooner or later.
11. He lived on the little money his father had been able to put by.
12. The news was worth writing about to his father.
13. He was delighted to find his brother at home.
14. On such a day something was sure to happen.
15. I was not sufficiently interested to continue the argument.
16. You are lucky to live in such a beautiful spot.
17. His wife was in London. She was busy finding themselves a new home.
18. I'm not very likely to do that.
19. Such results are impossible to achieve.
20. I was surprised to be rung up by Charles.
21. I respected her highly and was proud to know her.
22. I was free to go and to come as I pleased.
23. His plane was due to leave at one.
24. I was distressed to find him so ill.
25. The man was easy to understand.
26. I saw that he was reluctant to go.
27. He was now determined to stay there.
28. The offer was not so easy for Doris to accept.
29. When I arrived he was busy mowing the lawn.
30. His collection of stamps was worth seeing.

Ex. 18.

1. He didn't now know how to pass the day.
2. I don't know who to believe any more.

3. We sat silent a few minutes. We didn't know what to talk about.
4. I didn't know whether to thank him again or not.
5. He took off his glasses and looked vainly for something with which to clean them.
6. I couldn't decide where to look for him.
7. He appeared uncertain which way to go.
8. He learned how to get along with such people.
9. Autumn is not a suitable season in which to travel.
10. He had little time left in which to sleep.
11. Philip did not know whether to go or to stay.
12. There were more knives, forks and spoons than he knew what to do with.
13. "Men are queer creatures, and one has to know how to manage them," Ann said to me.
14. I didn't quite know what to do about my brother.

Ex. 19.

- | | | |
|-----------|--------------|--------------|
| 1. on | 8. for | 15. against |
| 2. for | 9. to | 16. for |
| 3. from | 10. in | 17. for |
| 4. in | 11. to | 18. by, into |
| 5. of | 12. at, from | 19. to |
| 6. with | 13. to | 20. of |
| 7. in, in | 14. of | 21. from |

Ex. 20.

- | | | |
|----------|-------------------|---------|
| 1. she | 4. this old house | 7. him |
| 2. him | 5. Beryl | 8. your |
| 3. Milly | 6. her | |

Ex. 21.

- | | | |
|-------------------|-----------------|---------------------|
| 1. walking | 5. being forced | 9. being connected |
| 2. having written | 6. being made | 10. having escaped, |
| 3. being ordered | 7. having done | (having) married |
| 4. using | 8. having seen | 11. having guessed |

Ex. 22.

1. He didn't object to others being there.
2. I can't blame you for being so eager to leave the town in this weather.
3. I had nothing to do with his making the decision.
4. Then I suspected him of teasing me.

5. We had no difficulty in being nice to each other.
6. He insisted upon her learning this complicated game.
7. There was nothing to prevent him from returning to London.
8. He apologized for keeping me.
9. I didn't succeed in making Ann talk.
10. My father often accused me of treating the house as a hotel.
11. I was not really sure what I felt about Jack coming home.
12. I told him about Phil wanting to come with us.
13. At the hotel, she insisted upon paying for the taxi.
14. Dan talked Bill into staying to lunch with him.
15. The doctor began by feeling his pulse.
16. For a second, I was afraid he was thinking of resigning.
17. He insisted on Ann being invited here at once.
18. I disapprove of him for ever getting involved into this affair.
19. I asked him how he felt about being a doctor.
20. How did you account for smashing that car?
21. He reproached himself for not having tried to talk with her.

Ex. 23.

- | | | |
|----------|--------|-----------|
| 1. to | 7. on | 13. at |
| 2. of | 8. of | 14. at |
| 3. in | 9. at | 15. about |
| 4. about | 10. in | 16. of |
| 5. of | 11. at | 17. in |
| 6. at | 12. at | 18. of |

Ex. 24.

- | | | |
|--------|---------------|----------------|
| 1. he | 5. his friend | 9. no tourists |
| 2. Meg | 6. the car | 10. someone |
| 3. me | 7. he | |
| 4. I | 8. me | |

Ex. 25.

- | | | |
|----------------------|---------------------|----------------------|
| 1. living | 5. having been | 9. being interviewed |
| 2. being entertained | 6. being told | 10. getting |
| 3. having invented | 7. having persuaded | |
| 4. wearing | 8. dealing | |

Ex. 26.

1. You're pretty good at keeping your mouth shut.
2. I felt proud of having been of use to him.
3. I knew he was not capable of making decisions.

4. The doctor was used to listening to all sorts of people.
5. I'm sorry for giving you so much trouble.
6. I'm more interested than you in finding her.
7. I am sure that you are quite capable of dealing with the situation.
8. I am tired of doing what does not come easily to me.
9. I was surprised at his getting married at all.
10. I was a little disappointed at not meeting Charles.
11. She was grateful to him for realizing that she didn't want to talk about herself.
12. He was annoyed with her for getting him involved in this quarrel.
13. He was fond of laughing at those who were shy.

Ex. 27.

- | | | |
|---------------|-------------|----------------------|
| 1. to realize | 5. to carry | 9. to ask |
| 2. to know | 6. hearing | 10. making, to argue |
| 3. to analyse | 7. to feel | |
| 4. deciding | 8. being | |

Ex. 28.

1. He was very tired and it took an effort to get out of the car.
2. I don't think it amused him to quarrel.
3. How long would it take her to find another flat?
4. When it was time for me to leave, she begged me to phone that night.
5. It pleased me to think that he did not know my plans.
6. The wind was so strong that it took him four matches to light a cigarette.
7. It irritated Mary to hear Willy use a German word or phrase.
8. It didn't matter much Pat being late.
9. It did not take long for the kitchen to get warm.
10. After a time she said it was his turn to explain what he wanted to do.
11. It never occurred to me to compare the two books.
12. It delighted me to read the letter.
13. It tortured him to see her body shaken by sobs.
14. It might be of interest for you to see what sort of person this Allen is.
15. It has given me pleasure to write an essay on his novels.
16. It fascinates me to visit strange places.
17. When it came down to cooking dinner she burst into tears.
18. They never knew how much courage it had taken her to ask that question.

Ex. 29.

- | | | |
|------------|-------------|------------|
| 1. to say | 3. to feel | 5. having |
| 2. to deal | 4. to judge | 6. to tell |

- | | | |
|----------------------|----------------|----------------|
| 7. to walk (walking) | 10. to decline | 13. to decline |
| 8. clearing | 11. being | 14. being |
| 9. to go | 12. to explain | 15. having |

Ex. 30.

1. It is quite possible to have different views on the same issue.
2. It is nice to be out in this weather.
3. It was wonderful having Bart with us.
4. In this rain it's tough getting a taxi.
5. It seemed worth having a look at the cottage.
6. It was rather sweet of him to hurry home in order to tell her all about it without delay.
7. It will be very nice for my son to have a boy of his age to play with.
8. It is delightful to plunge into cold water on a hot day.
9. It was nice of you to do it fast.
10. It is not natural for a young man to spend all his evenings at home.
11. It is necessary to decide today whether to invite him.
12. It's most annoying his disappearing like that.
13. It was hateful to cause the old man pain.
14. Then I thought it would be silly of me not to profit if I could.
15. It was not unusual for dinner parties to end that way.
16. If you have children it is sometimes worth being on the school committee.

Ex. 31.

1. Throughout the morning I found it difficult to concentrate.
2. You will find it hard to forget the incident.
3. We thought it best for her to go and live in London for a bit.
4. He found it good to sleep in his own bed.
5. He thought it odd of Tom to come.
6. You want me to make it easy for you to leave us, don't you?
7. I thought it possible to put one more question.
8. He did not think it necessary to mention it to him.
9. The noise made it impossible for me to hear what they were talking about.
10. They all felt it unreasonable of Ann to have left them without a word.
11. I thought it odd of you not to stay to tea with me.
12. Her aunt's care made it possible for her to get used to her new way of life.
13. I felt it somewhat unwise to pursue the subject.
14. He did not feel it necessary to take any precautions.
15. I found it hard to forget our conversation.
16. I found it impossible to be frank with him.
17. Would you find it convenient for me to call on you on Monday?
18. I find it hard to understand him.

19. Grant thought it best to deny everything.
20. Hugh's mood made it impossible to approach him with my request.

Ex. 32.

- | | |
|----------------|----------------|
| 1. to sleep | 17. to make |
| 2. approaching | 18. warming |
| 3. to be | 19. to get |
| 4. to be | 20. refusing |
| 5. to tackle | 21. whistling |
| 6. to be | 22. to kill |
| 7. doing | 23. to turn |
| 8. to stand | 24. to show |
| 9. looking | 25. to express |
| 10. to lose | 26. to await |
| 11. to whistle | 27. to be |
| 12. to feel | 28. lying |
| 13. to wish | 29. to take |
| 14. running | 30. to use |
| 15. to apply | 31. being |
| 16. to sit | 32. being |

Ex. 33.

- | | |
|---------------------|------------------------|
| 1. to have divorced | 6. to have quarrelled |
| 2. to indicate | 7. to be writing |
| 3. to have been | 8. to have been caused |
| 4. to have used | 9. to be staying |
| 5. to face | 10. to reply |

Ex. 34.

1. In his talk with my father the visitor was heard to mention some accident.
2. He was advised not to tell the story of his life to them.
3. The girl was told to fill the cups with tea.
4. They were heard arguing on the terrace a few minutes ago.
5. "I used to steal out of the house at night," he said, "when I was supposed to be studying to play the organ in the church."
6. He is believed to be deeply attached to his family.
7. He was known to be writing a book about the war.
8. Through the window the driver could be seen waiting beside the car.
9. This time I was asked to call at his house.
10. He was reported to have changed his mind.
11. When I rang the bell a dog could be heard barking in the hall.
12. He had never been known to refuse to see a patient at any hour.

13. He was allowed to leave his name and his address with them.
14. Simon and Dick were left talking in the drawing-room.
15. She was made to understand that she must move out of the flat.
16. He was believed by some to have connections with the London branch of the firm.
17. We were left to see the film.
18. He hasn't been seen for a week. He is said to be on holiday.
19. He was told to come here and see Mr Abbott.
20. Fox was found waiting for us on the terrace.
21. Bill was led into the drawing-room and left there to look at the pictures.
22. We're not required to say what is good for him and what isn't.
23. His presence was unexpected because he was said to be travelling in the East.
24. I thought that matches were not left lying about the garden for nothing.
25. I was ill at the time, and Mrs Barnaby was left to look after me.
26. She was believed to have left her husband.

Ex. 35.

(Note: x = absence of "to".)

- | | | |
|-------|-------|--------|
| 1. to | 6. x | 11. x |
| 2. to | 7. x | 12. to |
| 3. to | 8. to | 13. x |
| 4. to | 9. x | 14. x |
| 5. x | 10. x | 15. x |

Ex. 36.

- | | | |
|----------------|----------------------|--------------------------|
| 1. to lean | 17. to go | 33. sobbing (sob) |
| 2. training | 18. to be | 34. chatting |
| 3. liking | 19. looking | 35. leave |
| 4. stand, move | 20. to be | 36. get, whisper, stroll |
| 5. to be sent | 21. chatting | 37. walking |
| 6. flying | 22. to deal | 38. walk, turn |
| 7. make | 23. trying | 39. to be |
| 8. hanging | 24. crying | 40. to be |
| 9. to smoke | 25. living | 41. to be |
| 10. dancing | 26. being | |
| 11. to spend | 27. coming | |
| 12. being | 28. walk (walking) | |
| 13. looking | 29. thinking | |
| 14. look, turn | 30. hurry (hurrying) | |
| 15. standing | 31. leave | |
| 16. to be | 32. say | |

Ex. 37.

- | | | |
|-----------------|-----------------------|----------------|
| 1. the telegram | 7. a writer | 13. my |
| 2. my | 8. me | 14. Mr Fox('s) |
| 3. their cousin | 9. its (it) | 15. my glance |
| 4. her | 10. my nephew | 16. my |
| 5. myself | 11. his | |
| 6. my | 12. your daughter('s) | |

Ex. 38.

- | | | |
|-----------------|----------------------|-------------------|
| 1. to go | 7. to have changed | 13. thinking |
| 2. to be held | 8. to be established | 14. being helped |
| 3. to have been | 9. to have been | 15. trying |
| 4. to explain | waiting | 16. being uttered |
| 5. to be | 10. reading | 17. being carried |
| 6. to have been | 11. being taken | |
| written | 12. being told | |

Ex. 39.

1. He watched the people hurrying towards the trains.
2. He lit himself a cigar and tried to relax as he heard the front door being opened.
3. I know him to have visited them several times this year.
4. I regard the news as being very important.
5. He found the brothers to be very competent business men.
6. He found Fox talking in the kitchen.
7. I appreciate your father's sending me his car.
8. I left them to talk it over.
9. I left them discussing politics.
10. John could not bring himself to return to London.
11. It was easy to imagine Kate sitting silent.
12. Later she heard the luggage being carried up the stairs.
13. I felt that it was time I called the doctor. I got Dan to ring for me.
14. "Where were the repair men?" "I got them waiting on the porch."
15. I remember him reading aloud some poems of his.
16. His wife was in the shower. He could hear the water running.
17. He came up the hill and saw the car waiting.
18. I found Kate eating an early lunch before going out to meet Ann.
19. He made me promise to come and see him.
20. He got me to tell him stories of my family.
21. He couldn't bring himself to read the manuscript.
22. I've never known him lose things.
23. Then he saw Maurice come into the bar.
24. He saw me looking at the photograph.

25. She asked me to meet her by the bus stop.
26. Your letter forced me to write what I feel.
27. I watched the second car depart and then went slowly back into the cool house.
28. I saw my bus approaching, and walked off to catch it.
29. It was I who suggested your coming here.
30. Jack was surprised to feel his hands shaking.
31. I expected my father to meet me at the station.
32. She apologized for having kept us waiting so long.
33. Next day I saw him drinking a glass of beer at a pub and reading a paper.
34. I saw Terry walk down to the corner.
35. He saw John pouring himself a cup of coffee.
36. He saw John pour himself a cup of coffee.
37. Arthur saw us getting ready to go.
38. I don't like people to come and see me off at airports.
39. Jack pushed the bell and heard it ring.
40. From my corner I heard Phil's wife explaining why her son had not got a scholarship.
41. At last I heard his car draw up below.
42. He could hear himself breathing.
43. I heard the door shut noisily and I was glad that they were gone.
44. I heard steps in the garden coming up from the direction of the swimming pool.
45. He did his best to make his son change his mind.
46. I watched her go and then walked out into the street.

Ex. 40.

- | | | |
|--------|--------|---------|
| 1. for | 5. for | 9. on |
| 2. to | 6. at | 10. to |
| 3. for | 7. for | 11. to |
| 4. for | 8. to | 12. for |

Ex. 41.

1. He waited for me to state my business.
2. I rely upon you to be discreet.
3. She stood listening to Rosemary quarrel (quarrelling) with her brother.
4. I heard him crying for us to stop.
5. I stayed in the corridor waiting for Charles to come along.
6. After half an hour I began to long for the children to come back.
7. Will you wire for them to send my things?
8. I returned to my car, where I sat waiting for George to come.
9. I looked at John drinking a glass of beer but he did not seem to notice me.
10. He nodded to Andrew and motioned to him to take a seat.

11. I looked at my mother laughing happily at Tom's jokes.
12. He waited for her to explain why she had done it.
13. Listening to Sam talking of his sister, I thought of Ellen.
14. I looked at the bus approaching and said good-bye to my companion.
15. My uncle even hinted he might arrange for me to spend a day on the farm.

Ex. 44.

- | | | |
|------------|-------------|-------------|
| 1. as if | 7. without | 13. after |
| 2. on | 8. by | 14. than |
| 3. since | 9. before | 15. when |
| 4. without | 10. after | 16. without |
| 5. by | 11. upon | 17. before |
| 6. without | 12. without | |

Ex. 45.

1. Jack lit a cigarette while waiting for the waiter to come back with the ice.
2. The farmer's wife came in every day to do the rooms and the cooking.
3. She looked at me thoughtfully as if taking seriously what I had said.
4. He called Lola back, as if to apologize for something.
5. He refused to tidy himself before coming to tea.
6. Phil stuck the money in his pocket without counting it.
7. He started by sweeping out the cottage.
8. Without waiting for his reply she began to gather the cups.
9. He splashed his face and head with the icy water as though to cool his fever.
10. He was drowned while bathing.
11. He lit a cigarette before answering.
12. After watching a play on the television, I said I was going to bed.
13. He went back to his hotel and lay down without even taking his shoes off.
14. She did not wish to be alone with her husband so as not to discuss matters with him.
15. Since reaching Paris Abe had not shaved.
16. We walked along for a few minutes without saying a word.
17. Then he turned away to speak to someone inside. In doing this he took his hand from the door.
18. She turned as though to leave.
19. He got up as if to join his guests.
20. On arriving I was glad to find that I knew everyone.
21. He moved about very slowly as if swimming.
22. He did all he could to make friends with us.
23. Without waiting for permission he switched on the light.
24. After bathing we had beer and sandwiches.

25. He hoped Philip had come to explain things.
26. He hesitated a moment before crossing the bridge.
27. He listened without interrupting me, nodding and occasionally smiling.

Ex. 46.

1. I was too excited to eat.
2. My son was old enough to notice my mood.
3. Would you be so kind as to shut the door?
4. I said I was too busy to talk and put down the telephone.
5. He was too lazy to take his profession seriously.
6. It is always easy enough to find reasons for doing nothing.
7. He was so tired as to be unable to undress.
8. I was too shy to speak to the girl or even to look at her properly.
9. I'm sure you're too young to remember.
10. At the time he was not well enough to go travelling.
11. The light wasn't strong enough for me to see the expression of his face.
12. Michael was too annoyed to reply immediately.
13. It was too dark for him to see my face.

Ex. 47.

- | | | |
|----------------|--------------------|-----------------|
| 1. to do | 12. drifting | 23. overlooking |
| 2. lying | 13. to look | 24. to look |
| 3. to give | 14. moving | 25. waiting |
| 4. to tell | 15. being escorted | 26. crying |
| 5. affecting | 16. to gossip | 27. waiting |
| 6. to put | 17. to appeal | 28. to do |
| 7. travelling | 18. coming | 29. welcoming |
| 8. sleeping | 19. admiring | 30. approaching |
| 9. to overcome | 20. to do, to keep | 31. sitting |
| 10. to show | 21. to try | 32. to look |
| 11. to come | 22. rising | |

Ex. 48.

1. I've got something to show you.
2. In the carriage there was only an old man reading his paper.
3. He had a difficult job to cope with.
4. She always had her brother to play with, to quarrel with, to show off in front of other girls.
5. He was not an easy person to help.
6. Dick ran into a young woman coming out of the greengrocer's.
7. Look, there is a bus stopping.
8. Paul had a lot of things to see to.

9. Oh, Steve, I have something important to discuss with you.
10. I have a lot of papers for him to sign.
11. I met Sid coming back from town.
12. It was a dining-room and there were three people having tea at the table.
13. I've brought you the forms to fill in.
14. He got a telegram to say his aunt had had a stroke.
15. The terrace was crowded with women drinking tea.
16. There was a letter waiting for him at the desk.
17. I strapped the watch on my wrist with trembling fingers.
18. It was an easy tree to climb.
19. They said good-bye and got into the waiting car.
20. I suppose that's a very difficult question to answer.
21. He closed his eyes and dozed in the swiftly moving car.
22. Just then he heard running steps.
23. In ten minutes he went downstairs to the hall and could not find a place to sit.
24. The woman looked at the sleeping child.

Ex. 49.

(Note: With nouns that may be followed by either an infinitive or an *ing*-form as attributes, the key to the exercises gives the variant found in the original.)

- | | | |
|----------------------------|--------------------------|---------------------|
| 1. to control | 17. of mentioning | 34. of my running |
| 2. to take over, to direct | 18. of teaching | 35. to give |
| 3. of doing | 19. of being | 36. to ask |
| 4. to check | 20. of avoiding | 37. to be re-united |
| 5. to interfere | 21. to carry | 38. to get |
| 6. of finding | 22. of talking | 39. of pacifying |
| 7. of spending | 23. of being parted | 40. of ... writing |
| 8. of belonging, of being | 24. to explain | 41. to get |
| 9. of buying | 25. of showing off | 42. of meeting |
| 10. of saying | 26. to meet | 43. of going |
| 11. of taking | 27. to put | 44. to mark |
| 12. of answering | 28. to talk | 45. to be worried |
| 13. of being seen | 29. to find | 46. of tracing |
| 14. to transfer | 30. of being | 47. of being |
| 15. of being received | 31. to say | 48. of leaving |
| 16. of adding | 32. of knowing | 49. to listen |
| | 33. of hurting, of being | |

Ex. 50.

(See Note to Ex. 49.)

1. I couldn't resist the temptation to tease Tom.
2. A week later he received an order to go to the Port at once.

3. Of course, I had the advantage of knowing the man very well.
4. The invitation to visit him never came.
5. What's the point of staying with them any longer?
6. When he spoke he gave the impression of being both nervous and ill at ease.
7. I got permission to borrow the book in order to learn the poem.
8. He had a habit of sitting up till late at night.
9. At college I formed a habit of keeping a diary.
10. He went east in February with the intention of selling out his business and settling in New York.
11. I had the satisfaction of seeing that Betty was getting more and more ill at ease.
12. But I always had the fear of doing the wrong thing.
13. He gave up the pretence of packing.
14. There was no possibility of taking a walk that day.
15. And of course you have the right to say "no" to any of them.
16. I haven't any right to ask you at all.
17. Mother had no desire to go to the kitchen.
18. He saw her instinctive desire to put each thing in its appointed place.
19. It rained in the morning and she gave up any hope of visiting the pool.
20. There is no hope of arranging an interview with him before he sails.
21. He gave up the idea of telephoning.
22. The idea of parting never crossed our minds.
23. I was in despair at the thought of losing the job.
24. I simply can't bear the thought of not seeing you every day.
25. Her decision to find work was quite strong.
26. Paul made no attempt to talk.
27. I don't think that she would like any attempt on my part to renew the acquaintance.
28. I made a great effort to be calm.
29. She saw me looking at her but made no effort to get up.
30. He had the gift of seeing things as they were.
31. I set myself the task of trying to find them.
32. I don't know any decent way of turning down their invitation.
33. Oh, I generally find ways of amusing myself when I am at home all by myself.
34. You missed the chance to make him happy.
35. They rarely got a chance to help their father at work.
36. I don't often have the chance of going out in the evening.
37. I'm glad I got this chance of seeing you.
38. There was no opportunity for them to be alone.
39. I've taken the opportunity to give Ann my views on the present situation.
40. I'm glad to have the opportunity of talking to you, Doctor.

Ex. 51.

- | | | |
|--------|----------|---------|
| 1. in | 6. for | 11. for |
| 2. for | 7. at | 12. in |
| 3. in | 8. to | 13. at |
| 4. in | 9. about | 14. for |
| 5. to | 10. in | |

Ex. 52.

1. I had some difficulty in getting the door open because of the mass of newspapers and letters on the floor inside.
2. He had never had difficulty in finding jobs and obtaining research grants.
3. There was no sense in staying in the room all day.
4. I have reasons for wanting to keep this house.
5. I knew that my housekeeper would be still away, so there was no point in going to the flat till late at night.
6. Val had no particular objection to being seen with Helen.
7. He wanted to hide the embarrassment he felt at making the speech.
8. There will be no difficulty in arranging this interview.
9. He was trying to conceal his pleasure at being offered a job.
10. I had one clear reason for not doing so.
11. That was one of my reasons for bringing you here this afternoon.

Ex. 53.

- | | | |
|-------------|--------------|---------------|
| 1. she | 5. Herbert | 9. any person |
| 2. Jack | 6. the piano | 10. me |
| 3. anything | 7. its | |
| 4. his | 8. his, my | |

Ex. 54.

1. Is there any objection to my seeing him?
2. I couldn't bear the thought of her being so unhappy and so far away.
3. Although she was always at the head of her class, there was no question of her going to college.
4. His plan included the necessity of Bart's remaining in Europe as manager.
5. There wasn't much chance of his surviving the operation.
6. Even now the thought of having talked to her touched him strangely.
7. Do you think there's any chance of our being believed?
8. His quick ears caught the sound of a motor boat approaching.
9. Now there is a real danger of the epidemic spreading wide.
10. I hate the idea of your being all alone there.
11. There was silence for a moment, broken only by the sound of the water running from the tap.
12. There was no chance of his getting a scholarship to Oxford.

Ex. 56.

- | | |
|----------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| 1. to give | 12. to work |
| 2. to teach | 13. to use |
| 3. of going | 14. your writing, telephoning |
| 4. to decline (to have declined) | 15. to talk |
| 5. sitting | 16. to be taken |
| 6. to make | 17. to remind |
| 7. asking | 18. sounding |
| 8. to be | 19. to end |
| 9. her getting up, seeing | 20. for him to make |
| 10. to live | 21. pretending |
| 11. for (to) him to walk | |

Ex. 57.

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. coming, pause, look, throw | 22. making, drying, to decide, to do |
| 2. to tell | 23. tending |
| 3. to be, to go | 24. do |
| 4. to learn, to appear, to resume | 25. to rush |
| 5. to keep, taking, to support, to matter, sketching | 26. finding |
| 6. beating, doing, laying | 27. to eat, to show, to keep, going |
| 7. standing, coming | 28. to be writing, to have come, studying, relating |
| 8. having, come, to help | 29. having, to be, bringing |
| 9. going, leaving, saying | 30. expecting, to be |
| 10. to be | 31. to go |
| 11. pull, making, jam, to avoid, butting | 32. to do |
| 12. reading, sigh, to touch, trying, to turn | 33. searching |
| 13. coming, to light, banging | 34. becoming, reading, smoking, reading, smoking |
| 14. making, turning | 35. moving, fussing |
| 15. approaching | 36. coming, arriving |
| 16. finding, being lost | 37. waiting, going |
| 17. to know, to avoid, telling | 38. coming |
| 18. do | 39. sitting, to laugh (laughing) |
| 19. to know, to do | 40. to make, prefer, to have |
| 20. to stay, thinking, being | 41. trying, to induce, to take |
| 21. be, say | 42. knowing |

Ex. 58.

- | | |
|---|--------------------------|
| 1. of the man being | 5. of his getting |
| 2. of his students making | 6. of his child's crying |
| 3. of people seeing | 7. of him to go, leave |
| 4. of a man waiting, for a bomb to go off | 8. you talk |
| | 9. things to be |

10. for me to get
11. the Governor to appoint
12. him get, wash, dress

13. of Mary's steps retreating
14. the seconds tick
15. for me to find out

Ex. 59.

(Note: In instances where the use of an infinitive or an *ing*-form is interchangeable, the key gives the variant found in the original.)

a) to pay, to turn, to tell, to face, to stay, walking, saying, to do, having told, to let, prevent, asking, to turn, thinking

b) being kidnapped, talking, to be, to find, warning, talking, to play, surrounding, looking, to search, watching, walking, being, walking, to hear, call, running, to see, climbing, looking, telling, talking, being, promise, to look

c) to cry, shaking, gasping, wondering, to stop, to see, to pull, making, to put, to cry, stumbling, repeating, to pick, to sit, to wipe, sobbing, to wash, to think, spending, to go, to wash, taking, to chat, making, being, being, to visit, having, eating

Ex. 62.

1. I had to wait two hours in the hospital to have a tooth filled.
2. I heard his name mentioned in this connection.
3. She slammed the drawer shut.
4. I left my wife well provided for.
5. I have kept their letters locked all these years.
6. He was determined to make himself respected.
7. I couldn't have my only son expelled from the college.
8. When they got near the house, they saw the Buick parked in front.
9. You could get him sacked.
10. He was annoyed to hear his wife's name mentioned to a stranger.
11. It was hard to see him defeated.
12. I suppose that your mother had her chickens counted every night.
13. "What do you want to warn me of?" "That you will find yourself talked about."
14. He told her that it was impossible to have a form filled without a previous application.
15. If he did it he might find himself cut off from his family.
16. I knew I could only help him if I kept my mouth shut.
17. One can't get anything done in our house.
18. They wanted the committee convened on Monday.

Ex. 63.

1. if
2. till

3. when
4. if

5. when
6. as though

- | | | |
|-----------|------------|-------------|
| 7. unless | 10. as | 13. when |
| 8. if | 11. as if | 14. even if |
| 9. when | 12. though | |

Ex. 64.

- Mary sat down on a fallen tree trunk.
- In the drawing-room the music of Mozart was being played by an orchestra seen on the TV screen.
- The children were playing in the ruined cottage.
- There were six boxes there, wrapped tight in old newspapers.
- She went to the writing desk and brought out a sealed envelope.
- The woman came out of the store and went to a car parked down the street.
- Returned to the room, she made a telephone call.
- The fallen leaves lay quiet on the pond.
- Left alone, I looked around me.
- Taken by surprise they had nothing to say.
- I had very decided views of my own about my future.
- In the box there were some negatives rolled up in a tight coil.

Ex. 65.

- | | | |
|-----------------|--------------|---------------|
| 1. hurt | 11. feeling | 21. sitting |
| 2. glancing | 12. said | 22. cashed |
| 3. close | 13. to make | 23. lose |
| 4. laid | 14. to find | 24. thinking |
| 5. change | 15. put | 25. walking |
| 6. killed | 16. doing | 26. to return |
| 7. being played | 17. to say | 27. known |
| 8. go | 18. to visit | 28. put |
| 9. given | 19. sent | 29. to write |
| 10. to take | 20. to call | 30. said |

Ex. 66.

- | | | |
|---------------|-------------------|------------------|
| 1. framed | 12. to discuss | 22. recorded |
| 2. growing | 13. attached | 23. manufactured |
| 3. to keep | 14. called | 24. saying |
| 4. chatting | 15. to clean | 25. teasing |
| 5. reserved | 16. receding | 26. competing |
| 6. asking | 17. describing | 27. to leave |
| 7. founded | 18. created | 28. allotted |
| 8. containing | 19. joking, to be | 29. to make |
| 9. created | 20. to say | 30. boiling |
| 10. to obtain | 21. lying | 31. aching |
| 11. darkened | | |

Ex. 67.

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. standing, stretched | 24. to insist, coming, to talk |
| 2. waiting, leaving, cut, pressed, shined | 25. ruined, having |
| 3. falling, to be | 26. to find, gone |
| 4. watching, being made, to set | 27. to visit, set |
| 5. ringing, sitting | 28. putting, finishing, raised, wrinkled |
| 6. flashing | 29. anchored |
| 7. to find | 30. travelling, made, carrying, soiled, filling, to suit |
| 8. to see, chipping | 31. to leave, unfastened |
| 9. studying | 32. trying, to induce, to take, to see, share, stand, watching |
| 10. sleeping | 33. reading, looking, changing |
| 11. to describe | 34. to do, to call |
| 12. caring | 35. to see, disappear |
| 13. bringing | 36. having read |
| 14. to burst, crying | 37. to apologize |
| 15. to understand, to pity, (to) forgive | 38. to change |
| 16. gazing | 39. showing, spending, treating |
| 17. having been divorced | 40. shrieking |
| 18. knowing, to turn, to do | 41. trying |
| 19. holding, listening | 42. obtaining |
| 20. to see | 43. clasped, staring |
| 21. to talk | 44. painted |
| 22. to recognize | |
| 23. having ... wasted, to live, work | |

Ex. 68.

1. In the distance a lorry could be seen climbing up a hill.
2. I've often seen it done.
3. I was not asked to go along.
4. It's urgent to get it done quickly.
5. I wonder why she didn't want me to meet them.
6. They were supposed to have lived a happy life.
7. He had his horse saddled and rode to the village.
8. Through the window I watched Diana talk(ing) with the woman next door.
9. She made me change my clothes for dinner.
10. He didn't want me to agree.
11. I've heard it said that Liz could have been a great pianist.
12. How long do you expect me to stand here?
13. She was seen to wander off to the woods.
14. We left the children playing on the floor.
15. The boys were caught stealing cherries.
16. We left the children to watch TV.
17. I don't like girls to smoke.

18. I won't have you talk to me like that.
19. She smiled when she heard herself described as a middle-aged woman.
20. I was told to get the tea ready.
21. His story kept the people laughing.
22. She found the whole family assembled.
23. They had been doing the work so long that they could not imagine anyone not knowing about it.
24. He wanted a road made to the village.
25. I let him take me to the theatre.
26. She doesn't wish her whereabouts disclosed.

Ex. 69.

1. It was hard for me to convince them.
2. His illness made it impossible for him to take the opportunity.
3. It would have been better for him not to be told.
4. His presence made it possible for me to avoid a quarrel.
5. Lucy saw that I was anxious for her to make a good impression.
6. It turned out to be fairly difficult for him to stop the rumours.
7. He was looking for a quiet place for his family to rest.
8. There's nothing for any one of us to do under the circumstances.
9. It was an opportunity for her to speak to him alone.
10. I asked permission for Tom to stay with us another week.
11. It seems strange for him to have written such an article.
12. It's a privilege for me to meet a man like John Bailey.
13. It will be a pleasure for him to arrange everything for their arrival.
14. It would be a pity for them to waste so much effort.
15. It was thoughtful of you to come today.
16. We all of us waited for the letter to come.
17. It's perfectly wonderful of Dan to have found you.
18. I was very anxious for him to start work.
19. It was a relief for me to get away from home.
20. It would be convenient for them not to involve him.
21. It was an effort for him to call her up.
22. It's nice of him to be interested in my affairs.
23. I closed the door tight for us not to be disturbed.
24. He gestured for me to leave.

Ex. 70.

1. He complained about it being too cold in his room.
2. He often spoke of the necessity of his finding a well-paid job but made no move to do so.
3. There was some mention in the letter of Mrs Braine being taken ill.
4. She cried out for help. But she had no hope of help coming.
5. She didn't like the idea of her son sharing a room with some rough boy.
6. He told her of there being a chance of their son getting a better job.

7. She was tortured by the thought of her baby being looked after by strangers.
8. When he announced the date of his sailing she could not contain her joy.
9. Julia took the cigarette away without his noticing it.
10. Your father insists on your being educated in Oxford.
11. He promised to write her a letter and she awaited its coming impatiently.

Ex. 71.

1. I saw him sitting at the window with one hand lying half clenched on the table.
2. It's the only house down there, with nobody around to snoop.
3. She was breathing deeply, with her lips parted and her cheeks flushed.
4. She was weeping openly, with her eyes fixed at him.
5. With Mary teaching him, he learned to speak proper English very quickly.
6. I can't sleep with the radio playing.
7. A window lit up on the third floor, someone working late.
8. I went away from them late at night with the weight of anxiety lightened.
9. He was lying on his back with his eyes closed.
10. Julia with nothing better to do attended the lectures.
11. She saw Pat sitting on the floor with photographs scattered all around her.

Ex. 72.

1. Having addressed the envelope she threw the card in the waste-paper basket.
2. It was a love affair that was supposed to have been going on so long that it had stopped being talked about.
3. They happened to be dining at Dolly's that day.
4. It was nice of him to have suggested that.
5. He doesn't seem to have written any new plays.
6. Having paid the driver, he looked at his wife standing in the open doorway and lighted up by the setting sun.
7. A sense of timing is one of the things I seem to have learnt from Jimmy.
8. He appeared to be enjoying our company.
9. She was said not to have taken any decision yet.
10. She is rumoured to have been advised not to marry Teddy.
11. He is known to have been wounded three times during the war.
12. I felt the intense sense of being watched.
13. I don't remember ever having been near their house.
14. Chris didn't feel like being laughed at.
15. Never having borrowed money before, he found a number of people who were willing to lend him small sums.
16. I detested being wished good luck.

Nouns

Ex. 2.

- | | | |
|-------------------|-----------------------|------------------------|
| 1. lives | 17. was practising | 30. has ... interested |
| 2. were | 18. are having, | 31. is |
| 3. were | are coming | 32. have found |
| 4. were | 19. is playing | 33. were (are) |
| 5. was | 20. is (was) | 34. was |
| 6. were | 21. are being cleaned | 35. were |
| 7. have got | 22. is | 36. was |
| 8. have known | 23. are | 37. were sitting |
| 9. are | 24. are | 38. is going |
| 10. are | 25. is | 39. are (being) |
| 11. were called | 26. are | 40. is |
| 12. don't think | 27. have discussed | 41. were |
| 13. are requested | (have been | 42. were |
| 14. were | discussing) | 43. was |
| 15. were | 28. has decided | 44. is |
| 16. swim | 29. were | 45. has ... been |

Ex. 4.

1. Her doll's face showed her irritation.
2. He went through the secretary's room without looking at her.
3. I spent one week visiting with a friend of my mother's who lived in London.
4. A woman's voice behind me softly spoke my name.
5. That was the decision of an experienced man.
6. There's a long article of Peter's about it in this evening's paper.
7. Gerald raised his eyebrows. "You have very strange views of a father's functions," he said.
8. The next morning I gave the baby its first bottle of cow's milk.
9. "I shan't have fish," Robin said with the importance of the eldest child.
10. I'm afraid we are going to be late at John's.
11. There was a moment's silence.
12. He used to refer to his profession as a dog's life.
13. After the university she taught for a year or two in a good girls' school in the north of England.
14. He'd never forget his friend's kindness.
15. It was the house of a local doctor who was an active member of the club.
16. His office was only a few minutes' walk.
17. He made his way to a chemist's.
18. She was surprised by the young man's reply to her question about his father's duties.

19. The owner of the house doesn't live in it but he sometimes comes to it for a day or two.
20. What could be more natural than a mother's desire to know something about the young man her daughter is going out with?
21. The patient's interest in the magazine is easy to explain.
22. He had a taxi-driver's knowledge of the city.
23. The actress's next meeting with the producer took place two weeks later.
24. I couldn't find out the name of the man who brought this letter.

Articles

Ex. 3.

(Note: x = absence of the article here and below.)

1. the	18. the, the	35. a
2. a	19. a (the), x, x	36. the
3. a	20. x	37. x
4. the	21. a	38. the
5. the, the	22. the, the, the, x	39. the, a
6. x	23. the, an	40. a
7. x, a	24. x	41. an, the
8. the	25. x	42. x
9. x, the	26. the, the, the	43. a, an
10. the, a	27. x, x	44. a
11. x, x, x, x	28. a	45. x, a
12. x, x	29. an	46. a
13. a, the, x, x	30. the	47. a
14. x	31. the, the, the	48. the, the, an
15. the	32. a	49. a
16. the, a	33. x	50. the
17. a, the	34. the, the, the	51. a, a

Ex. 7.

1. the	9. the, x	17. the
2. a	10. a	18. the
3. the	11. the	19. the
4. a	12. x	20. the
5. a	13. the	
6. a, a	14. a	
7. the	15. the	
8. a	16. x	

Ex. 9.

1. the	9. the	17. the
2. the	10. a, an	18. a
3. a	11. a	19. a
4. a	12. the	20. a
5. a	13. a	21. the
6. the	14. a	
7. a	15. the	
8. a	16. x	

Ex. 10.

1. a	12. the	22. a, the
2. a	13. the	23. a
3. the	14. a	24. a
4. the, the	15. the	25. the
5. a, a	16. a	26. a
6. a	17. a	27. x
7. the	18. the	28. a
8. a	19. a	29. the
9. the	20. a	30. x
10. an	21. the	31. a
11. the		

Ex. 11.

1. the, the, a, the	15. x, x	31. a, x
2. a	16. the, the	32. x
3. the, the	17. the, x	33. a, the
4. a, a	18. a, the	34. the, the, a
5. a	19. the, a, a	35. the, a, a
6. the, the, a (the), the, the, the, a	20. the, the	36. a
7. the, a	21. the	37. the, the, the, a, a
8. the, the, the	22. a, x	38. a, the, a
9. the	23. the, the, the	39. x, the, the, the, the
10. a, a	24. a, the, a	40. a, a, the, the
11. a	25. the, the	41. a, the
12. the, the, the, the, the, the	26. the, a	42. an
13. the	27. x	43. the
14. a	28. the	44. the, a, x
	29. the, the, the, the	45. the, the
	30. the, the, the	

Ex. 12.

a) the, a, x, a, a, the, the, the, a
x, the, the, x, a, x, x, x, the, a, the, the, the, a, a, the, the
a, the, a, x, the, the, the, a

b) a, a, the, a, a, the, a, a, the, the, the, the, the, a, the, the, the,
the, a, a, the, the, the, the, the, the, a, the, the, a, the, a

c) the, an, a, a, a, the, a, x, the, the, a, the, an, the, the, the, the, the,
the, a, the, a, a, a, the, the, a, the, the, a, the, the, the, the, the, the,
the, x

d) a, x, x, the, x, x, the, the, the, the, the, x, an, the, the, a, the, the, the,
the, the, the, the, a, a, a, a
the, the, the, a, x, x, the, the, the, the, the, the, a, a, the, a, the, the, the,
the, the, the, a, the, the, a, the, the, a, the, the, a, the, the, the, a, the

the, the, the, the, the, a, the, the
the, the, x, x, a, the, the, the

Ex. 14.

- | | | |
|------------------------|----------------------|-------------------|
| 1. the, the, the, the, | 10. a, the, a, a | 20. the, the |
| the, a, the, the, | 11. a, the | 21. x, x, the |
| the, the, the, a | 12. x, the | 22. the |
| 2. the, a, x, the | 13. the, an | 23. the |
| 3. x, x, x, x, x | 14. x | 24. x |
| 4. the | 15. x, x, x, x, the, | 25. the, the, the |
| 5. the, a, the | the, the | 26. x, x, x |
| 6. the, the | 16. the, the | 27. x |
| 7. a, the | 17. x | 28. a, x, x |
| 8. a, a | 18. x | 29. the, x |
| 9. x | 19. x, x | |

Ex. 16.

- | | | |
|-----------------|-----------------|-----------------|
| 1. a, the | 11. the | 21. a |
| 2. the | 12. the, the | 22. x |
| 3. the, x | 13. a | 23. a |
| 4. the, a | 14. x, the | 24. the, a, the |
| 5. a, a | 15. x | 25. the, a |
| 6. x, the, the | 16. the | 26. the |
| 7. a, x, a, the | 17. the | 27. the, the |
| 8. an | 18. x, the, the | 28. x |
| 9. a, the | 19. the, x, the | 29. a |
| 10. the, a | 20. x | 30. the, a, the |

Ex. 18.

- | | | |
|-------------------------|------------------|---------------------|
| 1. x, x (the), the | 10. the, a | 19. the, the, the |
| 2. a | 11. the, the | 20. x, a |
| 3. x, the, the | 12. the, a, a, x | 21. the, a |
| 4. x, x | 13. the, x, the | 22. the, the |
| 5. the | 14. x | 23. the (x), the, a |
| 6. an | 15. a, the | (the) |
| 7. the, x | 16. the | 24. the, a, the |
| 8. the, the, a, an, the | 17. the | 25. the, x |
| 9. x, a | 18. the | |

Ex. 19.

- | | | |
|------------|--------|------------|
| 1. the (x) | 3. the | 5. x (the) |
| 2. a | 4. x | 6. a (x) |

- | | | |
|-------------|-------------|-------|
| 7. a | 11. an | 15. x |
| 8. the | 12. x (the) | 16. x |
| 9. an (x) | 13. a | |
| 10. x (the) | 14. the | |

Ex. 20.

- | | | |
|-------------|-----------------|---------------|
| 1. a, the | 9. the, x | 17. an |
| 2. x | 10. the | 18. the, the |
| 3. the | 11. the, the, a | 19. the, the |
| 4. x | 12. the, x, x | 20. the, an |
| 5. x | 13. a | 21. x, x, the |
| 6. the, the | 14. x, x | 22. x |
| 7. the, the | 15. the | |
| 8. x, x | 16. a, x, x | |

Ex. 21.

- | | |
|---|--------------------------|
| 1. a, x | 25. an, x |
| 2. the, the, the, the, the, x, the,
a, the, a, the | 26. the, a, x, x, a, the |
| 3. the, the, the, x | 27. x, an, the |
| 4. the, the, the, the, the | 28. the, the |
| 5. a, a, x (the), an, the | 29. the, the |
| 6. the, a, the, a | 30. a, x |
| 7. a, the, the, a, the, the, the | 31. an |
| 8. a, a | 32. x (the), the |
| 9. the, the, a, the, a | 33. the |
| 10. x, the, the | 34. the, the |
| 11. x | 35. the, a |
| 12. x | 36. a, the |
| 13. the, x | 37. a |
| 14. a | 38. an (the), the |
| 15. x, the, the | 39. x (the), the |
| 16. an, a, x (the), a | 40. a, the, the, the, an |
| 17. x, a | 41. the, a, an |
| 18. the, a, a | 42. the, a |
| 19. the, the, the | 43. the |
| 20. the, x | 44. a, a, a |
| 21. a, x, an, x | 45. the |
| 22. a, a, a, x, the | 46. the, a |
| 23. x, x, a, the, an, a, the, the, the | 47. the, x, the |
| 24. the, x | 48. x, x, x |

Ex. 23.

- | | | |
|--------|----------------|-----------|
| 1. a | 5. x | 9. a |
| 2. x | 6. a | 10. x, an |
| 3. the | 7. the | 11. a, a |
| 4. a | 8. the, the, x | 12. x |

13. a, the	23. a	33. x, x
14. x, x, the	24. the	34. the
15. x	25. x	35. x
16. a	26. x	36. x
17. x, the, x	27. a	37. the, a, x, x, x, x,
18. a, a	28. x	x, x, x, x, the
19. the	29. the, a, the	38. a, the
20. the, a	30. x, the, x	39. x, a
21. the, an, x	31. an	40. x, the
22. x	32. the, x	

Ex. 24.

1. x, the	6. a	11. the
2. the, x, x	7. x	12. a, x
3. x	8. a, x, x, x	13. the
4. x, x, a, a	9. the, a, x, the	14. x, x, the, x
5. the	10. the, x, a	

Ex. 25.

1. x	15. x, a	29. x
2. the, x	16. the	30. x
3. the	17. the, x	31. the
4. a, x, x	18. x	32. the, the, x
5. x	19. x	33. x
6. x, x, the	20. the, x	34. the
7. x	21. the	35. the
8. the	22. the	36. x
9. x, the	23. x	37. the, the
10. x	24. x	38. x
11. the	25. x	39. x
12. the	26. x, the	40. x
13. x	27. the	
14. the	28. x	

Ex. 27.

1. x	9. the, the	16. the, x, the, the, x,
2. x, x	10. x	x, x, x, x
3. the, the	11. x, x, the, an, x, a,	17. the, the (a)
4. x	x, the, the, x	18. x
5. x, x, x, x	12. x	19. the, the, the
6. x, x, the	13. the, a, the, the, a, x	20. the, a, a, x, a
7. the, x	14. x	
8. x	15. the, x	

Ex. 28.

- | | | |
|--------------------------|------------------------|----------------------------|
| 1. x, the, x | 13. the, a, a (x), the | 25. the, x, x |
| 2. the, x | 14. a, x, a, the | 26. the, x, x |
| 3. a (the), x | 15. x, x | 27. x, x |
| 4. a, a, x | 16. the | 28. x |
| 5. a, x, a | 17. a, x, the | 29. x |
| 6. a, x | 18. a, the | 30. the, the, the |
| 7. a, a, a | 19. the, the | 31. a, x, x |
| 8. x, the | 20. x | 32. x, x, the |
| 9. a | 21. the, x, x, the, a | 33. x, the, the, x |
| 10. the, the (a) | 22. x | 34. the, the, x |
| 11. the, the, x | 23. the, x, x | 35. x |
| 12. a, the, x (the), the | 24. the, an | 36. x, the, the, a, the, a |

Ex. 30.

- | | | |
|---------------------|-----------------|------------------------|
| 1. x | 11. x, the | 21. the |
| 2. x, the, the | 12. x | 22. the |
| 3. a | 13. the, the, x | 23. the |
| 4. x, x | 14. x, the | 24. the |
| 5. a, x | 15. the, the | 25. the, x |
| 6. the, x | 16. x, the | 26. the, the, the, the |
| 7. a | 17. a, the | 27. x |
| 8. the, x, the, the | 18. the, the | 28. the, x, the |
| 9. x | 19. the | 29. x, the |
| 10. x | 20. the, the | |

Ex. 31.

- | | | |
|---------------------------------|------------------|---|
| 1. the, a, a | 8. a, an, the, a | 16. a, x (the) |
| 2. the, the | 9. a, the, the | 17. x, x, the, x |
| 3. a | 10. the, a | 18. a |
| 4. the | 11. the, the, x | 19. x |
| 5. the, an, the, x,
an, a, x | 12. x, x, x, x | 20. x |
| 6. the, x | 13. the, an | 21. a, x, the, the, a |
| 7. x, the, x | 14. the | 22. the, x, the, a, a,
a, the, a, an |
| | 15. the | |

Ex. 33.

- | | | |
|----------------|------------------|-------------------------|
| 1. the, x, the | 6. the, the, the | 11. the |
| 2. the, x | 7. x | 12. the, the, the, x, x |
| 3. the | 8. x, the | 13. the, x |
| 4. the, a | 9. the | 14. the |
| 5. a | 10. the | 15. the |

16. the, the
17. the

18. x, the, x
19. the

20. the, x, x

Ex. 34.

1. x
2. x, a, x
3. a
4. x
5. the
6. the, the
7. the, the, a
8. the, a (the)
9. the

10. a
11. the, the
12. the, a, x, a, the,
x, the, x, the, the
13. the, the, a, a
14. the, x
15. x, x
16. a, a
17. the

18. x
19. the (x), x (the)
20. a, the, the
21. the, x
22. x (a)
23. x, x, x
24. the, the, a, x, the

Ex. 36.

1. a, the
2. x, a
3. a, the
4. x
5. x, the, the
6. x
7. a
8. x
9. x, the

10. x
11. x
12. x
13. a, the, a
14. an, a, x
15. the, x
16. a, the, the, the, a
17. x
18. the, x, x

19. a, a
20. x, the, x, a, x
21. x, x, x, x, x
22. a, the, a
23. x, a
24. the, x, the, the,
the, x, a, a, a, the,
the, a, the

Ex. 37.

1. x
2. x
3. the
4. a, an, x
5. a

6. x, the
7. the, x, the, the
8. x
9. x, a
10. x

11. x, the, the
12. x, the
13. x
14. the
15. x, x

Ex. 38.

a)

1. the, the
2. x, the, x
3. the, x, a, the
4. the, the
5. x, x, x, x, the, the, the
6. x, x
7. the
8. x

9. a
10. x, x, a
11. the
12. the, the
13. a, x
14. the, the, the

b)

1. the, the, the, a (the)
2. a, x
3. the, x

4. a (the)

5. a

c)

1. x, x, a, the
2. the, the
3. a (the)
4. x

5. the, the, x, a

6. the, x

7. the, the

8. x, x

d)

1. x, a, x, a
2. the, a
3. x, the
4. an, a, the
5. the, a, x
6. a, a
7. the, the

8. a, the, the

9. x, a, x

10. the, the, an

11. x

12. the, a

13. x, a

e)

1. a, x, x, x
2. a, the
3. x
4. the, a, a

5. the, the

6. x, a, the

7. x

8. x

f)

1. x
2. the, a
3. the, the
4. the
5. x

6. an, x, an

7. the

8. x

9. the

Ex. 39.

1. the, the, x
2. a, x
3. a, x, the
4. a, the
5. x, the
6. x, a
7. x
8. x
9. the, x
10. x
11. the, x

12. an, x

13. a, the, a

14. x, x

15. x, the

16. the, the, x

17. the, x, the

18. x

19. the, x, the

20. x, the, a, a

21. the, x

22. x

23. the

24. a, x, x
 25. the, a
 26. x, x, x
 27. x

28. x
 29. the, x
 30. x, a, x, x, the
 31. the, the, a, a, x, a, a, a

Ex. 40.

1. an, the, the, x, a, x, a
 2. the, a, x, the, x, a, a, the, the
 3. the, the, the, x
 4. the, a, the, a
 5. x, x
 6. x, x, x, x
 7. the, the
 8. the, the, the
 9. x, x
 10. the, a
 11. the, a, a
 12. x
 13. x, the, x, x, the
 14. the
 15. x, a
 16. x
 17. x, a
 18. the
 19. x, x, x
 20. the, the, the, x
 21. x, x, x, x
 22. x, the
 23. a, a, the, the, a, x
 24. x, the
 25. x, the, x, x, the

26. a, a
 27. a, x
 28. a, x
 29. x
 30. a, x
 31. an, x
 32. the, a
 33. an
 34. the, the, x, x
 35. x, x, x, x, x, x, a, a, the
 36. x, x, a, the
 37. a, a, a, an
 38. x, the
 39. x, the, the
 40. a, the, x
 41. x, a, the
 42. the, the
 43. the, the
 44. x, a, the, the, the, the, the, the
 45. x, the
 46. x, a
 47. the, the, x, x, x, x
 48. a, the, the
 49. the, the, the, the, a, x, the

Ex. 41.

- a) x, the, the, the, the, the, the, a, the, a, a, x, the, a, a, the, the, the, a, a, x, the, x
 b) a, a, x, the, x, a, x, x, a, a
 the, x, x, a, the, the, an, x, x, x, x, x, x, a, the, the, the, the
 c) the, the, a, x, the, the, the, the, the, the, the
 the, the, a
 the, x
 a, a
 the
 d) an, the, the, x, a, the, x, x, x, the, the, a, a, x
 x, x, x (an), x, x, x, the, a, the, x, the, the, a, the, a, a, a
 e) the, the, a, the, the, the, the, the, a, the, x, the, the, a, the, x, a, the,
 the, the, the, the, the, the, x, a, the, the, the, a, the
 f) x, a, x, the, the, a
 a, x, a, the, the, the, the, the, the, x, x, x, the, the

x, the, the, the, a
 the, x, x, x, x, x, x, an
 x, x, the, the, a, the, a, a, the, a, the

Ex. 43.

1. the, the, x
2. the, the, the, a, x
3. x, the, the, x, x
4. an, x, the, the
5. the
6. a, the
7. the, x, x, the, a, the
8. the, a, a, the
9. a, the
10. the, x, x
11. the, the

12. the, a
13. a, the
14. a, x, the
15. the, the
16. x, the, a
17. the, a, the, the, the
18. a, a, the
19. the, the, the
20. x, x, the, the, the
21. a, the, the, the
22. a

Ex. 44.

1. the, the, a, x, x, the, a, x, a, x,
the, the
2. a, the
3. the, the, the, a, the, a, the, a,
a, the, the, the, the, x, the, the,
a, x, the, the
4. the, x
5. a, an, the, the, x
6. the, a
7. x, the, the, the
8. the, the, the, the, a
9. the, a, x
10. the, x
11. an, the, x, the, the, the, the, x
12. the, x

13. x, the, a, the, the, the
14. an, an
15. x, a, x
16. x, the
17. a, a, x, x, x
18. the, the, the, the, the, the, the,
the, the, the
19. the, x, x
20. a, x
21. x, the, a, the, the, a
22. the, the, the
23. x
24. the, x
25. the, a
26. x, x, a, a, the, the, the, x, the,
a, x

Ex. 45.

1. the, the, the, a
2. x, the, a, the
3. the, x, the, a, a
4. the, the, a, the, x, the, the, x, the
5. the, x, the, x
6. the, x, the
7. the, the, the, a, x
8. x, the, a, a, a, the
9. the

10. x
11. the, the
12. the, the, the, x
13. a
14. the, x, the, x, the, the, the, the
15. a, a, x, the, the, the, a, x, the,
the, the, x, the, an, the, the,
the, the, the, the, an, x, x, the,
the, a, an, an, x, the, the, the

Ex. 46.

- a) x, the, a, x, x, a, x, a, x, x
 b) x, a, x, a, the, a, an, the, the, the, a, the, the, an
 c) x, an, x, a, x, x, x, a, the, an, x, x, x
 d) x, a, x, x, x, a, x, x, a, an, x, the, the, the
 a, x, the, the, an, the, a, the, a, the, x, x, x, x, x, x, the, the, an, the,
 x, the, the, the, x, the, x, x, the, the
 the, a, x, the, a, the, the, the
 e) the, the, a, the, the, x, the, the
 the, the, a, the, the, x, a, the, the, the, the, a, the, the, a, the, a,
 an, a, a, the, a, the, the, the, a, a, the, the, the, the, the

Ex. 48.

- | | |
|-------------------------------------|------------------|
| 1. the, a, the, x, a, x, a, a, a, a | 14. the |
| 2. a, a, a, a | 15. the, a, the |
| 3. a, a, the, a, the | 16. x |
| 4. the, a | 17. a, a, the, a |
| 5. x, x, the, the, a | 18. x, the |
| 6. the, the, a, a | 19. the, the, a |
| 7. the, a, a, the, the | 20. x, a |
| 8. x, a, the | 21. the, the |
| 9. the | 22. a |
| 10. a, the, a, x | 23. the, the, x |
| 11. the, x, a | 24. x, the, x |
| 12. the, the, a, the | 25. the |
| 13. a, x, an, x | 26. the, the |

Ex. 49.

- | | |
|---------------------|---------------------------|
| 1. x, the, the | 16. the |
| 2. the, the | 17. the, x, x |
| 3. the, the, the, a | 18. x, the, x, the, the |
| 4. a, x, the | 19. a, the |
| 5. the | 20. the, the, a, the, the |
| 6. a, the, the | 21. x |
| 7. the, the, the, x | 22. the, the |
| 8. the, x, the (a) | 23. the |
| 9. x, the | 24. x, the, x, the, the |
| 10. x, x | 25. x, a |
| 11. the, a, a, the | 26. a, the |
| 12. the, x, a, the | 27. a |
| 13. x, x | 28. the, the |
| 14. the, x, x, x | 29. the, x |
| 15. the, the | 30. x, the, x |

Ex. 50.

1. the
2. x, x, x
3. a, the, the
4. the
5. the
6. the, a
7. x, an, the

8. x

9. the, a, x, x
10. the
11. the, x, x, the, x
12. a, the
13. a, x
14. the, x
15. the, x, the
16. a, the

Ex. 51.

1. x
2. the, a
3. the, the, the, x
4. a, the, an, an, the, the, the
5. the
6. the, the, the
7. the, x, the
8. the, x, a
9. a, a, a, a, x, a, x, x, x, a, x, a, x
10. the
11. the, x, the
12. x, a, the
13. the, the, an, x, a, x, the, a, x, a
14. x, x, the, the
15. the, the

16. x, x
17. x, the, a, a
18. x, x
19. x, x, a
20. an, a
21. the, x
22. a, x, the, x, the, x, the
23. the, the
24. a
25. x, x, x
26. a, x
27. a
28. x, x
29. the, x, a, x, x, x
30. an, the

Ex. 52.

the, the, the, x, the, x
 the, a, the, the, the, x, the, the, a, x, x, a, the, the, the, x, x, the, the, x, the
 the, the, x, the, the, the, the
 a, x, a, the, an, the, x, x, x, x, the, an, the, a
 the, the, x, a, x, x, x, the, x, x, an, the, a, x, the, x, x, x, a, the, the
 x, x, x, x, x, the, the, the, a, a, x, the, the, the, the, the, x, a, x, a, an,
 x, the

Adjectives

Ex. 1.

- | | |
|---------------------|---------------------|
| 1. most amusing | 11. least |
| 2. more intelligent | 12. worse |
| 3. most practical | 13. nearest |
| 4. more afraid | 14. less |
| 5. latest | 15. last |
| 6. less talkative | 16. most noticeable |
| 7. more angry | 17. next |
| 8. wiser | 18. taller |
| 9. best | 19. more amusing |
| 10. cleverest | 20. eldest (elder) |

Ex. 2.

1. The less you say, the better (it is).
2. Unfortunately I couldn't come as early as I had promised.
3. The cat fell off the roof but it feels none the worse for it.
4. The room is nice, but not as nice as I should like.
5. The more one has the more one wants.
6. I'm not so young as you.
7. The weather is changing for the better.
8. The window is as narrow as the door.
9. The soup smells good, but it tastes better.
10. How can I get to the nearest post-office?
11. If he helps us, so much the better.
12. If he doesn't do his lessons, so much the worse for him.
13. The sooner you do it, the better.
14. He got weaker and weaker.
15. This time you've made fewer mistakes.

Ex. 3.

1. The blind are taught trades to fit them for work.
2. Nurses are required to look after the wounded.
3. The doctor wishes to examine the wounded man.
4. After their son's departure they gave up inviting young people.
5. The young like to do things their own way.
6. The English love tea.
7. There were a lot of English people in the hotel.
8. The sick man asked for some water.
9. He thought it his duty to help the poor man.
10. The work of rescuing the injured lasted well into the night.
11. You talk like an illiterate man.
12. He always visited the sick twice a day.
13. He hoped to find the young man at home yet.
14. There were evening classes arranged for the illiterate.
15. Six (of the) injured people were allowed to be taken home.

Pronouns

Ex. 1.

1. they
2. you, it, you, it, it
3. it
4. she
5. it, you (I, we)

6. it, she
7. it
8. you, you, him, it,
him, he, you, him

9. she (it)
10. it, it
11. she (it)
12. her

Ex. 2.

1. her, her
2. his, her
3. your
4. my
5. the
6. the

7. his
8. your
9. the
10. his
11. the
12. my

13. her
14. his
15. the
16. his
17. the

Ex. 3.

1. his
2. his, hers
3. mine
4. my
5. yours, ours

6. your, ours
7. our
8. his
9. its

10. their, hers, theirs
11. theirs
12. her
13. mine, my

Ex. 4.

1. ourselves
2. herself
3. herself
4. herself

5. myself
6. me
7. himself
8. themselves

9. themselves
10. itself
11. myself
12. myself

Ex. 5.

1. this, that
2. same
3. that, that
4. this
5. that
6. that
7. those
8. that

9. such
10. same
11. those
12. that
13. such
14. those
15. this

16. these, those
17. such
18. that
19. that
20. those
21. such

Ex. 6.

1. any
2. some

3. any
4. no

5. some
6. some

- | | | |
|----------|---------------|----------|
| 7. any | 12. some, any | 17. some |
| 8. any | 13. some | 18. any |
| 9. some | 14. no | 19. any |
| 10. any | 15. no, some | |
| 11. some | 16. no | |

Ex. 7.

- | | | |
|---------------------|-----------------------|----------------------|
| 1. somebody | 12. anybody | 23. anyone |
| 2. anyone | 13. anything | 24. nobody |
| 3. nothing | 14. somebody | 25. anything |
| 4. nobody | 15. something | 26. something |
| 5. someone | 16. anything | 27. nobody, anything |
| 6. something | 17. anybody | 28. anything |
| 7. anyone (anybody) | 18. nobody | 29. anything |
| 8. no one | 19. anyone | 30. nothing |
| 9. nothing | 20. anything, nothing | 31. anybody |
| 10. anything | 21. anything | 32. someone |
| 11. something | 22. nothing | |

Ex. 8.

- | | | |
|-------------|---------------|-----------|
| 1. one | 5. ones | 9. one |
| 2. a one | 6. one, one's | 10. a one |
| 3. the ones | 7. one | |
| 4. one | 8. the one | |

Ex. 9.

- | | | |
|-----------|------------|------------|
| 1. no one | 8. no one | 15. none |
| 2. none | 9. none | 16. no one |
| 3. none | 10. none | 17. none |
| 4. no one | 11. none | 18. none |
| 5. no one | 12. no one | 19. no one |
| 6. none | 13. none | |
| 7. none | 14. none | |

Ex. 10.

- | | | |
|--------------------------|---------------------|---------------------------|
| 1. everything | 5. everyone (-body) | 10. everything |
| 2. everyone (-body) | 6. all | 11. all (everything) |
| 3. everybody (-one) | 7. everyone (-body) | 12. everyone (-body, all) |
| 4. everyone (-body, all) | 8. everyone | |
| | 9. all | |

Ex. 11.

- | | | |
|----------|----------|----------|
| 1. every | 3. every | 5. all |
| 2. each | 4. each | 6. every |

- | | | |
|-----------|----------------|-----------|
| 7. all | 13. all | 19. each |
| 8. each | 14. every | 20. all |
| 9. all | 15. every | 21. each |
| 10. each | 16. each | 22. every |
| 11. every | 17. every | |
| 12. all | 18. every, all | |

Ex. 12.

- | | | |
|--------------|---------------|----------------|
| 1. another | 8. other | 15. another |
| 2. the other | 9. the others | 16. others |
| 3. others | 10. others | 17. the other |
| 4. the other | 11. the other | 18. others |
| 5. the other | 12. other | 19. the others |
| 6. another | 13. another | 20. another |
| 7. the other | 14. the other | |

Ex. 13.

- | | | |
|------------------|----------------------|------------------------|
| 1. either | 9. both | 17. either |
| 2. both | 10. either (neither) | 18. either |
| 3. both, either | 11. either | 19. both, neither, |
| 4. either | 12. neither | both |
| 5. either | 13. both, either | 20. either |
| 6. both, neither | 14. neither | 21. both, either, nei- |
| 7. either | 15. either | ther |
| 8. both, neither | 16. both | 22. either |

Ex. 14.

- | | | |
|-------------------|--------------------|-----------|
| 1. few | 7. much, many, few | 13. a few |
| 2. a few | 8. much | 14. many |
| 3. a little, much | 9. little | 15. many |
| 4. little | 10. few | 16. much |
| 5. much | 11. few | |
| 6. much, a few | 12. little | |

Ex. 16.

- | | | |
|--------------|----------------|------------------|
| 1. that | 12. what | 23. whose |
| 2. whom | 13. which | 24. which |
| 3. which | 14. that | 25. who(m) |
| 4. what | 15. what | 26. what |
| 5. that | 16. that | 27. whose |
| 6. who, whom | 17. what | 28. what |
| 7. what | 18. that, what | 29. what |
| 8. that | 19. what | 30. which |
| 9. what | 20. who | 31. what |
| 10. which | 21. which | 32. what, what |
| 11. which | 22. what | 33. which, which |

Adverbs

Ex. 1.

- | | | |
|-------------|--------------|-------------|
| 1. close | 15. late | 29. cheap |
| 2. free | 16. fine | 30. dear |
| 3. clearly | 17. easy | 31. sharply |
| 4. hardly | 18. high | 32. cheaply |
| 5. wrong | 19. prettily | 33. fairly |
| 6. wide | 20. easily | 34. short |
| 7. highly | 21. tight | 35. tightly |
| 8. hard | 22. nearly | 36. cleanly |
| 9. pretty | 23. most | 37. light |
| 10. freely | 24. widely | 38. fair |
| 11. mostly | 25. near | 39. lightly |
| 12. lately | 26. clean | 40. sharp |
| 13. wrongly | 27. dearly | 41. clear |
| 14. closely | 28. shortly | |

Ex. 2.

1. I can't *possibly* do it.
2. He has *never* mentioned it.
3. We just watched TV *tonight*.
4. Has he *ever* been out of his native town?
5. Mother is *now* in the kitchen.
6. He can *usually* be seen in the local pub in the evening.
7. What have you been doing *here*?
8. He will soon be sick of living alone.
9. She went to bed *early*.
10. *Presently* they all went upstairs.
11. "Fools," she said to herself *angrily*.
12. She was *entirely* indifferent to him.
13. He looked *deeply* hurt.
14. He could have *easily* managed it. (or: He could have managed it *easily*.)
15. She listened to him *respectively*.
16. They kept laughing *uproariously*.
17. She was *simply* trying to explain. She was trying to explain *simply*.
18. *Frankly*, I think she's lying.
19. They've *probably* forgotten the time.
20. *Politically*, the visit has been very successful.
21. *Perhaps* he knew what was happening. (or: He *perhaps* knew what was happening.)
22. *Honestly*, I did not see him.
23. *Anyway*, the letter is sent off. (or: The letter is sent off, *anyway*.)
24. *Obviously*, he is very happy. (or: He is *obviously* very happy.)

25. The players could *hardly* see ball.
26. Turning the books over *rapidly*, he looked at the titles. Turning the books over he looked at the titles *rapidly*.
27. We *certainly* had a nice game.
28. The idea passed *idly* through my mind.
29. She spoke Italian *perfectly*.
30. I must just wait *patiently* for his letter.
31. She began to cry *hysterically*.
32. You can *sometimes* see in people's thoughts *clearly*.

СОДЕРЖАНИЕ

ПРЕДИСЛОВИЕ	3
THE VERB. FINITE FORMS	6
THE VERB. PASSIVE VOICE FORMS.....	93
THE VERB. MODAL VERBS	106
THE VERB. MEANS OF EXPRESSING UNREALITY	145
THE VERB. VERBALS	176
NOUNS	240
ARTICLES	245
ADJECTIVES	307
PRONOUNS	309
ADVERBS	320
KEY TO EXERCISES	322
The Verb: Finite Forms	322
The Verb: Passive Voice Forms	347
The Verb: Modal Verbs	352
The Verb: Means of Expressing Unreality	367
The Verb: Verbals	379
Nouns	405
Articles	407
Adjectives	419
Pronouns	420
Adverbs	423